

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
24 October 2002 (24.10.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/083624 A1

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **C07C 237/30**,
255/59, 225/20, C07D 213/74, 307/52, 333/36

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US02/12681

(22) International Filing Date: 15 April 2002 (15.04.2002)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/284,026 16 April 2001 (16.04.2001) US

(71) Applicants: **SCHERING CORPORATION** [US/US];
Patent Department - K-6-1 1990, 2000 Galloping Hill
Road, Kenilworth, NJ 07033-0530 (US). **PHARMA-
COPEIA, INC.** [US/US]; 3000 Eastpark Boulevard,
Cranbury, NJ 08512 (US).

(72) Inventors: **TAVERAS, Arthur, G.**; 3 Headley Court,
Denville, NJ 07834 (US). **AKI, Cynthia, J.**; 36 North
Ashby Avenue, Livingston, NJ 07039 (US). **BOND,
Richard, W.**; 623 Thoreau Terrace, Union, NJ 07083
(US). **CHAO, Jianping**; 23 Brainerd Road, Summit, NJ
07901 (US). **DWYER, Michael**; 235 Katherine Street,
Scotch Plains, NJ 07076 (US). **FERREIRA, Johan,
A.**; 197 Thunder Circle, Bensalem, PA 19020 (US).
CHAO, Jianhua; 2431 Crossing Way, Wayne, NJ 07470
(US). **YU, Younong**; 251-B Rutgers Road, Piscataway,
NJ 08854 (US). **BALDWIN, John, J.**; 621 Gypsy Hill
Circle, Gwynedd Valley, PA 19437 (US). **KAISER,
Bernd**; 4523 Quail Ridge Drive, Plainsboro, NJ 08536
(US). **LI, Ge**; Building 7, Room 201, LuJiaZui Garden,
LuJiaZui, 200131 Shanghai (CN). **MERRITT, J., Robert**;
14 Gloucester Lane, Ewing, NJ 08618 (US). **NELSON,**

Kingsley, H.; 410 Redwood Court, Mebane, NC 27302
(US). **ROKOSZ, Laura, L.**; 713 Balsam Way, Union, NJ
07083 (US).

(74) Agent: **JEANETTE, Henry, C.**; Schering-Plough Corpo-
ration, Patent Department K-6-1 1990, 2000 Galloping Hill
Road, Kenilworth, NJ 07033-0530 (US).

(81) Designated States (*national*): AF, AG, AI, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CZ,
DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, HR, HU,
ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV,
MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PH, PL, PT,
RO, RU, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA,
UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZM.

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW),
Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),
European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR,
GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent
(BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR,
NE, SN, TD, TG).

Declarations under Rule 4.17:

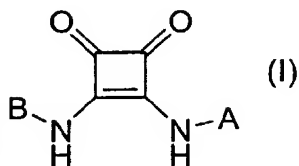
- as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the
earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii)) for all designations
- as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the
earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii)) for all designations

Published:

- with international search report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: 3,4-DI-SUBSTITUTED CYCLOBUTENE-1,2-DIONES AS CXC-CHEMOKINE RECEPTOR LIGANDS



(57) Abstract: There are disclosed compounds of Formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof which are useful for the treatment of chemokine-mediated diseases such as acute and chronic inflammatory disorders and cancer.



WO 02/083624 A1

5 **3,4-DI-SUBSTITUTED CYCLOBUTENE-1,2-DIONES**
 AS CXC-CHEMOKINE RECEPTOR LIGANDS

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

10 This application claims the benefit of US Provisional Application 60/284,026,
filed April 16, 2001.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

15 The present invention relates to novel substituted cyclobutenedione
compounds, pharmaceutical compositions containing the compounds, and the use of
the compounds and formulations in treating CXC chemokine-mediated diseases.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

20 Chemokines are chemotactic cytokines that are released by a wide variety of
cells to attract macrophages, T-cells, eosinophils, basophils, neutrophils and
endothelial cells to sites of inflammation and tumor growth. There are two main
classes of chemokines, the CXC-chemokines and the CC- chemokines. The class
depends on whether the first two cysteines are separated by a single amino acid
(CXC-chemokines) or are adjacent (CC-chemokines). The CXC-chemokines include
25 interleukin-8 (IL-8), neutrophil-activating protein-1 (NAP-1), neutrophil-activating
protein-2 (NAP-2), GRO α , GRO β , GRO γ , ENA-78, GCP-2, IP-10, MIG and PF4. CC
chemokines include RANTES, MIP -1 α , MIP-2 β , monocyte chemotactic protein-1
(MCP-1), MCP-2, MCP-3 and eotaxin. Individual members of the chemokine families
are known to be bound by at least one chemokine receptor, with CXC-chemokines
generally bound by members of the CXCR class of receptors, and CC-chemokines by
30 members of the CCR class of receptors. For example, IL-8 is bound by the CXCR-1
and CXCR-2 receptors.

35 Since CXC-chemokines promote the accumulation and activation of
neutrophils, these chemokines have been implicated in a wide range of acute and
chronic inflammatory disorders including psoriasis and rheumatoid arthritis. Baggiolini
et al., FEBS Lett. 307, 97 (1992); Miller et al., Crit. Rev. Immunol. 12, 17 (1992);

Oppenheim et al., *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 9, 617 (1991); Seitz et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 87, 463 (1991); Miller et al., *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.* 146, 427 (1992); Donnelly et al., *Lancet* 341, 643 (1993).

ELRCXC chemokines including IL-8, GRO α , GRO β , GRO γ , NAP-2, and ENA-78 (Strieter et al. 1995 *JBC* 270 p. 27348-57) have also been implicated in the induction of tumor angiogenesis (new blood vessel growth). All of these chemokines are believed to exert their actions by binding to the 7 transmembrane G-protein coupled receptor CXCR2 (also known as IL-8RB), while IL-8 also binds CXCR1 (also known as IL-8RA). Thus, their angiogenic activity is due to their binding to and activation of CXCR2, and possible CXCR1 for IL-8, expressed on the surface of vascular endothelial cells (ECs) in surrounding vessels.

Many different types of tumors have been shown to produce ELRCXC chemokines and their production has been correlated with a more aggressive phenotype (Inoue et al. 2000 *Clin Cancer Res* 6 p. 2104-2119) and poor prognosis (Yoneda et al. 1998 *J Nat Cancer Inst* 90 p. 447-454). Chemokines are potent chemotactic factors and the ELRCXC chemokines have been shown to induce EC chemotaxis. Thus, these chemokines probably induce chemotaxis of endothelial cells toward their site of production in the tumor. This may be a critical step in the induction of angiogenesis by the tumor. Inhibitors of CXCR2 or dual inhibitors of CXCR2 and CXCR1 will inhibit the angiogenic activity of the ELRCXC chemokines and therefore block the growth of the tumor. This anti-tumor activity has been demonstrated for antibodies to IL-8 (Arenberg et al. 1996 *J Clin Invest* 97 p. 2792-2802), ENA-78 (Arenberg et al. 1998 *J Clin Invest* 102 p. 465-72), and GRO α (Haghnegahdar et al. *J. Leukoc Biology* 2000 67 p. 53-62).

Many tumor cells have also been shown to express CXCR2 and thus tumor cells may also stimulate their own growth when they secrete ELRCXC chemokines. Thus, along with decreasing angiogenesis, inhibitors of CXCR2 may directly inhibit the growth of tumor cells.

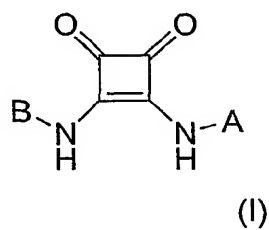
Hence, the CXC-chemokine receptors represent promising targets for the development of novel anti-inflammatory and anti-tumor agents.

There remains a need for compounds that are capable of modulating activity at CXC-chemokine receptors. For example, conditions associated with an increase in IL-8 production (which is responsible for chemotaxis of neutrophil and T-cell subsets

into the inflammatory site and growth of tumors) would benefit by compounds that are inhibitors of IL-8 receptor binding.

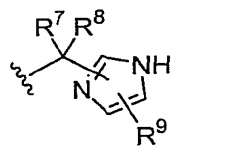
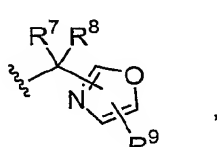
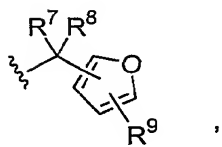
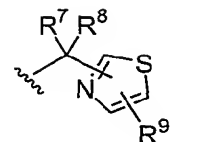
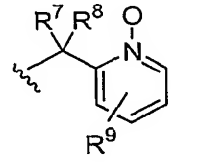
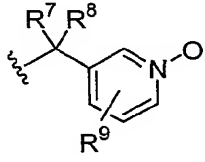
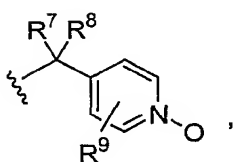
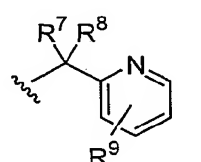
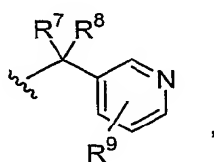
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides compounds of the formula (I):

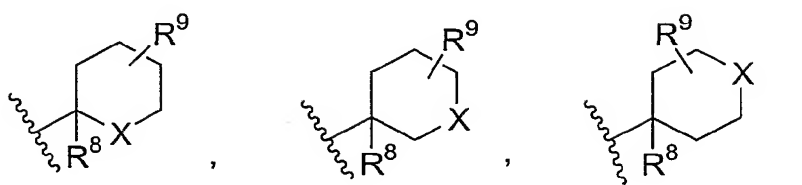
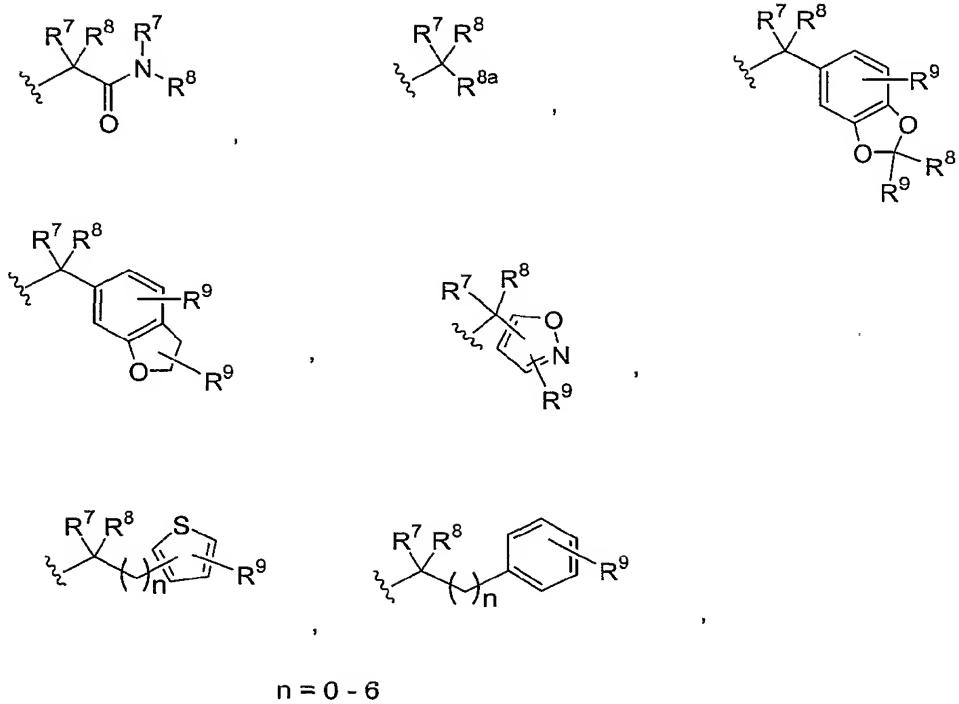


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof wherein

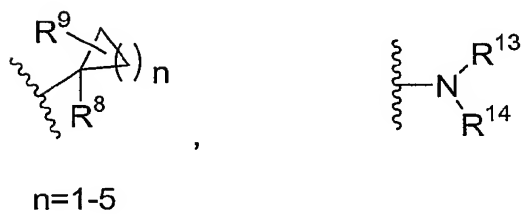
A is selected from the group consisting of



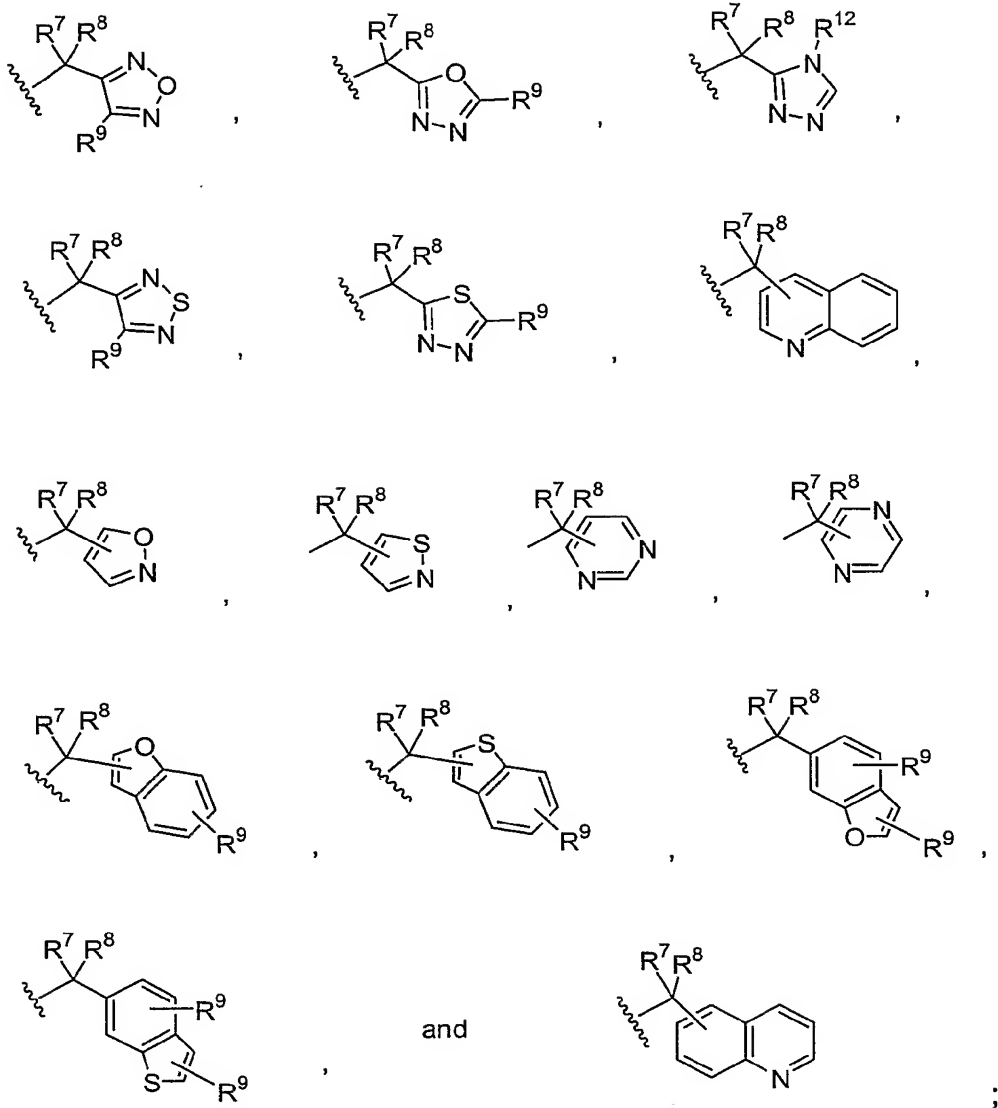
4



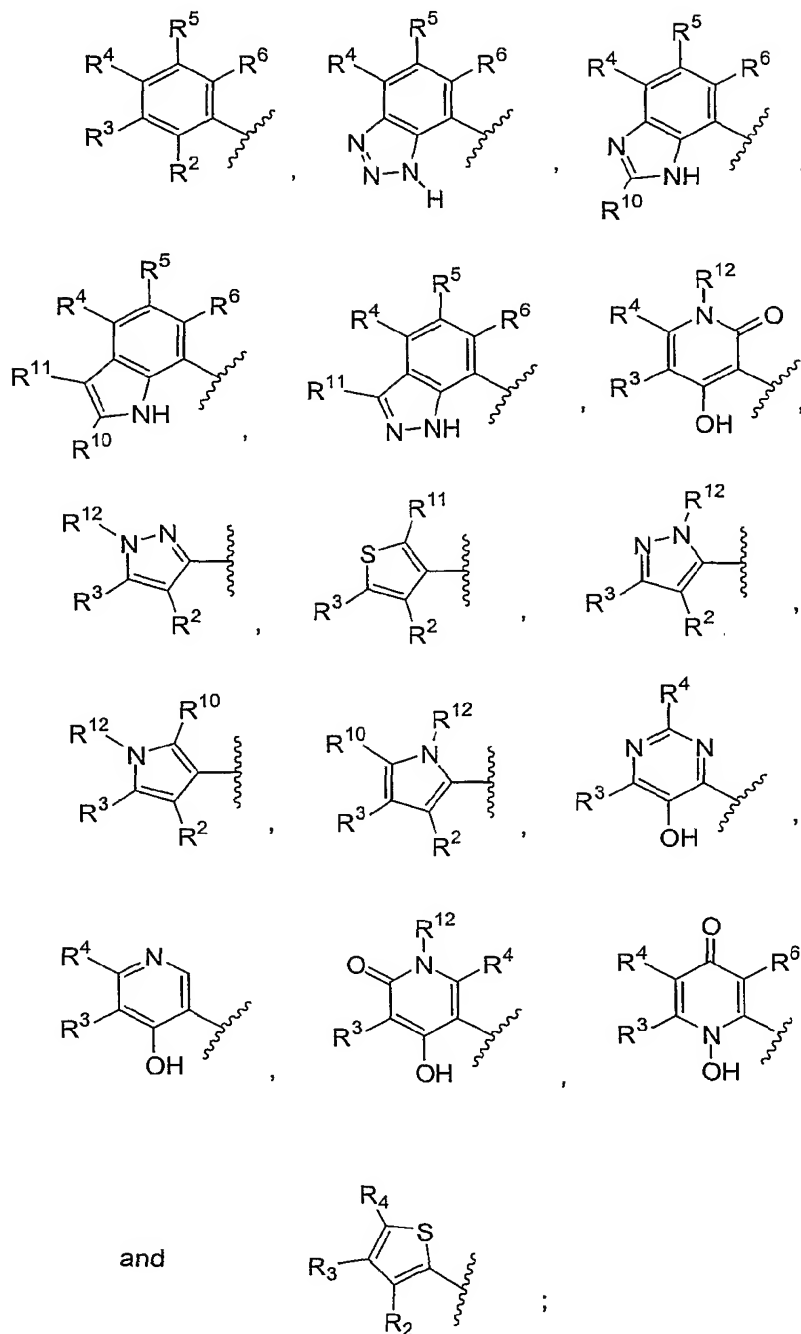
X=O, NH, S



5



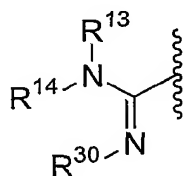
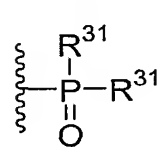
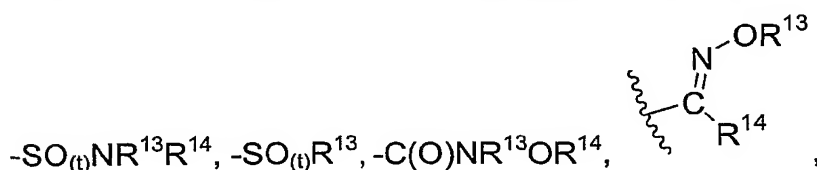
B is selected from the group consisting of



5 R^2 is hydrogen, OH, $-C(O)OH$, $-SH$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHC(O)R^{13}$, $-NHCO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHCO_2R^{13}$, $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NHOH$, $-C(O)NR^{13}OH$, $-S(O_2)OH$, $-OC(O)R^{13}$ or an unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic acidic functional group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^2 groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups;

R^3 and R^4 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, cyano, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -OH,
 5 -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O) R^{13} , -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NHR¹⁷, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,



-NHC(O) R^{17} , unsubstituted or substituted aryl and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^3 and R^4 groups are the same or
 10 different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups;

R^5 and R^6 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -CF₃, -OCF₃,
 -NO₂, -C(O) R^{13} , -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, cyano, an
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^5 and R^6 groups are the same or
 15 different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups;

R^7 and R^8 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
 aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl,
 20 unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl,
 unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, -CO₂ R^{13} ,

-CONR¹³R¹⁴, fluoroalkyl, alkynyl, alkynylalkyl, alkenyl, alkenylalkyl and cycloalkenyl,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^7 and R^8 groups are selected from
 the group consisting of

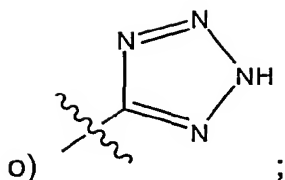
- a) H,
- b) halogen,
- c) -CF₃,
- d) -COR¹³,

- e) $-OR^{13}$,
- f) $-NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- g) $-NO_2$,
- h) $-CN$,
- i) $-SO_2OR^{13}$,
- j) $-Si(alkyl)_3$,
- k) $-Si(aryl)_3$,
- l) $-(R^{13})_2R^{14}Si$,
- m) $-CO_2R^{13}$,
- n) $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- o) $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- p) $-SO_2R^{13}$,
- q) $-O(C=O)R^{13}$,
- r) $-O(C=O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- s) $-NR^{13}C(O)R^{14}$, and
- t) $-NR^{13}CO_2R^{14}$;

R^{8a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl and cycloalkylalkyl;

R^9 is independently selected from 1-6 of the group consisting of:

- a) $-R^{13}$,
- b) halogen,
- c) $-CF_3$,
- d) $-COR^{13}$,
- e) $-OR^{13}$,
- f) $-NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- g) $-NO_2$,
- h) $-CN$,
- i) $-SO_2R^{13}$,
- j) $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- k) $-NR^{13}COR^{14}$,
- l) $-CONR^{13}R^{14}$,
- m) $-NR^{13}CO_2R^{14}$,
- n) $-CO_2R^{13}$, and



R^{10} and R^{11} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
 5 $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{SO}(\text{t})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$,
 $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{OR}^{14}$,
 $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$ and cyano;

R^{12} is hydrogen, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$, or an unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl,
 10 unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl,
 unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl or unsubstituted or substituted
 heteroarylalkyl group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{12} groups are the same or different
 and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups;

15 R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently selected from the
 group consisting of H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
 aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl,
 unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl,
 unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted
 20 fluoroalkyl, or

R^{13} and R^{14} can be taken together when both are attached to a nitrogen atom
 to form an unsubstituted or substituted 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring containing
 one to two heteroatoms selected from oxygen, sulfur and nitrogen,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{13} and R^{14} groups are the same
 25 or different and independently selected from 1-6 of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl,
 cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{15}$,
 $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{15}\text{R}^{16}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{15}\text{R}^{16}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{15}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{15}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ and halogen;

R^{15} and R^{16} are the same or different and are independently selected from the
 group consisting of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

R^{17} is $-\text{SO}_2$ alkyl, $-\text{SO}_2$ aryl, $-\text{SO}_2$ cycloalkyl or $-\text{SO}_2$ heteroaryl;

R^{30} is alkyl, cycloalkyl, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or $-\text{SO}_2R^{15}$;

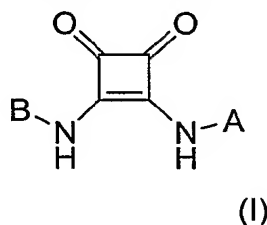
R^{31} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl and unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl;

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{31} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups; and

t is 0, 1 or 2.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides compounds of the formula (I):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof wherein the substituents are as defined in the Summary of the Invention.

Another aspect of the present invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising the compound of formula (I) in combination or association with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

Another aspect of the present invention is a method of treating an α -chemokine mediated disease in a mammal which comprises administering to a patient in need thereof of a therapeutically effective amount of the compound of formula (I), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

Examples of chemokine mediated diseases include psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, adult respiratory distress syndrome, arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, septic shock, endotoxic shock, gram negative sepsis, toxic shock syndrome, stroke, cardiac and renal reperfusion injury, glomerulo-nephritis or thrombosis, alzheimer's disease, graft vs. host reaction, allograft rejections and malaria.

Another aspect of the present invention is a method of treating cancer, comprising administering to a patient in need thereof, concurrently or sequentially, a

therapeutically effective amount of (a) a compound of formula (I), and (b) a microtubule affecting agent or antineoplastic agent or anti-angiogenesis agent or VEGF receptor kinase inhibitor or antibodies against the VEGF receptor or interferon, and/or c) radiation.

5 In further embodiments, a compound of formula (I) is combined with one of the following antineoplastic agents: gemcitabine, paclitaxel (Taxol®), 5-Fluorouracil (5-FU), cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan®), temozolomide, taxotere or Vincristine.

In another embodiment, the present invention provides a method of treating cancer, comprising administering, concurrently or sequentially, an effective amount of
10 (a) a compound of formula (I), and (b) a microtubule affecting agent (e.g., paclitaxel).

Unless indicated otherwise, the following definitions apply throughout the present specification and claims. These definitions apply regardless of whether a term is used by itself or in combination with other terms. Hence the definition of "alkyl" applies to "alkyl" as well as to the "alkyl" portions of "alkoxy", etc.

15 When any variable (e.g., aryl, R^2) occurs more than one time in any constituent, its definition on each occurrence is independent of its definition at every other occurrence. Also, combinations of substituents and/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

"Patient" includes both human and other mammals.

20 "Mammal" means humans and other animals. Preferably, mammal means humans.

"Alkyl" means a straight or branched saturated hydrocarbon chain having the designated number of carbon atoms. Where the number of carbon atoms is not specified, 1 to 20 carbons are intended. Preferred alkyl groups contain 1 to 12 carbon
25 atoms in the chain. More preferred alkyl groups contain 1 to 6 carbon atoms in the chain.

"Alkoxy" means an alkyl-O group in which alkyl is as previously defined. Non-limiting examples of alkoxy groups include methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, iso-propoxy and n-butoxy. The bond to the parent moiety is through the ether oxygen.

30 "Alkenyl" means an aliphatic hydrocarbon group containing at least one carbon-carbon double bond and which may be straight or branched. Where the number of carbon atoms is not specified, 2 to 20 carbons are intended. Preferred

alkenyl groups have 2 to 12 carbon atoms in the chain; and more preferably 2 to 6 carbon atoms in the chain. Non-limiting examples of suitable alkenyl groups include ethenyl, propenyl, n-butenyl, 3-methylbut-2-enyl, n-pentenyl, octenyl and decenyl.

"Alkynyl" means an aliphatic hydrocarbon group containing at least one carbon-carbon triple bond and which may be straight or branched. Where the number of carbon atoms is not specified, 2 to 15 carbons are intended. Preferred alkynyl groups have 2 to 12 carbon atoms in the chain; and more preferably 2 to 4 carbon atoms in the chain. Non-limiting examples of suitable alkynyl groups include ethynyl, propynyl, 2-butenyl, 3-methylbutynyl, n-pentynyl, and decynyl.

"Aryl" means an aromatic monocyclic or multicyclic ring system comprising about 6 to about 14 carbon atoms, preferably about 6 to about 10 carbon atoms. Non-limiting examples of suitable aryl groups include phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, anthracenyl, fluorenyl and the like.

"Arylalkyl" means an aryl-alkyl group in which the aryl and alkyl groups are as defined. Non-limiting examples of suitable arylalkyl groups include benzyl, phenethyl and naphthlenemethyl. The bond to the parent moiety is through the alkyl group.

"Cycloalkyl" means a non-aromatic ring system having 3 to 10 carbon atoms and one to three rings, preferably 5 to 10 carbon atoms. Preferred cycloalkyl rings contain 5 to 7 ring atoms. Non-limiting examples of cycloalkyl groups include cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, norbornyl, adamantyl and the like.

"Cycloalkylalkyl" means a cycloalkyl group attached to the parent moiety through an alkyl group. Non-limiting examples include cyclopropylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl and the like.

"Cycloalkenyl" means a non-aromatic mono or multicyclic ring system comprising 3 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably 5 to 10 carbon atoms which contains at least one carbon-carbon double bond. Preferred cycloalkenyl rings contain 5 to 7 ring atoms. Non-limiting examples of cycloalkyl groups include cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, norbornenyl and the like.

"Cycloalkenyl" means a non-aromatic mono or multicyclic ring system comprising 3 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably 5 to 10 carbon atoms which contains at least one carbon-carbon double bond. Preferred cycloalkenyl rings contain 5 to 7 ring atoms. Non-limiting examples of cycloalkyl groups include cyclopentenyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptenyl, norbornenyl and the like.

"Halo" means fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo groups. Preferred are fluoro, chloro or bromo, and more preferred are fluoro and chloro.

"Halogen" means fluorine, chlorine, bromine, or iodine. Preferred are fluorine, chlorine or bromine, and more preferred are fluorine and chlorine.

5 "Haloalkyl" means an alkyl group as defined above wherein one or more hydrogen atoms on the alkyl is replaced by a halo group defined above.

"Heterocyclyl" or "heterocyclic" means a non-aromatic saturated monocyclic or multicyclic ring system comprising 3 to 10 ring atoms, preferably 5 to 10 ring atoms, in which one or more of the atoms in the ring system is an element other than carbon, for
10 example nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur, alone or in combination. There are no adjacent oxygen and/or sulfur atoms present in the ring system. Preferred heterocyclyls contain 5 to 6 ring atoms. The prefix aza, oxa or thia before the heterocyclyl root name means that at least a nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom respectively is present as a ring atom.

15 The nitrogen or sulfur atom of the heterocyclyl can be optionally oxidized to the corresponding N-oxide, S-oxide or S,S-dioxide. Non-limiting examples of suitable monocyclic heterocyclyl rings include piperidyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, 1,4-dioxanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, and the like.

20 The term heterocyclic acidic functional group is intended to include groups such as, pyrrole, imidazole, triazole, tetrazole, and the like.

"Heteroaryl" means an aromatic monocyclic or multicyclic ring system comprising 5 to 14 ring atoms, preferably 5 to 10 ring atoms, in which one or more of the ring atoms is an element other than carbon, for example nitrogen, oxygen or
25 sulfur, alone or in combination. Preferred heteroaryls contain 5 to 6 ring atoms. The prefix aza, oxa or thia before the heteroaryl root name means that at least a nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom respectively, is present as a ring atom. A nitrogen atom of a heteroaryl can be optionally oxidized to the corresponding N-oxide. Non-limiting examples of suitable heteroaryls include pyridyl, pyrazinyl, furanyl, thienyl, pyrimidinyl,
30 isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, furazanyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, triazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, quinoxalanyl, phthalazinyl, imidazo[1,2-a]pyridinyl, imidazo[2,1-b]thiazolyl, benzofurazanyl, indolyl, azaindolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzothienyl, quinolanyl, imidazolyl, thienopyridyl, quinazolinyl,

thienopyrimidyl, pyrrolopyridyl, imidazopyridyl, isoquinolinyl, benzoazaindolyl, 1,2,4-triazinyl, benzothiazolyl and the like.

"Heteroarylalkyl" means a heteroaryl-alkyl group where the bond to the parent moiety is through an alkyl group.

5 N-oxides can form on a tertiary nitrogen present in an R substituent, or on =N- in a heteroaryl ring substituent and are included in the compounds of formula I.

The term "prodrug," as used herein, represents compounds which are rapidly transformed *in vivo* to the parent compound of the above formula, for example, by hydrolysis in blood. A thorough discussion is provided in T. Higuchi and V. Stella, Pro-
10 drugs as Novel Delivery Systems, Vol. 14 of the A.C.S. Symposium Series, and in Edward B. Roche, ed., Bioreversible Carriers in Drug Design, American Pharmaceutical Association and Pergamon Press, 1987, both of which are incorporated herein by reference.

As used herein, the term "composition" is intended to encompass a product
15 comprising the specified ingredients in the specified amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or indirectly, from combination of the specified ingredients in the specified amounts. Also, "Bn" represents benzyl.

R¹³ and R¹⁴ when taken together with the nitrogen they are attached to in the groups -NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -OC(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -CONR¹³R¹⁴,
20 -NR¹³C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_tNR¹³R¹⁴, -NHSO₂NR¹³R¹⁴ preferably form an unsubstituted or substituted 3 to 7 membered, saturated heterocyclic ring optionally containing one or two additional heteroatoms each independently selected from O, S or NR¹⁸ wherein R¹⁸ is selected from H, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, -C(O)R¹⁹, -SO₂R¹⁹ and -C(O)NR¹⁹R²⁰, wherein R¹⁹ and R²⁰ are the same or different and each is independently selected
25 from alkyl, aryl and heteroaryl, wherein the substituents on the substituted cyclized R¹³ and R¹⁴ groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1 to 3 of alkyl, aryl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, alkoxyalkyl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, -C(O)OR¹⁵, -C(O)NR¹⁵R¹⁶, -SO_tNR¹⁵R¹⁶, -C(O)R¹⁵, -SO₂R¹⁵, -NHC(O)NR¹⁵R¹⁶ and halogen, and wherein R¹⁵ and
30 R¹⁶ are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl.

In a preferred group of compounds of formula (I),

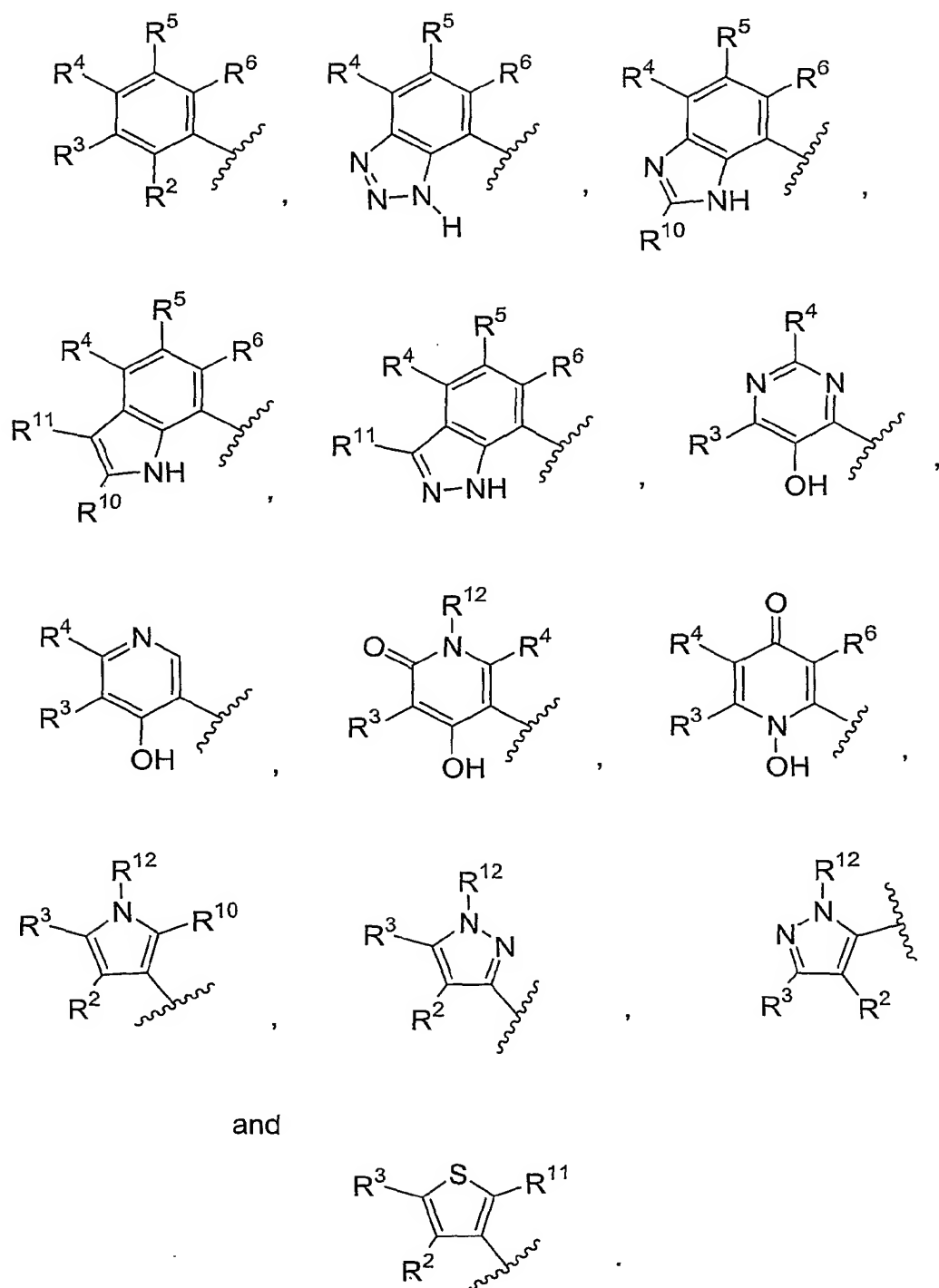
aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{CONR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, fluoroalkyl, alkynyl, alkenyl, and cycloalkenyl,

5 wherein said substituents on said R^7 and R^8 substituted groups are selected from the group consisting of:

- a) cyano,
- b) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- c) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- 10 d) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- e) $-\text{NO}_2$,
- f) $-\text{CF}_3$,
- g) $-\text{OR}^{13}$,
- h) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- 15 i) $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$,
- j) $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, and
- k) halogen; and

B is selected from the group consisting of:

17



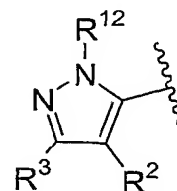
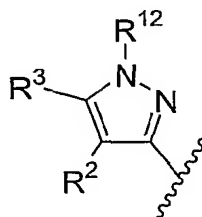
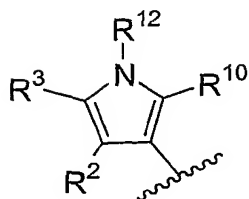
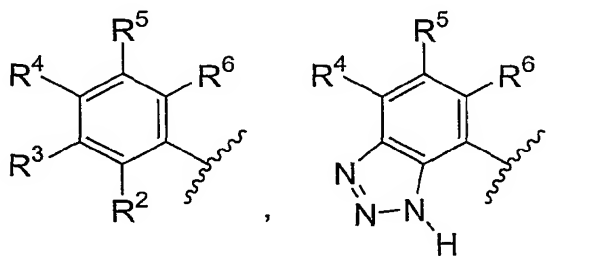
wherein R^2 to R^6 and R^{10} to R^{14} are as defined above.

More preferably,

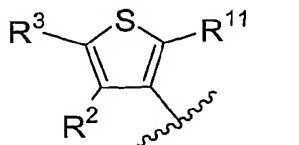
R^7 and R^8 are the same or different and are independently selected from H, alkyl, fluoroalkyl such as, $-\text{CF}_3$ and $-\text{CF}_2\text{CH}_3$; cycloalkyl and cycloalkylalkyl such as, for example, methyl, ethyl, t-butyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, cyclopropylmethyl and
 5 cyclohexyl, and

R^9 is the same or different and is 1-3 moieties selected from the group consisting of H, halogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, $-\text{CF}_3$, cyano, $-\text{OCH}_3$, and $-\text{NO}_2$;

B is selected from the group consisting of



and



wherein

R^2 is H, OH, $-\text{NHC(O)R}^{13}$ or $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}^{13}$;

R^3 is $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, cyano, $-\text{C(O)NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$; or $-\text{C(O)OR}^{13}$;

R^4 is H, $-\text{NO}_2$, cyano, $-\text{CH}_3$, halogen, or $-\text{CF}_3$;

R^5 is H, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{NO}_2$, halogen or cyano;

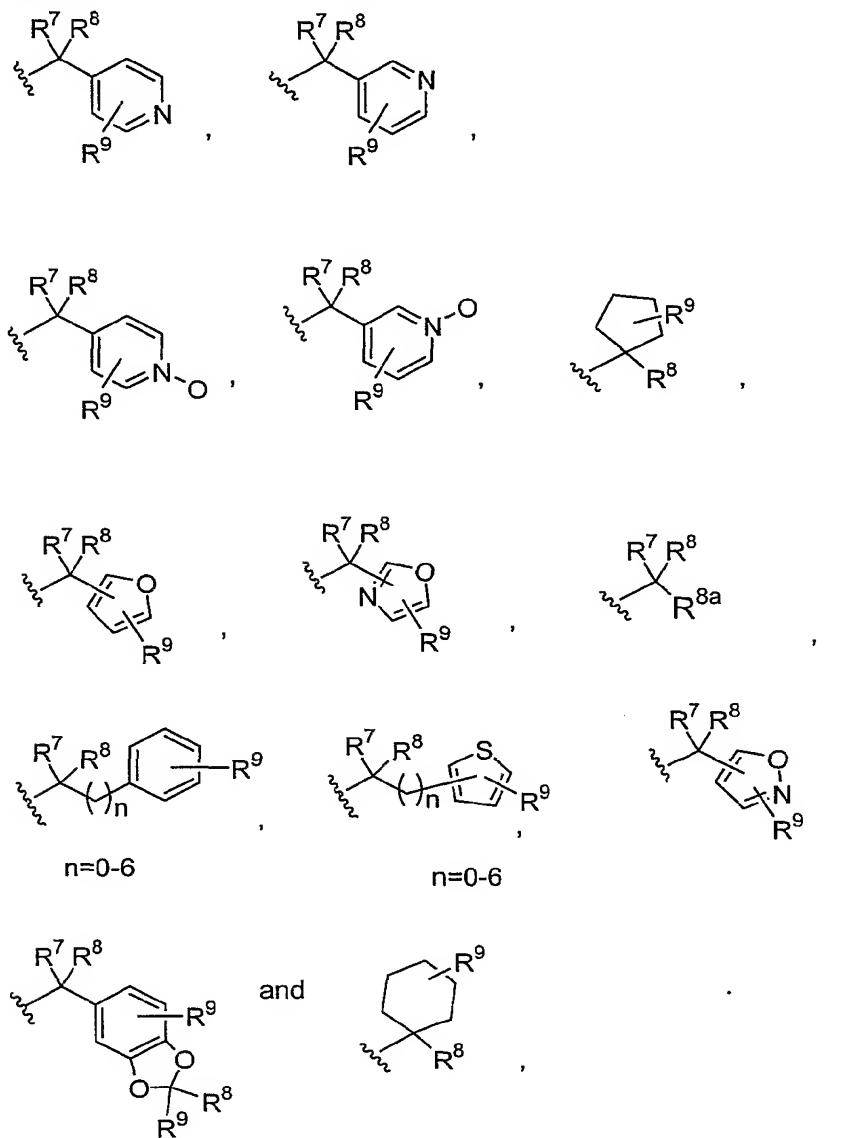
R^6 is H, alkyl or $-\text{CF}_3$;

R^{10} and R^{11} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-CF_3$, $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)OR^{13}$, $-SH$, $-SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2R^{13}$, $-NHC(O)R^{13}$, $-NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHSO_2R^{13}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}OR^{14}$, $-OC(O)R^{13}$, $-COR^{13}$, $-OR^{13}$, and cyano;

R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently selected from methyl, ethyl and isopropyl; or

R^{13} and R^{14} when taken together with the nitrogen they are attached to in the groups $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-OC(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-CONR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$ preferably form an unsubstituted or substituted 3 to 7 membered, saturated heterocyclic ring optionally containing one additional heteroatom selected from O, S or NR¹⁸ wherein R^{18} is selected from H, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, $-C(O)R^{19}$, $-SO_2R^{19}$ and $-C(O)NR^{19}R^{20}$, wherein R^{19} and R^{20} are the same or different and each is independently selected from alkyl, aryl and heteroaryl, wherein the substituents on the substituted cyclized R^{13} and R^{14} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1 to 3 of alkyl, aryl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, alkoxyalkyl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-SO_{(t)}NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$, $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$ and halogen, and wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

Even more preferably, A is selected from the group consisting of:

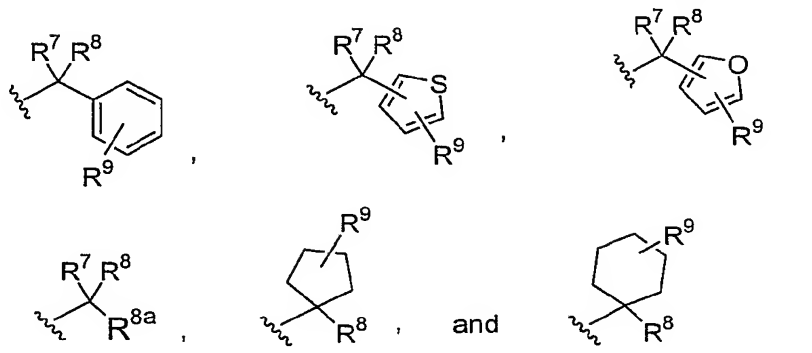


R^7 is H, fluoroalkyl, alkyl or cycloalkyl;

R^8 is H, alkyl, $-CF_2CH_3$ or $-CF_3$;

R^9 is H, F, Cl, Br, alkyl or $-CF_3$.

Still even more preferably, A is selected from the group consisting of



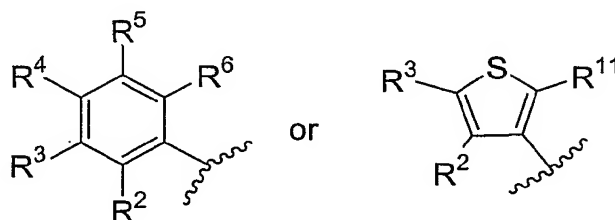
wherein,

R^7 is H, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CH_3$, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl or t-butyl;

R^8 is H;

R^9 is H, F, Cl, Br, alkyl or $-CF_3$, and

B is:



wherein:

R^2 is H, OH, $-NHC(O)R^{13}$ or $-NHSO_2R^{13}$;

R^3 is $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NO_2$, cyano, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2R^{13}$; or $-C(O)OR^{13}$;

R^4 is H, $-NO_2$, cyano, $-CH_3$ or $-CF_3$;

R^5 is H, $-CF_3$, $-NO_2$, halogen or cyano; and

R^6 is H, alkyl or $-CF_3$;

R^{11} is H, halogen or alkyl; and

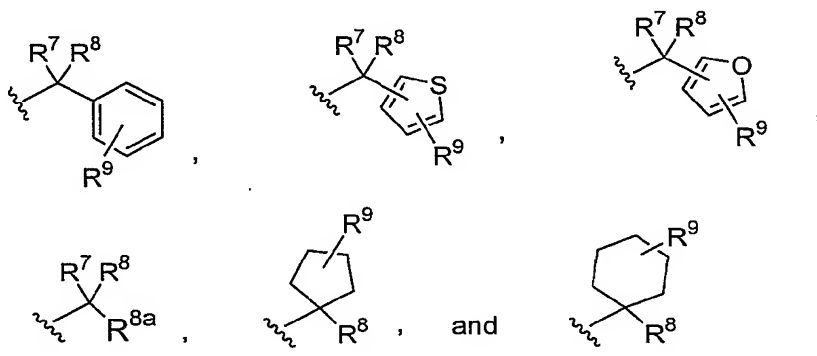
R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently methyl, ethyl or isopropyl; or

R^{13} and R^{14} when taken together with the nitrogen they are attached to in the groups $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-OC(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-CONR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHCO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$ preferably form an unsubstituted or substituted 3 to 7 membered, saturated heterocyclic ring optionally containing one additional heteroatom selected from O, S or NR^{18} wherein R^{18} is selected from H, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, $-C(O)R^{19}$, $-SO_2R^{19}$ and $-C(O)NR^{19}R^{20}$, wherein R^{19} and R^{20} are

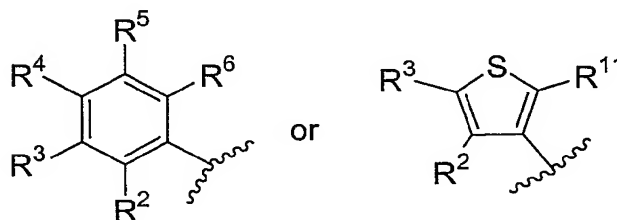
the same or different and each is independently selected from alkyl, aryl and heteroaryl, wherein the substituents on the substituted cyclized R^{13} and R^{14} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1 to 3 of alkyl, aryl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, alkoxyalkyl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-SO_2NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$, $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$ and halogen, and wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

Yet even still more preferred,

A is selected from the group consisting of



and B is:



wherein:

R^2 is H, OH, $-NHC(O)R^{13}$ or $-NHSO_2R^{13}$;

R^3 is $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2R^{13}$, $-NO_2$ or cyano;

R^4 is H, $-NO_2$, $-CF_3$, $-CH_3$ or cyano,

R^5 is H, halogen, $-NO_2$, cyano or $-CF_3$;

R^6 is H, $-CF_3$ or alkyl,

R^7 is H, $-CF_3$, $-CF_2CH_3$, methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl or t-butyl;

R^8 is H;

R^9 is H, F, Cl, Br, alkyl, cycloalkyl or $-CF_3$;

R^{11} is H, halogen or alkyl; and

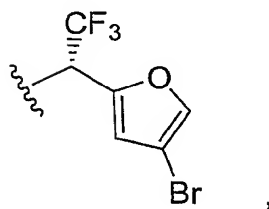
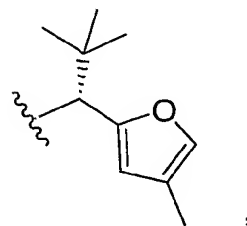
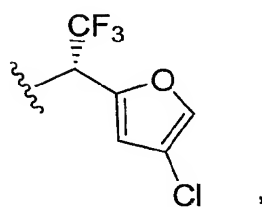
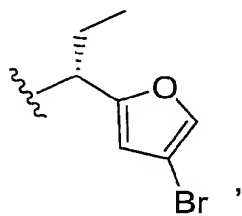
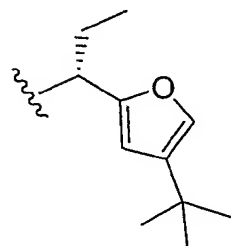
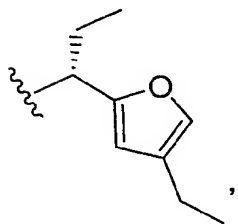
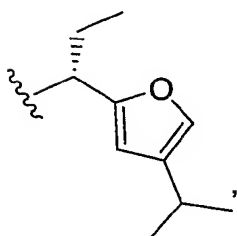
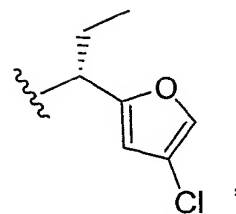
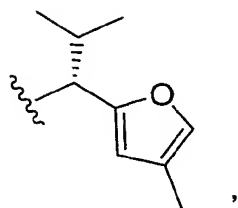
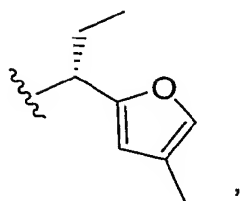
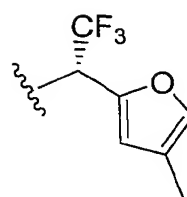
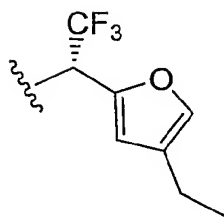
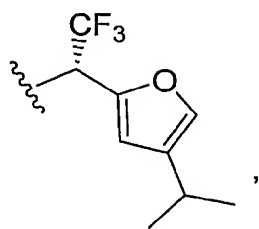
R^{13} and R^{14} are independently methyl or ethyl.

5

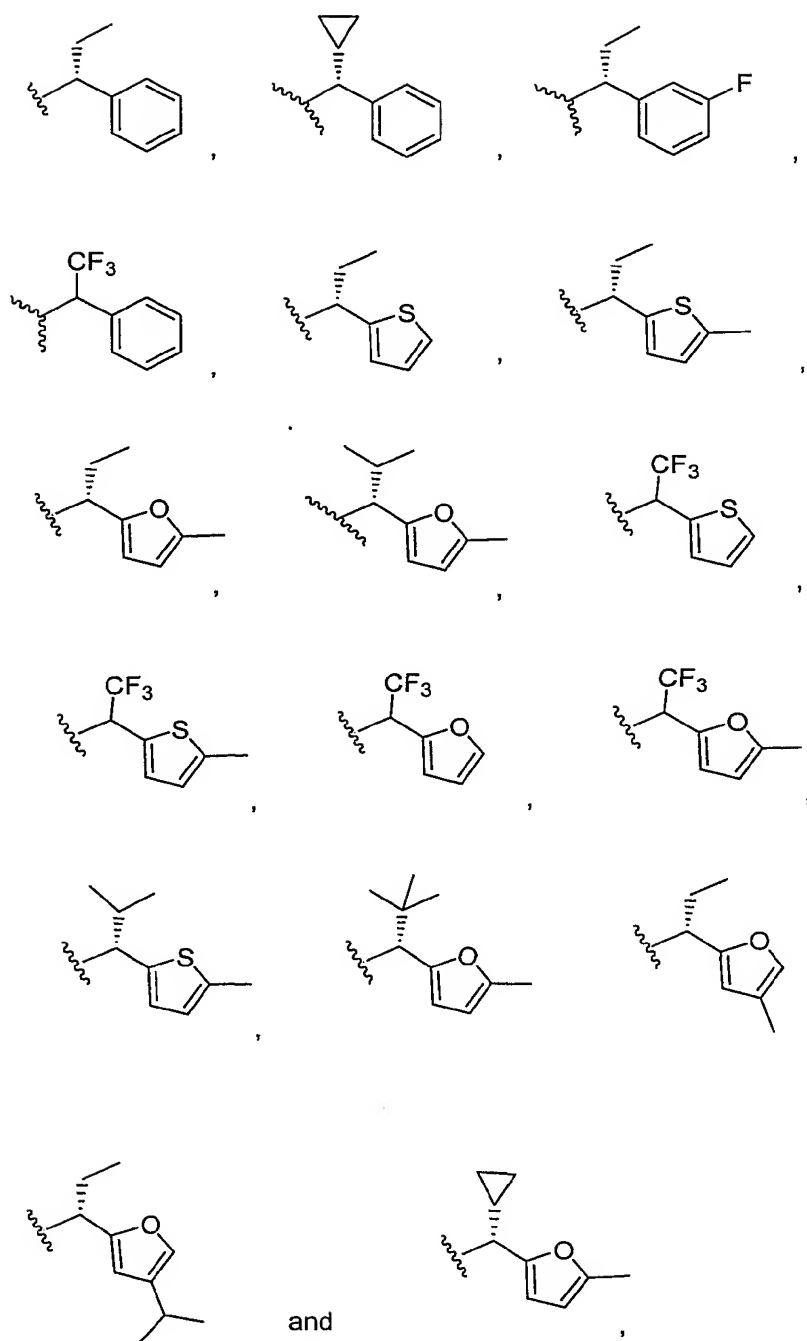
Most preferably,

A is selected from the group consisting of

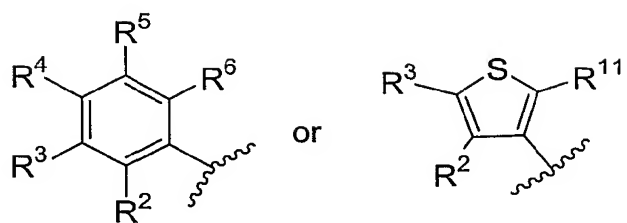
24



25



and B is



wherein,

R^2 is $-\text{OH}$;

R^3 is $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ or $-\text{CONR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$;

5 R^4 is H, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{CF}_3$;

R^5 is H or cyano;

R^6 is H, $-\text{CH}_3$ or $-\text{CF}_3$;

R^{11} is H, and

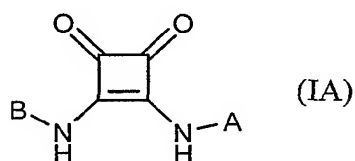
R^{13} and R^{14} are methyl.

10

Representative embodiments of this invention are described below. The embodiments have been numbered for purposes of reference thereto.

Embodiment No. 1 is directed to the methods of treatment described above using formula I, except the compounds used are those of formula IA:

15

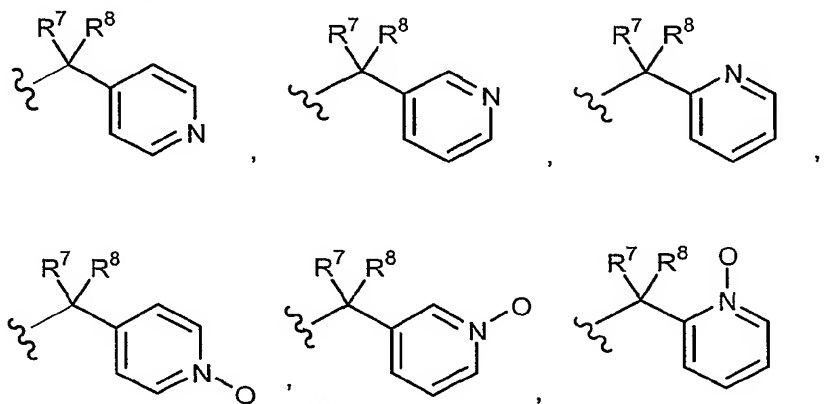


and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts (e.g., sodium or calcium salt) and solvates thereof, wherein:

20

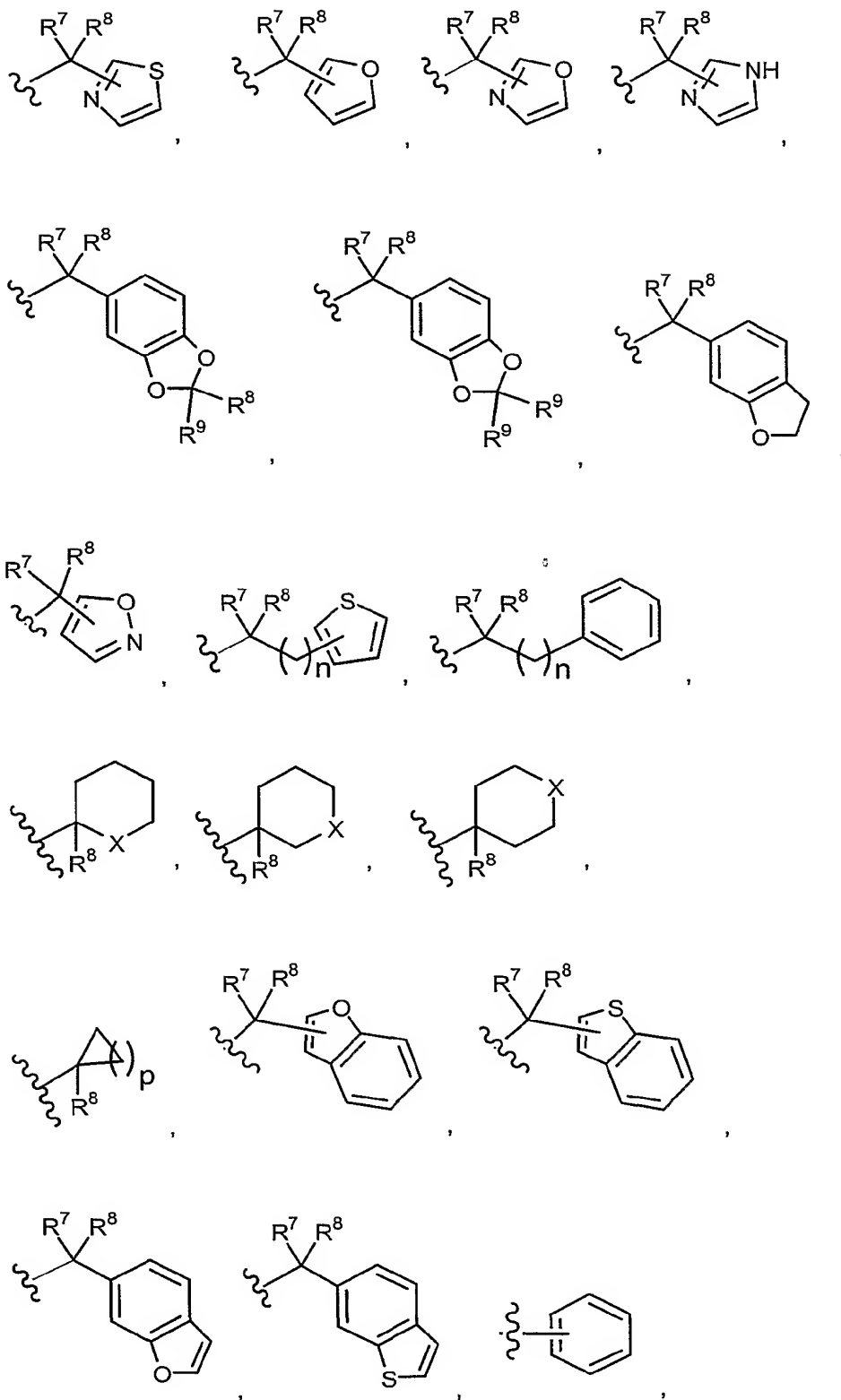
A is selected from the group consisting of:

(1)



25

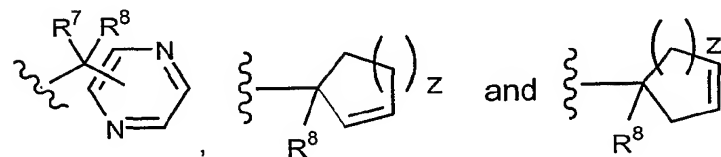
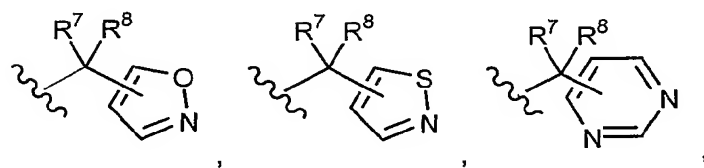
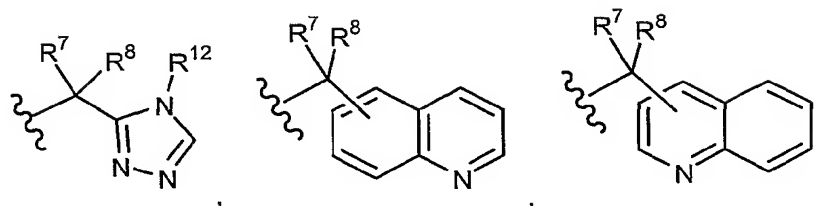
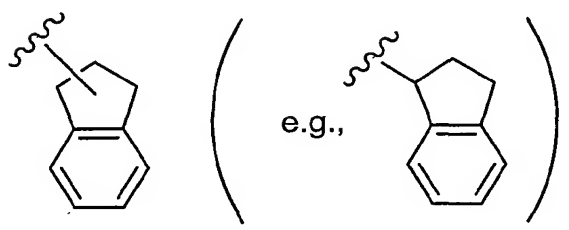
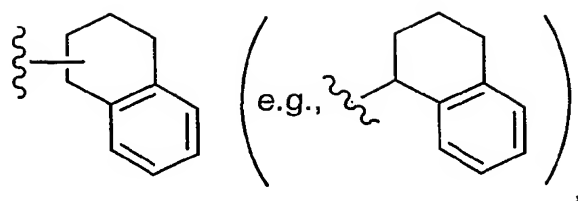
27



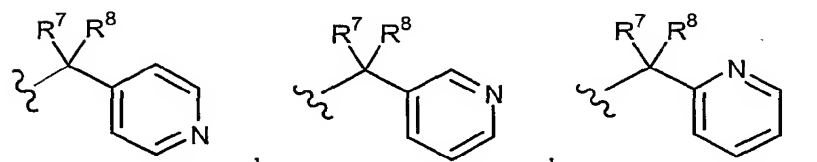
5

10

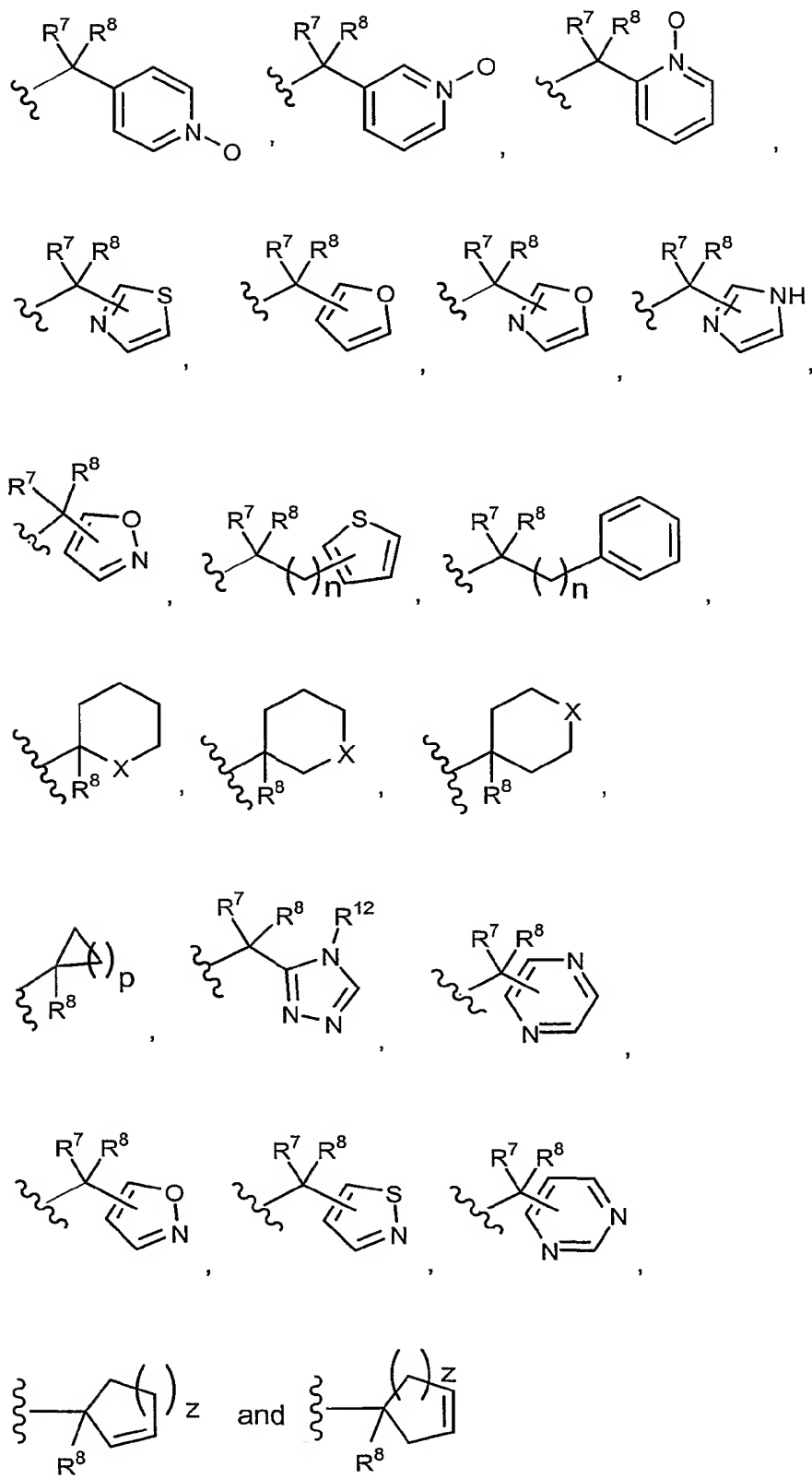
28



(2)



29

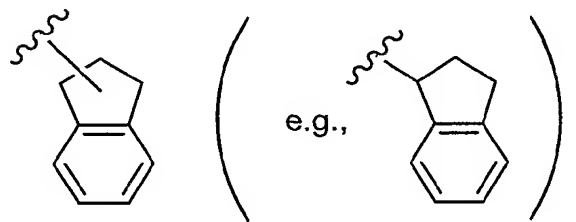
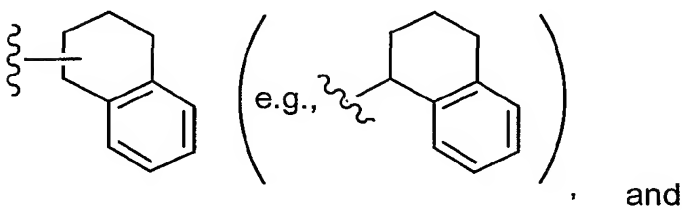
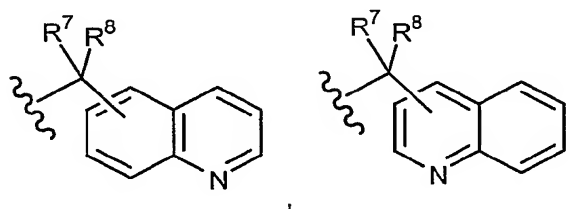
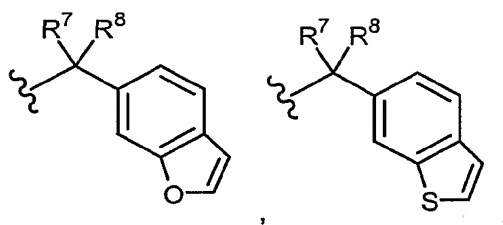
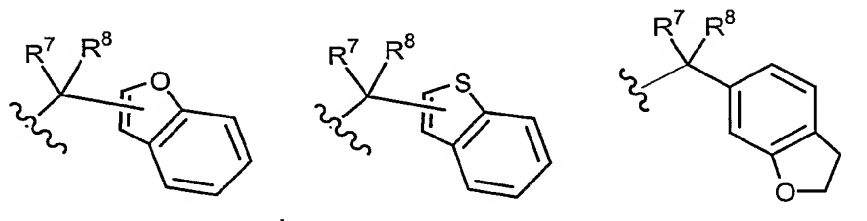


5

10

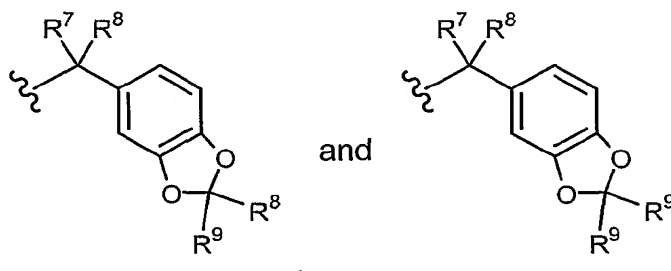
wherein the above rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 6 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

(3)



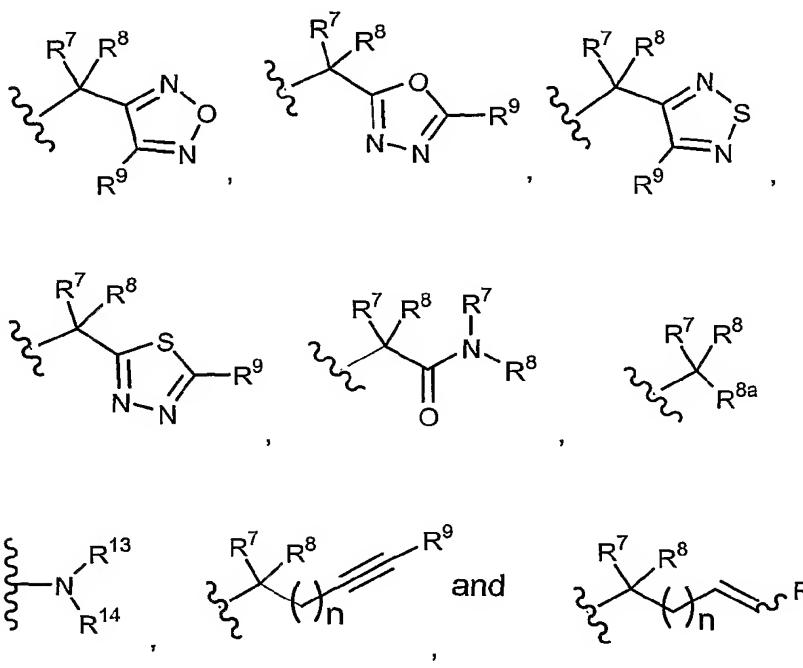
wherein one or both of the above rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 6 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

(4)

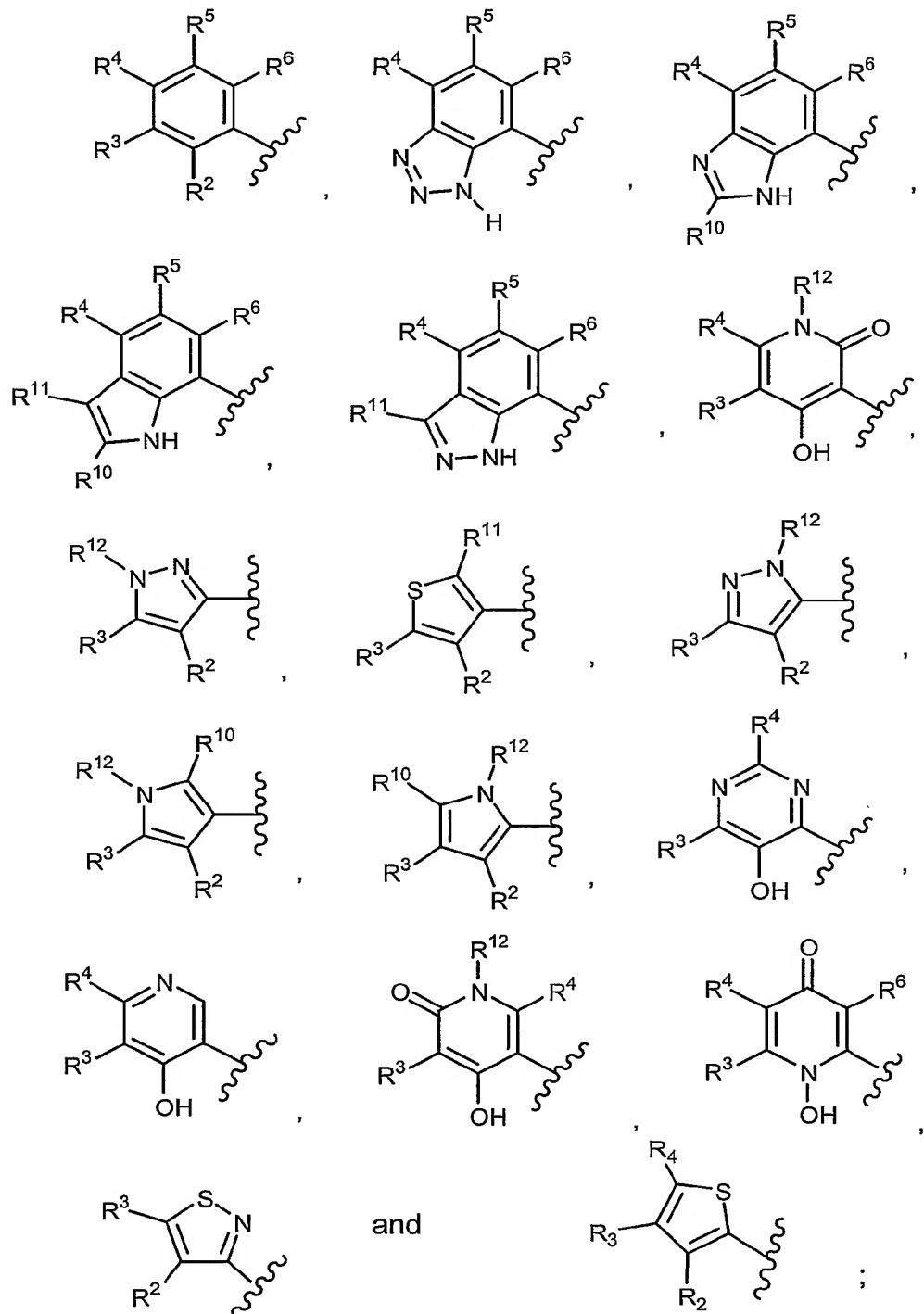


5 wherein the above phenyl rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 3 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups; and

(5)



B is selected from the group consisting of



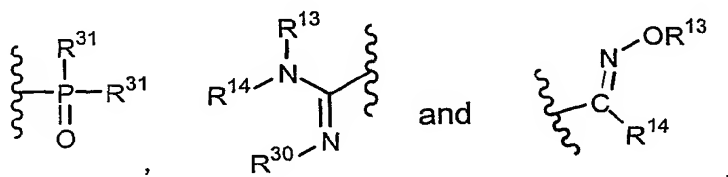
n is 0 to 6; p is 1 to 5; X is O, NH, or S; Z is 1 to 3;

R² is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, OH, -C(O)OH, -SH,

5 -SO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -NHC(O)R¹³, -NHSO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -NHSO₂R¹³, -NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,

-C(O)NHR¹³, -C(O)NR¹³OH, -S(O₂)OH, -OC(O)R¹³, an unsubstituted heterocyclic acidic functional group, and a substituted heterocyclic acidic functional group; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heterocyclic acidic functional group each substituent being independently selected from the group consisting of: R⁹ groups;

each R³ and R⁴ is independently selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, cyano, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -OH, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O)R¹³, -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NHR¹⁷, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)R¹³, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl,



wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted aryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R⁹ groups; and wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heteroaryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R⁹ groups;

each R⁵ and R⁶ are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O)R¹³, -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, cyano, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl group; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted aryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R⁹ groups; and wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heteroaryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R⁹ groups;

each R⁷ and R⁸ is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, -CO₂R¹³, -CONR¹³R¹⁴, alkynyl, alkenyl, and cycloalkenyl; and wherein there are one or more (e.g., 1 to 6) substituents on said substituted R⁷

and R^8 groups, wherein each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- a) halogen,
- b) $-CF_3$,
- 5 c) $-COR^{13}$,
- d) $-OR^{13}$,
- e) $-NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- f) $-NO_2$,
- 10 g) $-CN$,
- h) $-SO_2OR^{13}$,
- i) $-Si(alkyl)_3$, wherein each alkyl is independently selected,
- j) $-Si(aryl)_3$, wherein each alkyl is independently selected,
- k) $-(R^{13})_2R^{14}Si$, wherein each R^{13} is independently selected,
- l) $-CO_2R^{13}$,
- 15 m) $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- n) $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- o) $-SO_2R^{13}$,
- p) $-OC(O)R^{13}$,
- q) $-OC(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- 20 r) $-NR^{13}C(O)R^{14}$, and
- s) $-NR^{13}CO_2R^{14}$;

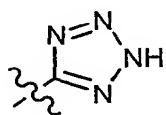
(fluoroalkyl is one non-limiting example of an alkyl group that is substituted with halogen);

R^{8a} is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl and
25 cycloalkylalkyl;

each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-R^{13}$,
- b) halogen,
- c) $-CF_3$,
- 30 d) $-COR^{13}$,
- e) $-OR^{13}$,
- f) $-NR^{13}R^{14}$,
- g) $-NO_2$,

- h) $-\text{CN}$,
 i) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
 j) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
 k) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{COR}^{14}$,
 l) $-\text{CONR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
 m) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{14}$,
 n) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
 o)



p) alkyl substituted with one or more (e.g., one) $-\text{OH}$ groups (e.g., $-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{OH}$, wherein q is 1-6, usually 1 to 2, and preferably 1),

q) alkyl substituted with one or more (e.g., one) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ group (e.g., $-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, wherein q is 1-6, usually 1 to 2, and preferably 1), and

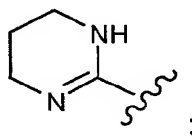
r) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{13})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., R^{13} is H and R^{14} is alkyl, such as methyl);
 each R^{10} and R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl (e.g., C_1 to C_6 , such as methyl), halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{SO}_{(t)}\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{OR}^{14}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$ and cyano;

R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl group; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on the substituted R^{12} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^{13} and R^{14} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or

substituted fluoroalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted heterocycloalkylalkyl (wherein "heterocycloalkyl" means heterocyclic); wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted R^{13} and R^{14} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, $-CF_3$, $-OH$, alkoxy, aryl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, $-N(R^{40})_2$, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-S(O)_tNR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$ provided that R^{15} is not H, halogen, and $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$; or

R^{13} and R^{14} taken together with the nitrogen they are attached to in the groups $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-OC(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-CONR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_tNR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$ form an unsubstituted or substituted saturated heterocyclic ring (preferably a 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring), said ring optionally containing one additional heteroatom selected from the group consisting of: O, S and NR^{18} ; wherein there are 1 to 3 substituents on the substituted cyclized R^{13} and R^{14} groups (i.e., there is 1 to 3 substituents on the ring formed when the R^{13} and R^{14} groups are taken together with the nitrogen to which they are bound) and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, aryl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, alkoxyalkyl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-SO_tNR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$ provided that R^{15} is not H, $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-NHC(O)OR^{15}$, halogen, and a heterocycloalkenyl group (i.e., a heterocyclic group that has at least one, and preferably one, double bond in a ring, e.g.,



each R^{15} and R^{16} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

R^{17} is selected from the group consisting of: $-SO_2$ alkyl, $-SO_2$ aryl, $-SO_2$ cycloalkyl, and $-SO_2$ heteroaryl;

R^{18} is selected from the group consisting of: H, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, $-C(O)R^{19}$, $-SO_2R^{19}$ and $-C(O)NR^{19}R^{20}$;

each R^{19} and R^{20} is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

R^{30} is selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, cycloalkyl, -CN, -NO₂, or -SO₂R¹⁵ provided that R^{15} is not H;

each R^{31} is independently selected from the group consisting of: unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl and unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted R^{31} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^{40} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, alkyl and cycloalkyl; and

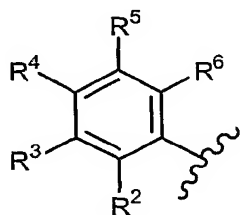
t is 0, 1 or 2.

In Embodiment No. 1, at least one (e.g., 1 to 3, and usually one) compound of formula IA are used.

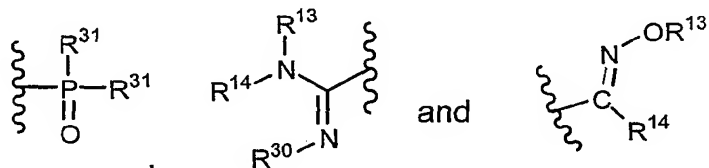
Embodiment No. 2 is directed to the use of at least one (e.g., 1 to 3, and usually 1) compound of formula IA for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of the diseases described above in the methods of treatment using formula I.

Embodiment No. 3 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:

(1)

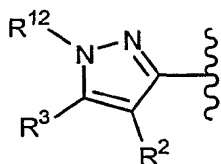


wherein R^3 is selected from the group consisting of: -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,



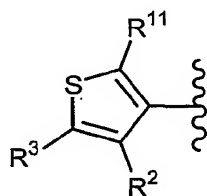
and all other substituents are as defined for formula I or IA;

(2)



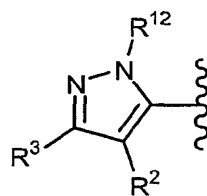
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA;

(3)



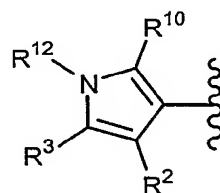
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA;

(4)



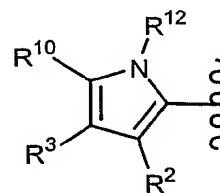
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA;

(5)



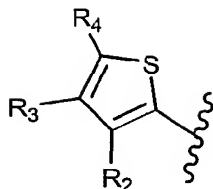
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA;

(6)



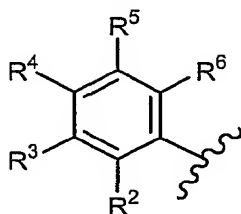
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA; and

(7)

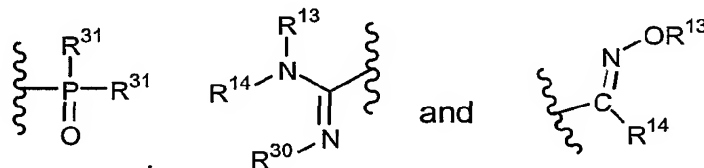


wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 4 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:

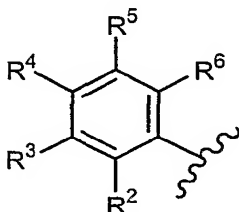


wherein R³ is selected from the group consisting of: -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,



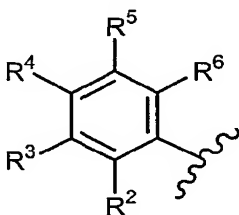
and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 5 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



R³ is -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

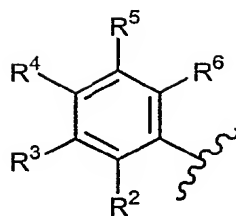
Embodiment No. 6 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is



R³ is -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, R¹³ and R¹⁴ are each the same or different alkyl group, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

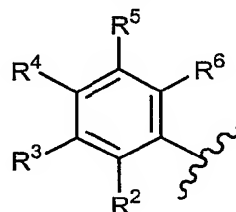
Embodiment No. 7 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is

40



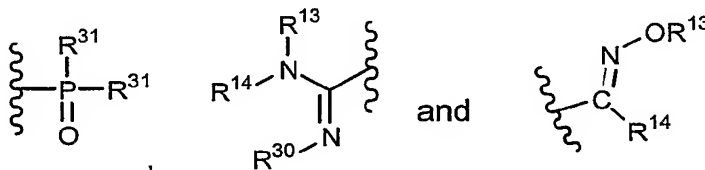
R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, R^3 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, R^{13} and R^{14} are each the same or different alkyl group, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 8 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is



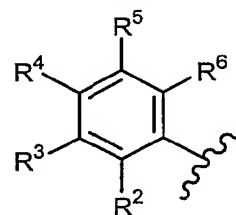
5

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of:



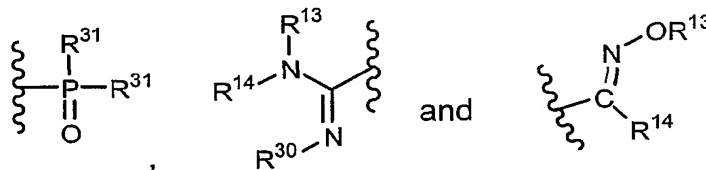
and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 9 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is



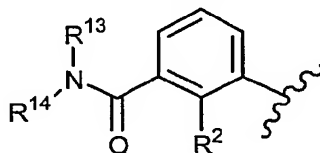
10

R^3 is selected from the group consisting of:



R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

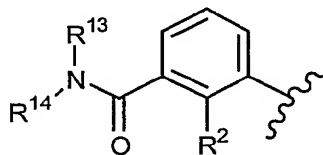
Embodiment No. 10 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



15

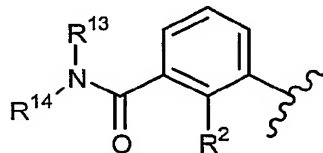
R^2 , R^{13} , and R^{14} are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 11 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



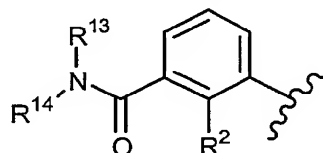
R^2 is $-OH$, R^{13} and R^{14} are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 12 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



R^2 is as defined for compounds of formula I or IA, R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different alkyl group, and all other substituents are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 13 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



R^2 is $-OH$, R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different alkyl group, and all other substituents are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA.

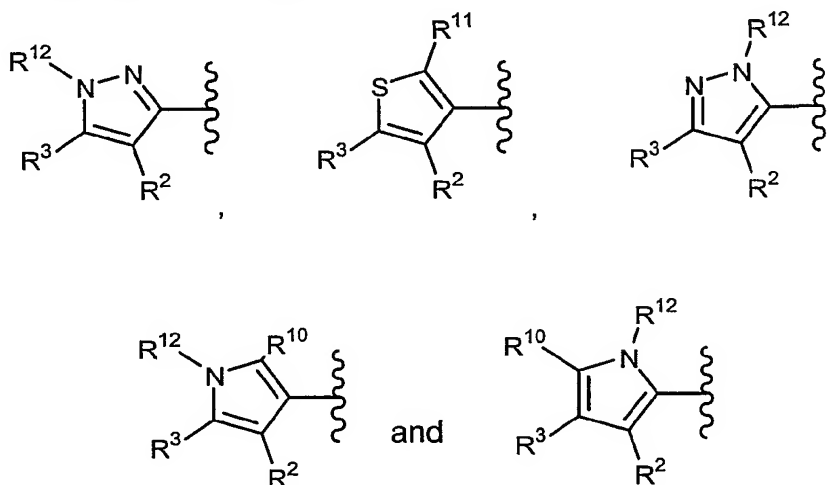
Embodiment No. 14 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in Embodiment No. 8, R^4 is H, R^5 is H, R^6 is H, and all other substituents are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 15 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in Embodiment No. 9, R^4 is H, R^5 is H, R^6 is H, and all other substituents are as defined for compounds of formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 16 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in Embodiments Nos. 6, 7, 10 and 11, except that R^{13} and R^{14} are each methyl, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

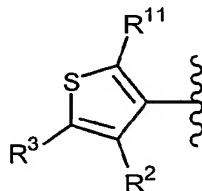
42

Embodiment No. 17 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:



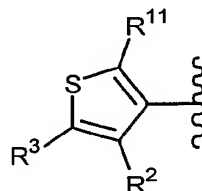
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 18 of this invention is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



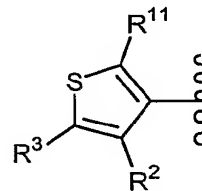
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 19 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



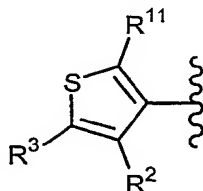
R^{11} is H, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 20 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



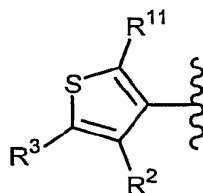
R^2 is $-OH$, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 21 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



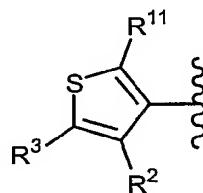
R³ is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 22 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



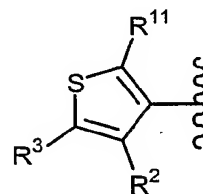
R³ is $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., t is 2), and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 23 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



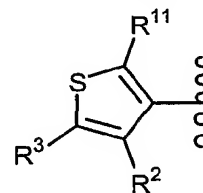
R² is $-\text{OH}$, R³ is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 24 of this invention is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



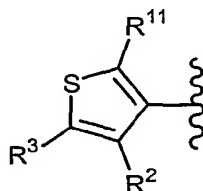
R² is $-\text{OH}$, and R³ is $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., t is 2), and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 25 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



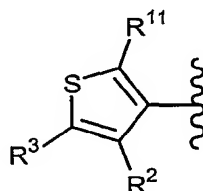
R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, R^3 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, R^{11} is H, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 26 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:

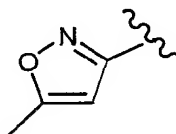


5 R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, R^3 is $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., t is 2), R^{11} is H, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

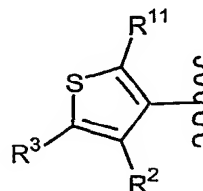
Embodiment No. 27 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



10 R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, R^3 is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, R^{11} is H, and R^{13} and R^{14} are independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, unsubstituted heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl, and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA. In general, one of R^{13} or R^{14} is alkyl (e.g., methyl). An example of a substituted heteroaryl group is



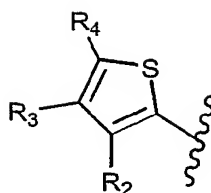
Embodiment No. 28 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:



15 R^2 is $-\text{OH}$, R^3 is $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., t is 2), R^{11} is H, and R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or alkyl group (e.g., methyl), and all other substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 29 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is:

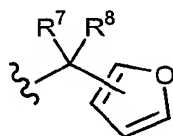
45



and all substituents are as defined in formula I or IA.

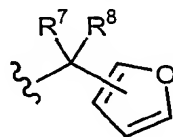
Embodiment No. 30 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is as defined in all of the preferred descriptions above for A in formula I, or A is as described for formula IA.

Embodiment No. 31 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is:



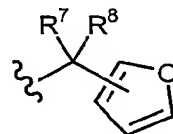
wherein the furan ring is unsubstituted or substituted as described in the definition of A for formula I or IA, and all other substituents are as defined for formula IA.

Embodiment No. 32 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is



wherein the furan ring is substituted and all other substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

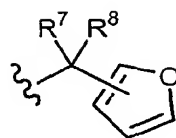
Embodiment No. 33 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is



wherein the furan ring is substituted with at least one (e.g., 1 to 3, or 1 to 2) alkyl group and all other substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

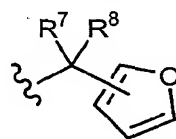
Embodiment No. 34 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, A is

46



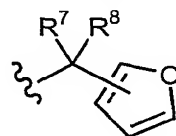
wherein the furan ring is substituted with one alkyl group and all other substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 35 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as
5 described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is



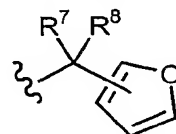
wherein the furan ring is substituted with one C₁ to C₃ alkyl group (e.g., methyl or isopropyl), and all other substituents are as defined for formula I or IA.

Embodiment No. 36 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as
10 described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is



as defined in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 31 to 35, except that R⁷ and R⁸ are the same or different and each is selected from the group consisting of: H and alkyl.

Embodiment No. 37 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is as
15 described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 29, and A is



as defined in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 31 to 35, except that R⁷ is H, and R⁸ is alkyl (e.g., ethyl or t-butyl).

Embodiment No. 38 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 37
20 wherein the compound of formula IA is a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

Embodiment No. 39 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 37 wherein the compound of formula IA is a sodium salt.

Embodiment No. 40 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 37 wherein the compound of formula IA is a calcium salt.

Embodiment No. 41 is directed to a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of any one of the representative compounds of this invention.

Embodiment No. 42 is directed to a sodium salt of any one of the representative compounds of this invention.

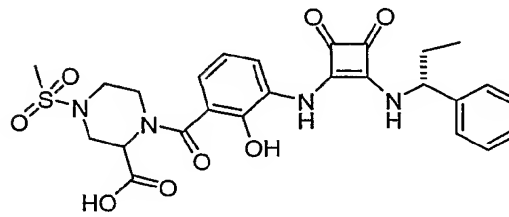
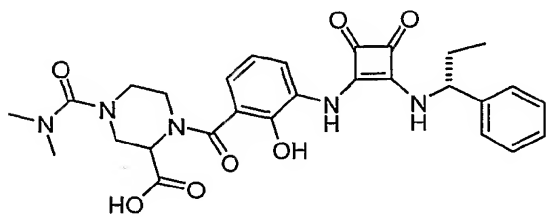
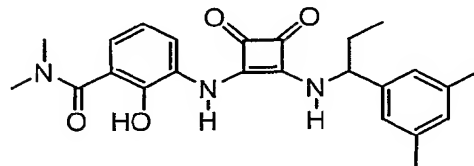
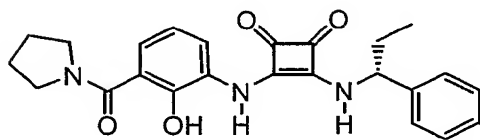
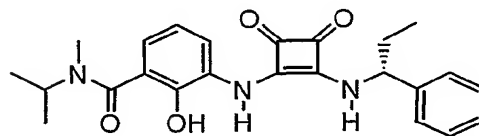
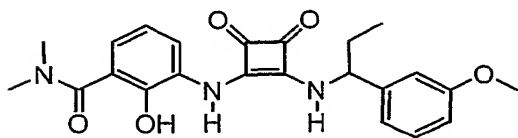
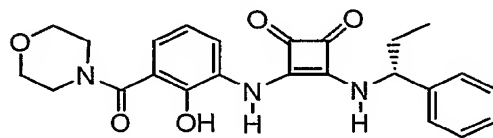
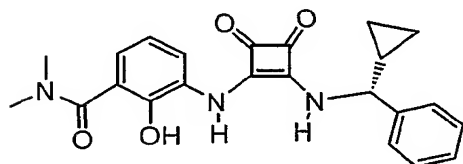
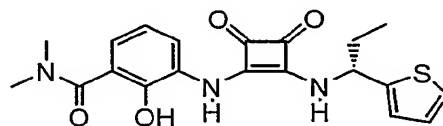
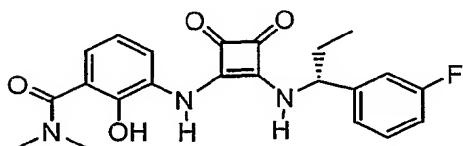
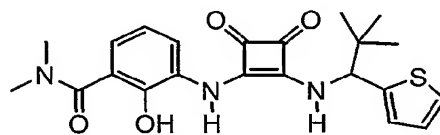
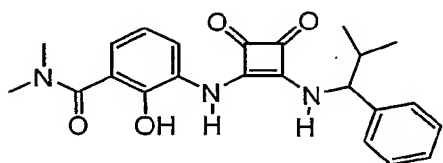
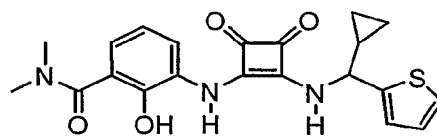
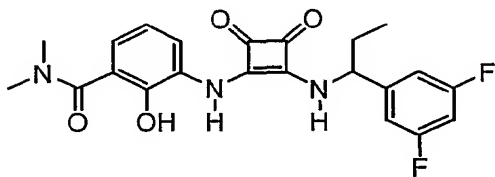
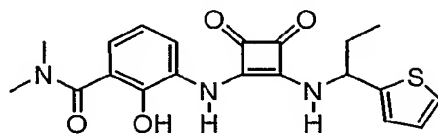
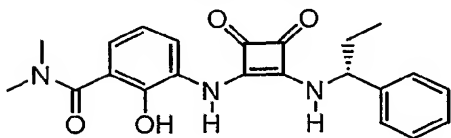
5 Embodiment No. 43 is directed to a calcium salt of any one of the representative compounds of this invention.

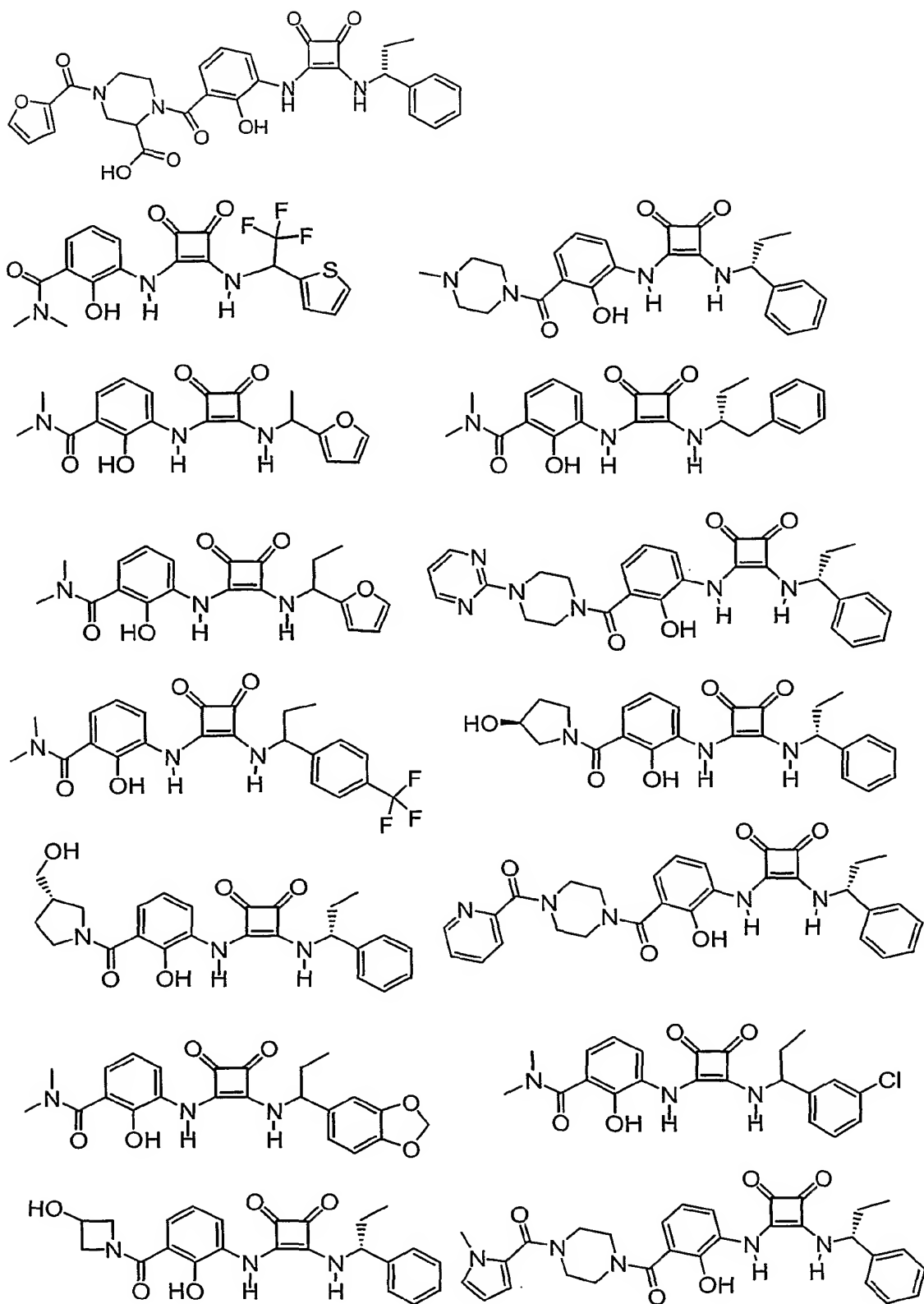
Embodiment No. 44 is directed to a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one (e.g., 1 to 3, usually 1) compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 43 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable
10 carrier.

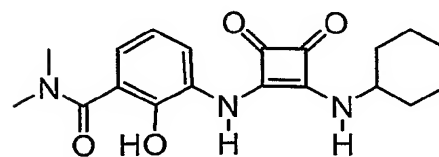
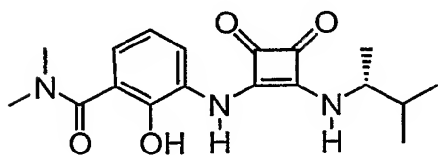
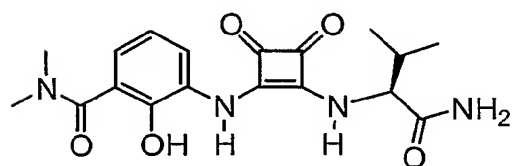
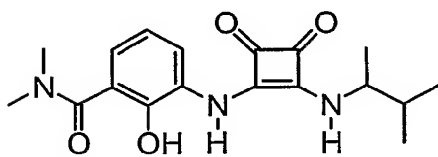
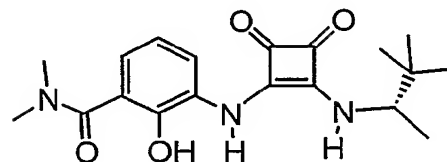
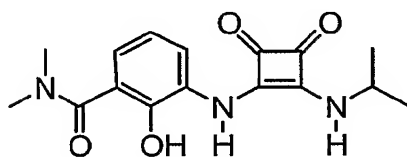
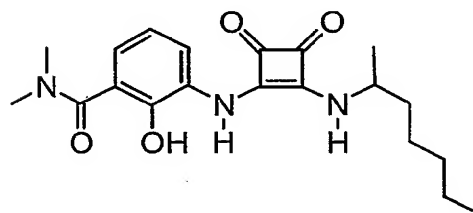
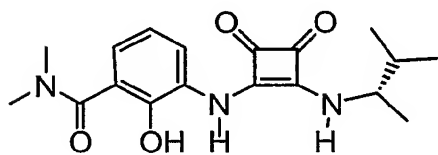
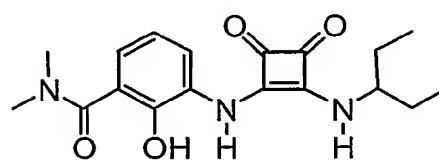
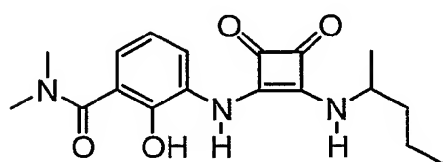
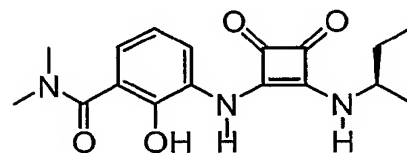
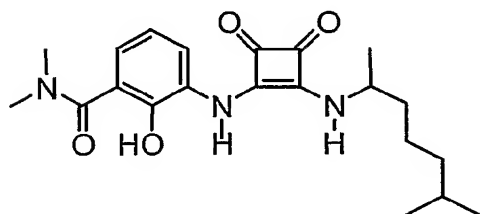
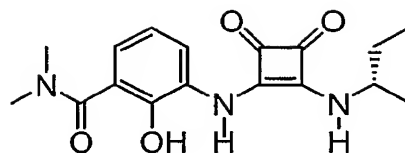
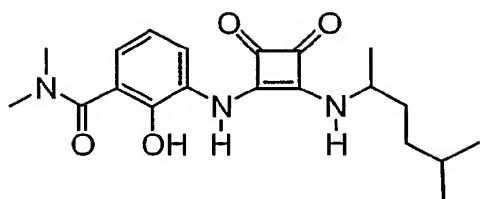
Embodiment No. 45 is directed to a method of treating any one of the diseases described above comprising administering to a patient in need of such treatment an effective amount (e.g., a therapeutically effective amount) of a compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 43. The diseases referred to
15 in this embodiment are those described in the methods of treatment using compounds of formula I.

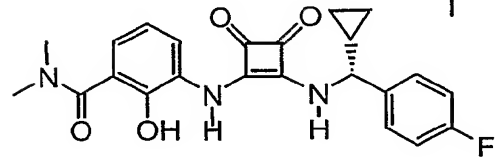
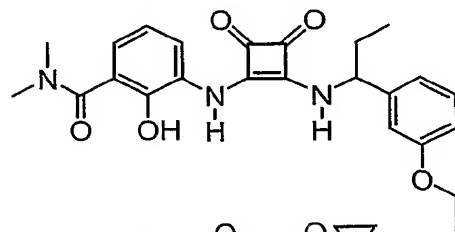
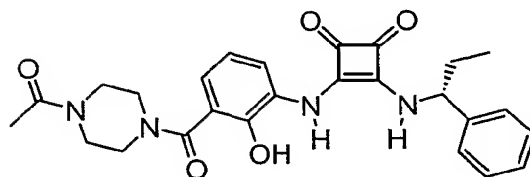
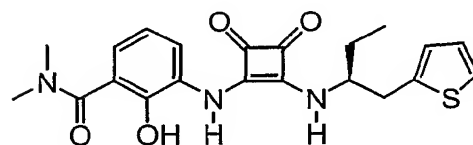
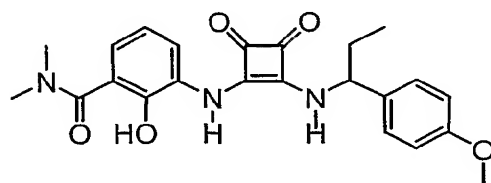
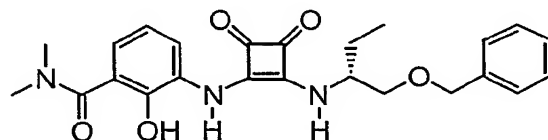
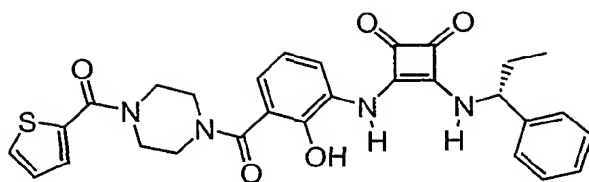
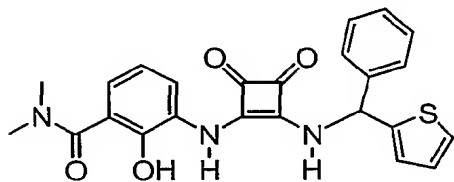
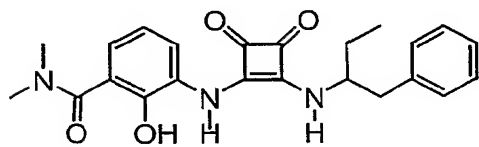
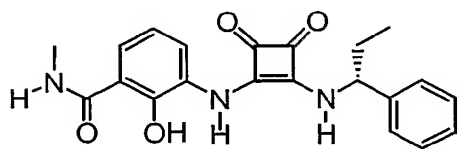
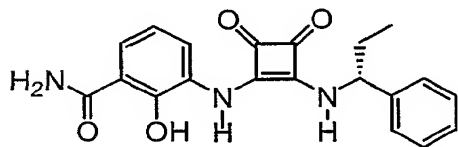
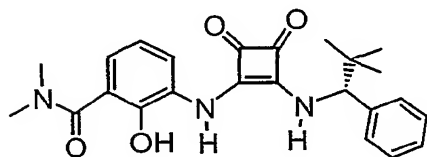
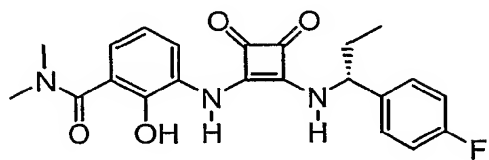
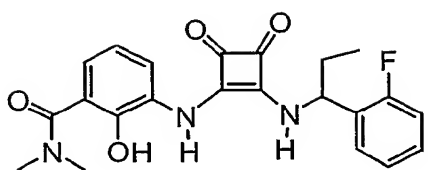
Embodiment No. 46 is directed to the use of a compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 3 to 43 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment any one of the diseases described above. The
20 diseases referred in this embodiment are those described in the methods of treatment using compounds of formula I.

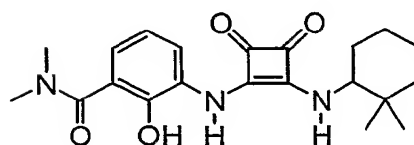
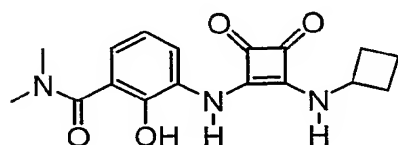
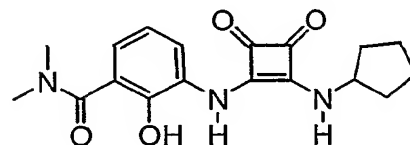
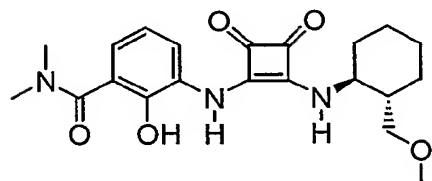
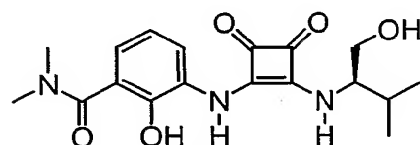
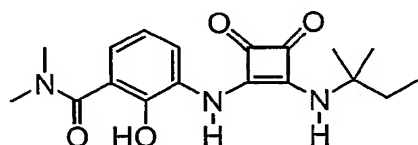
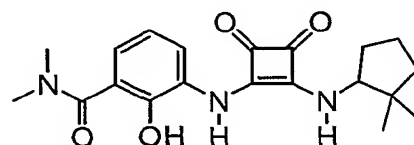
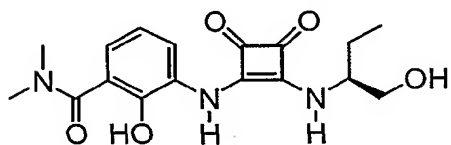
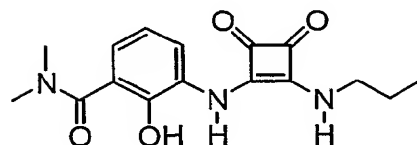
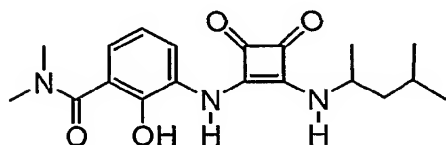
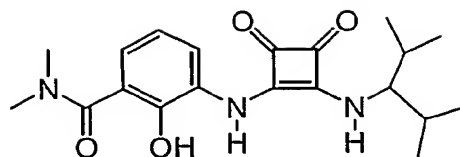
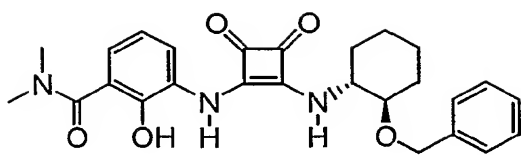
Representative compounds of the invention include but are not limited to:

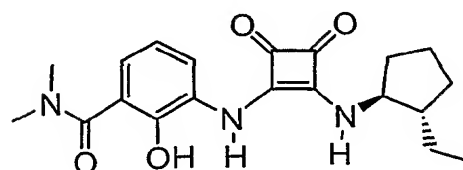
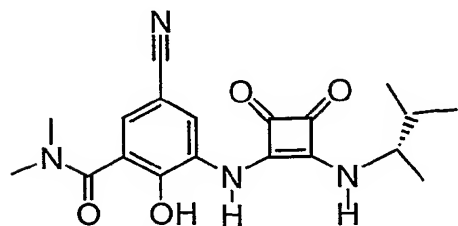
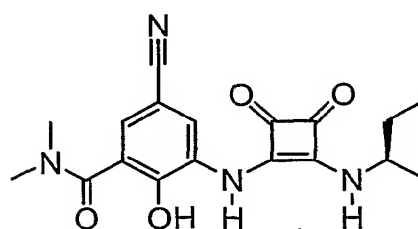
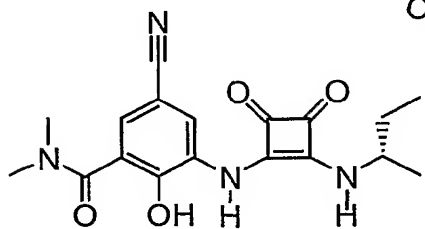
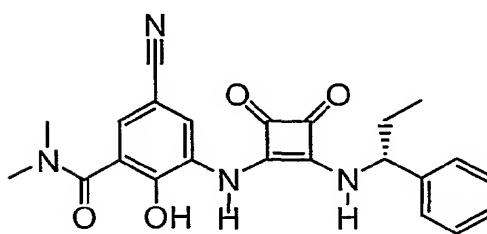
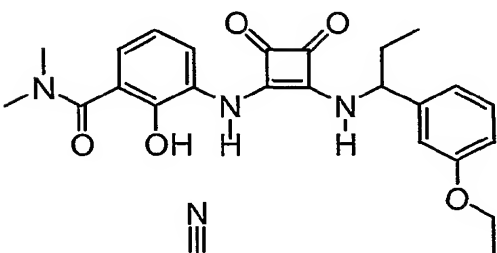
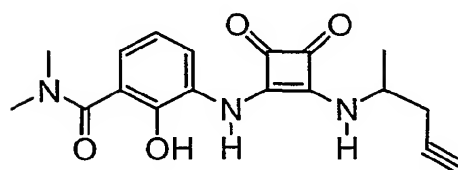
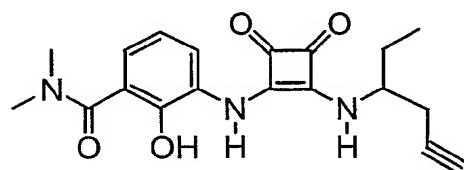
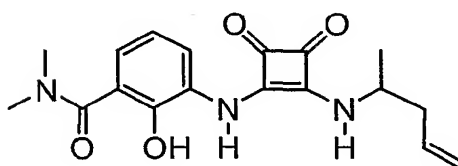
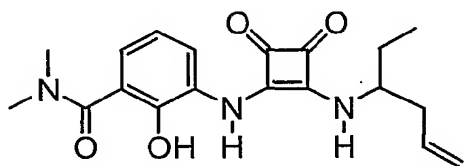
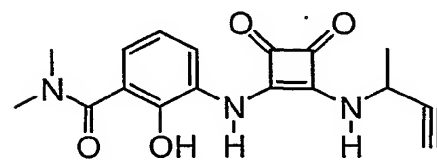
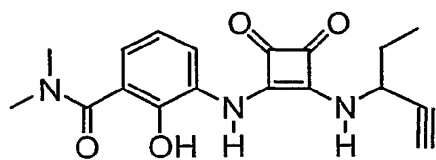
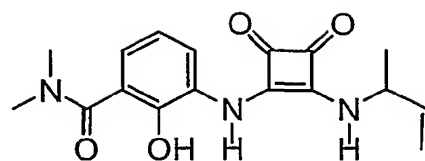
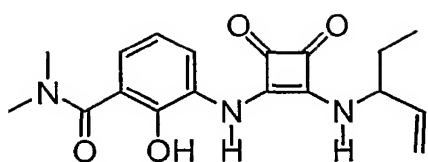


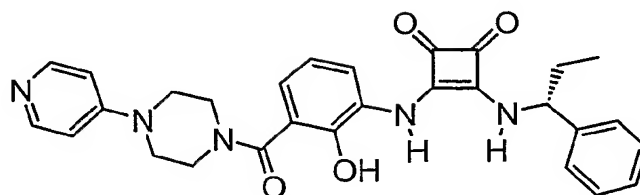
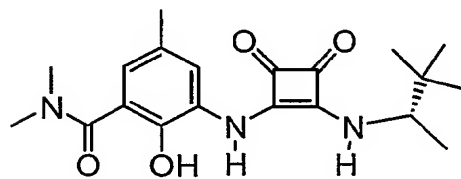
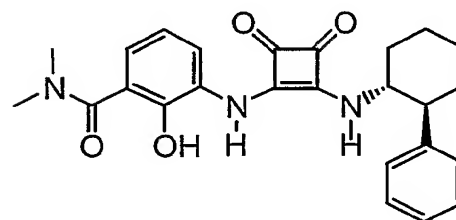
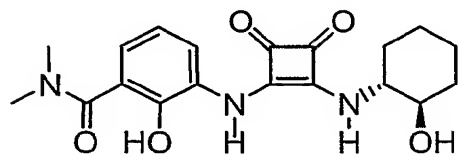
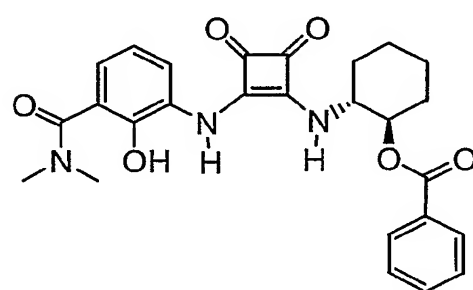
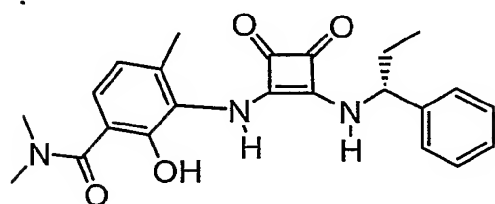
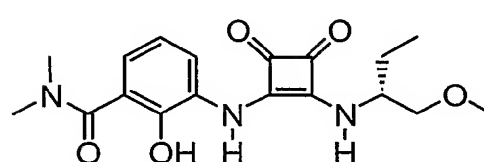
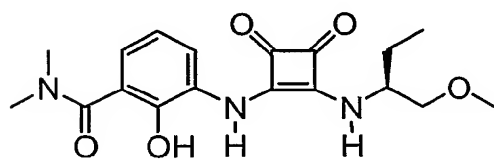
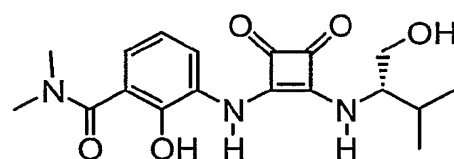
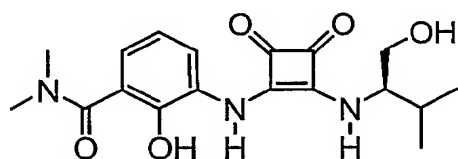
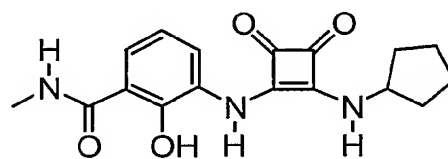
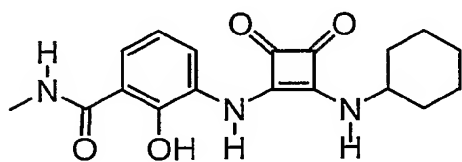
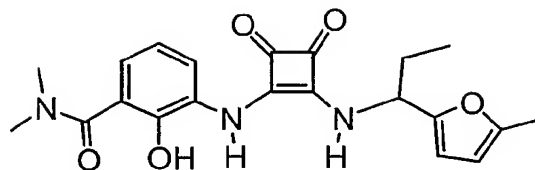
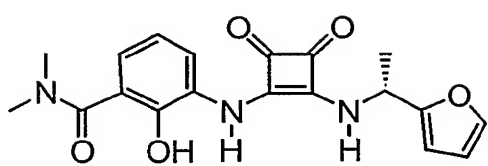


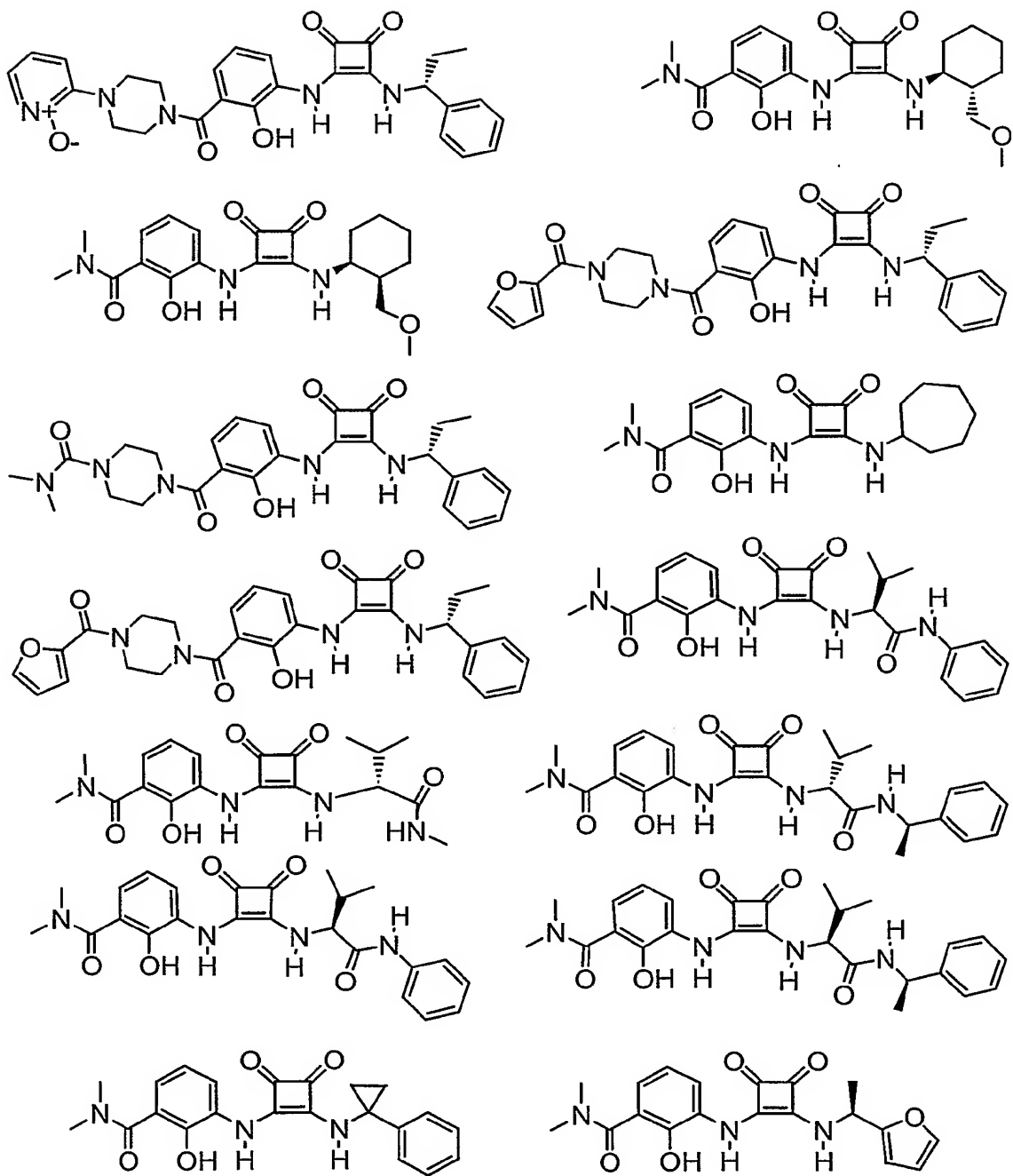


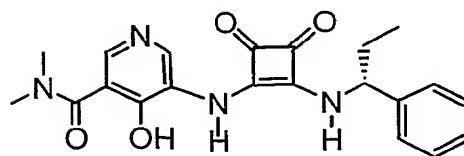
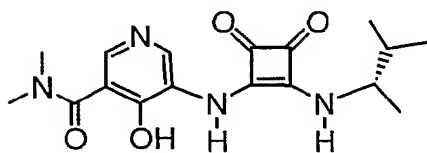
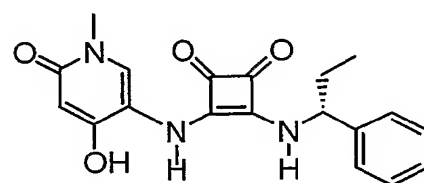
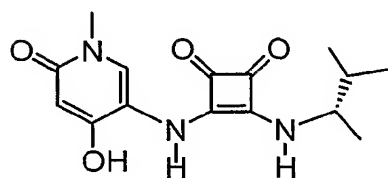
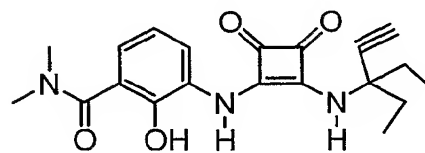
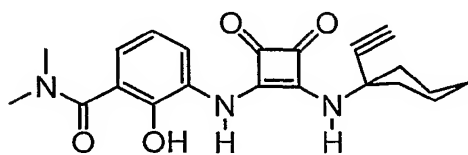
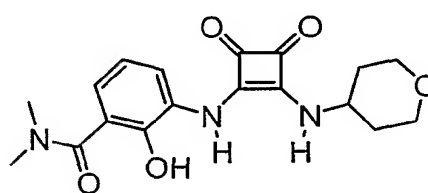
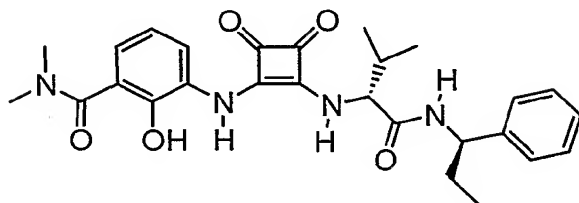
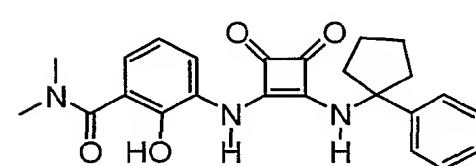
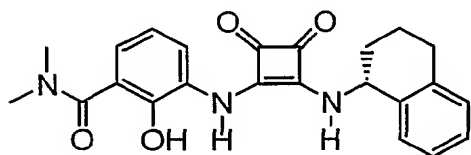
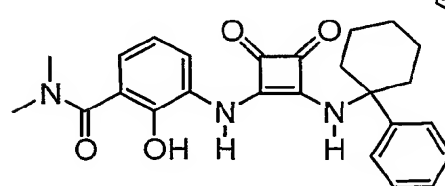
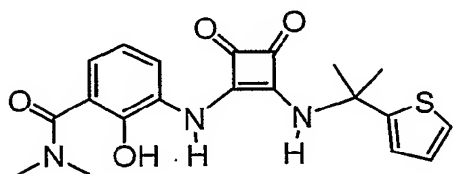
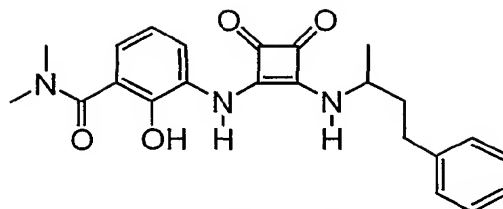
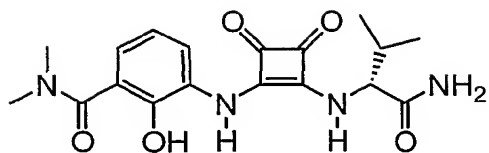


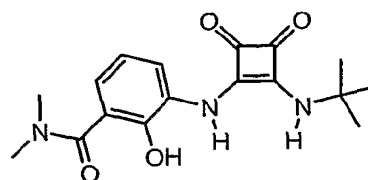
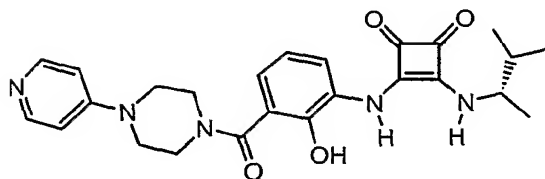
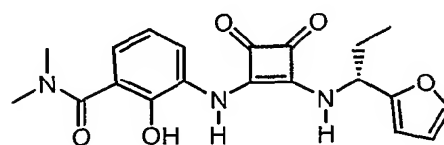
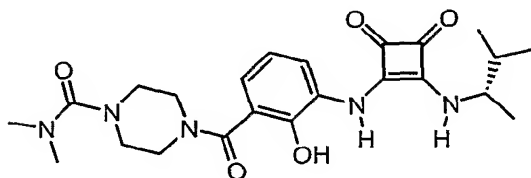
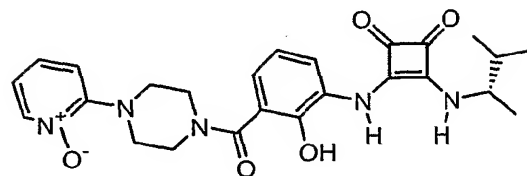
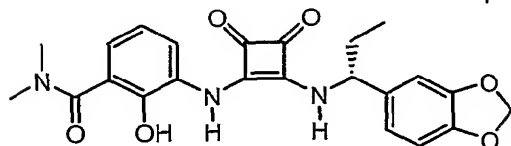
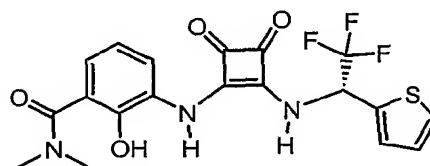
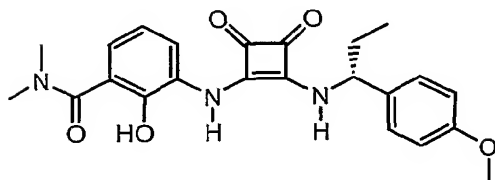
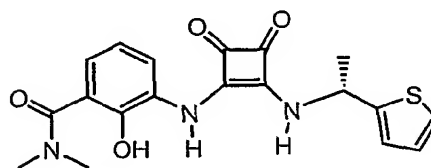
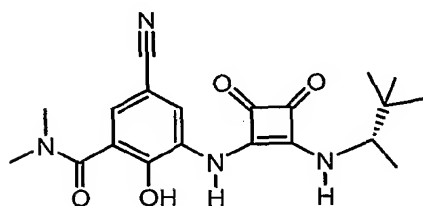
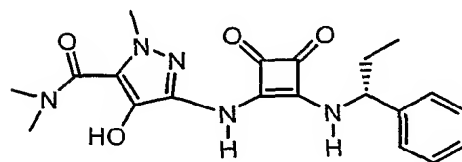
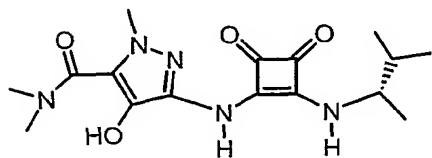
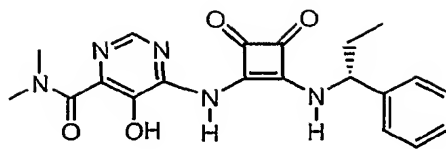
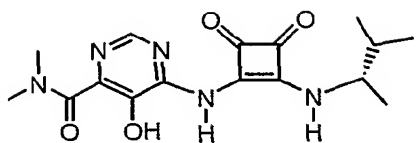


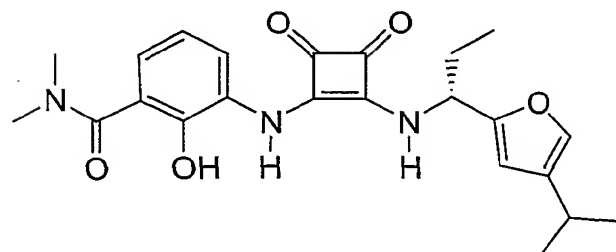
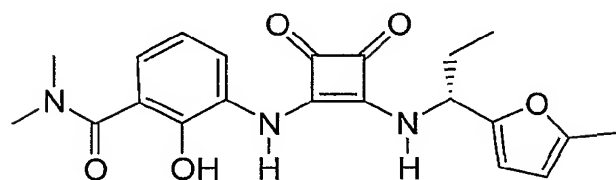
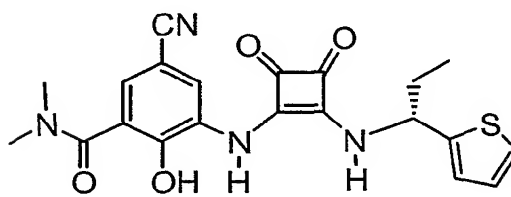
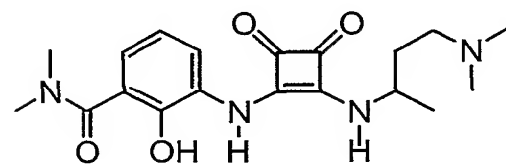
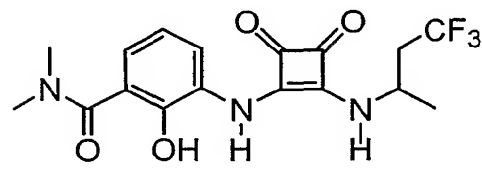
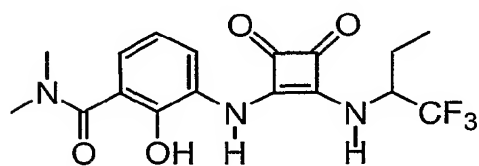
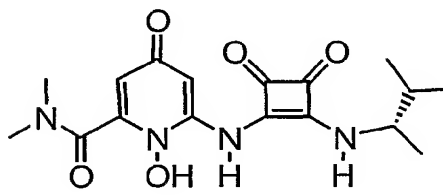
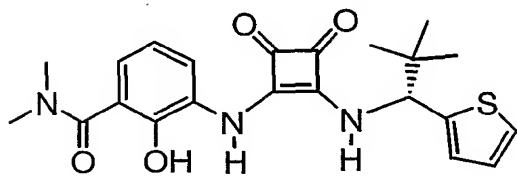
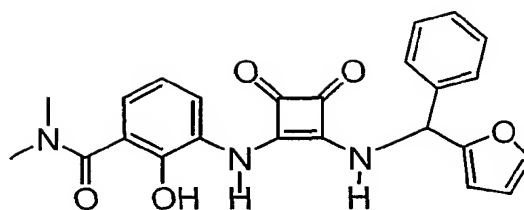
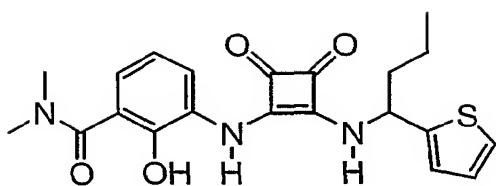




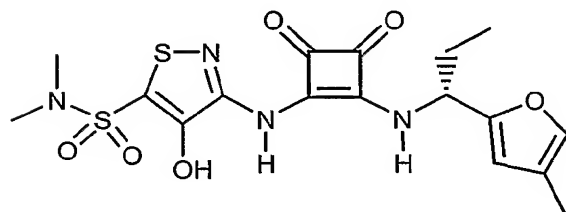
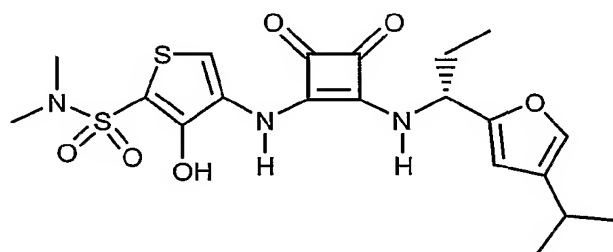
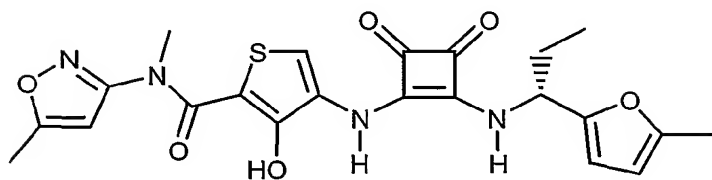
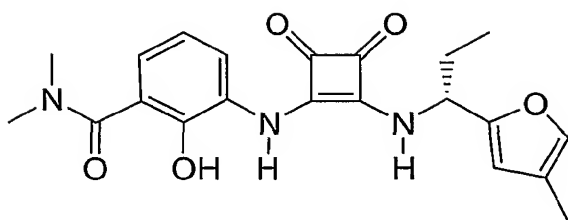




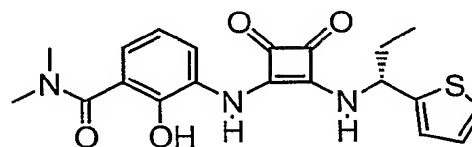
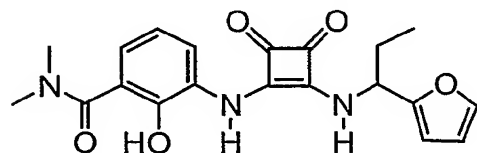
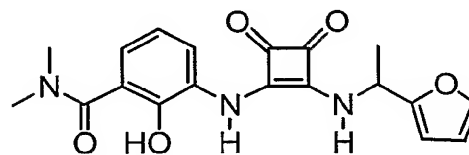
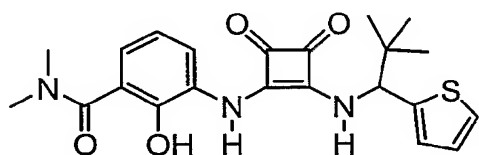
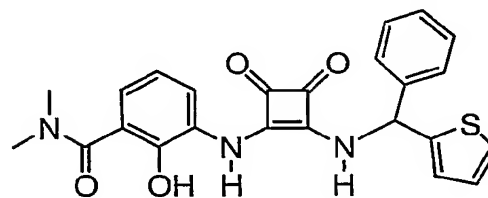
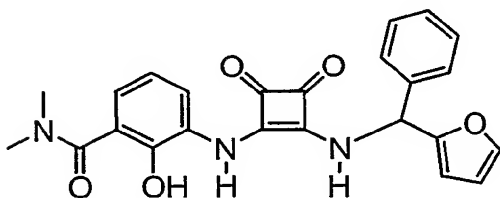
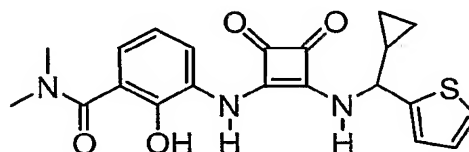
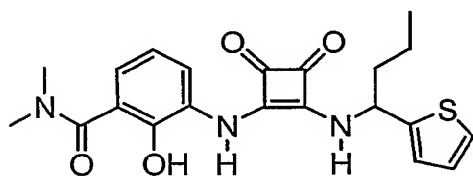
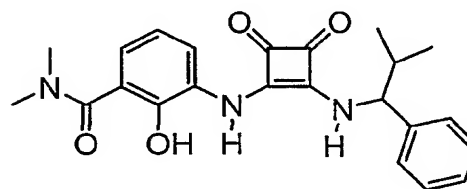
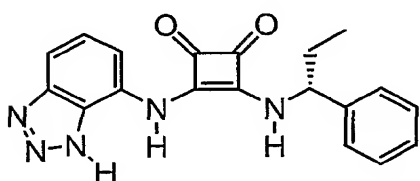
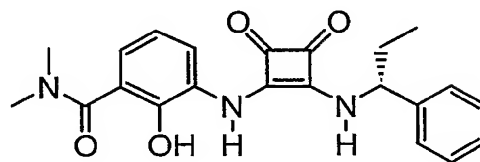
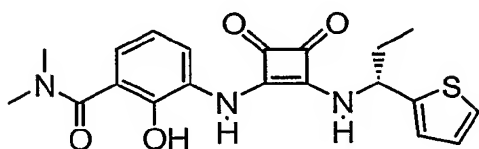
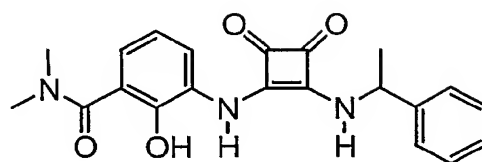
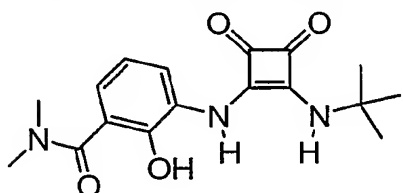


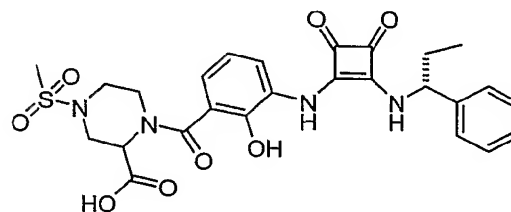
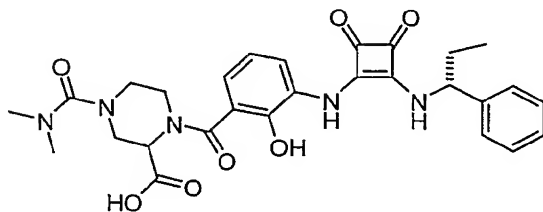
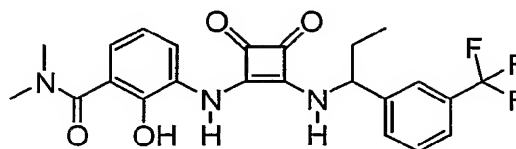
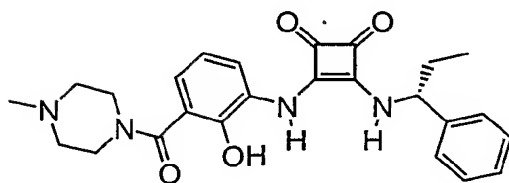
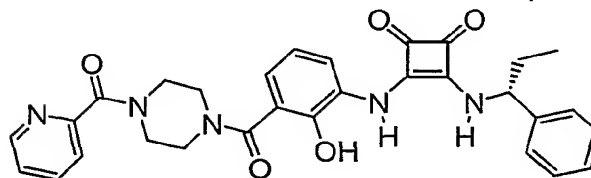
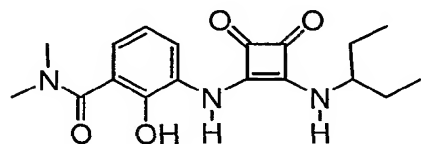
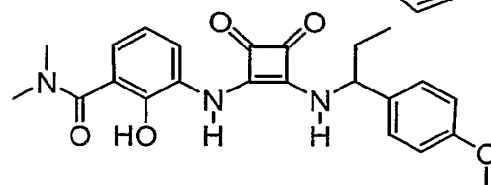
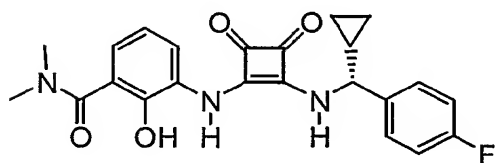
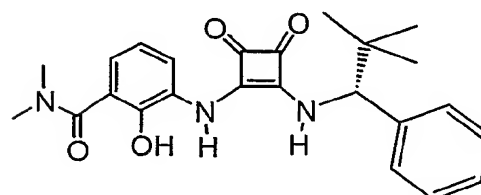
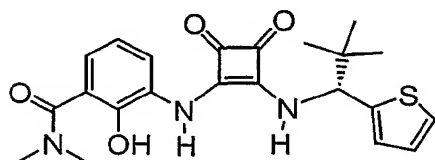
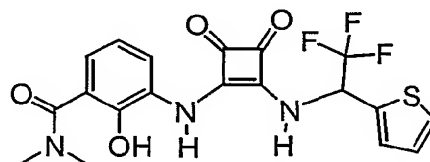
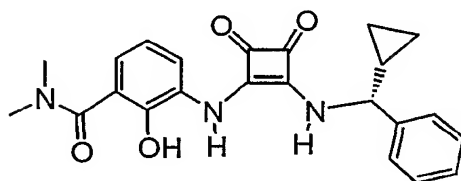
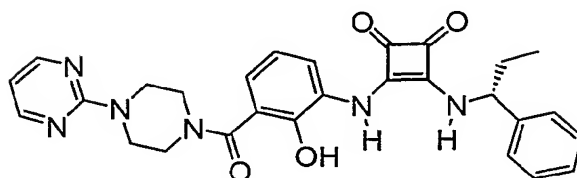
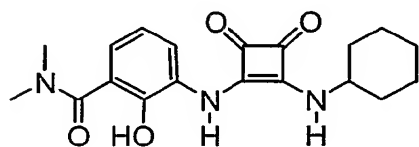
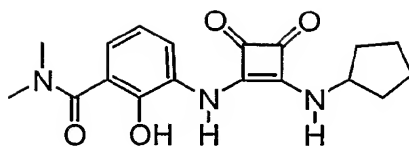
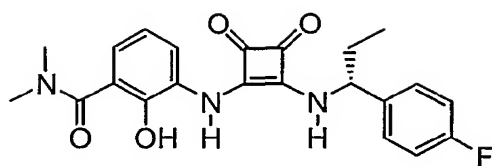


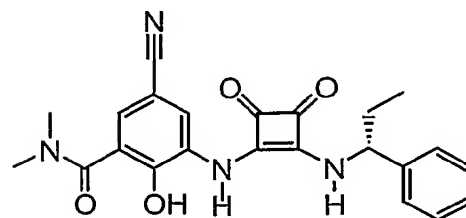
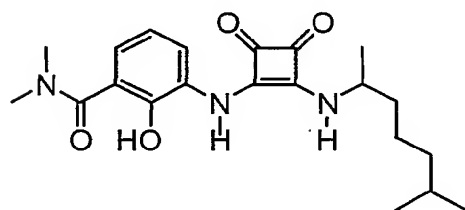
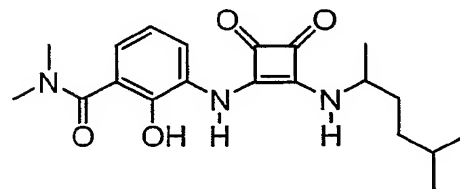
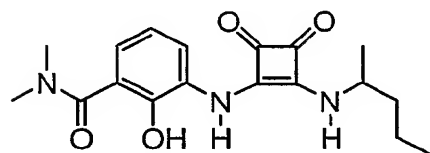
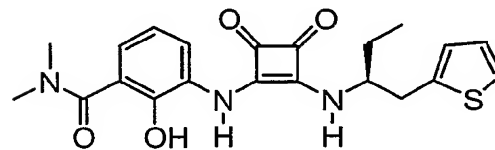
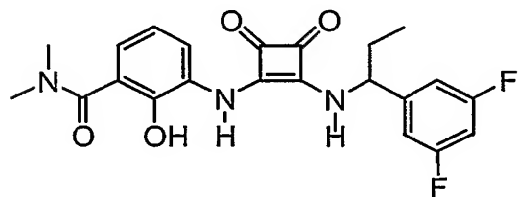
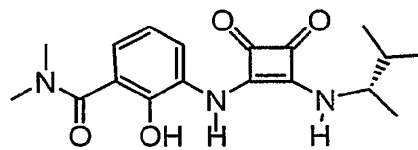
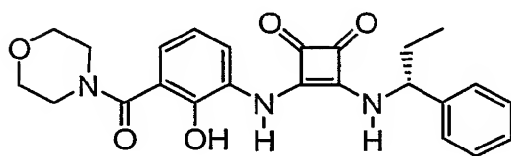
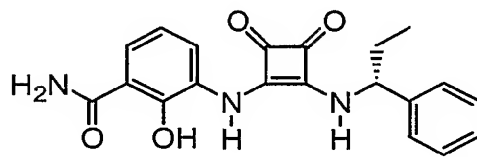
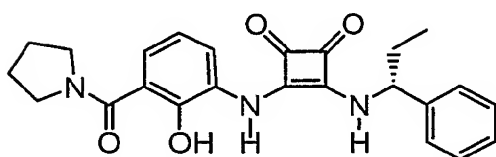
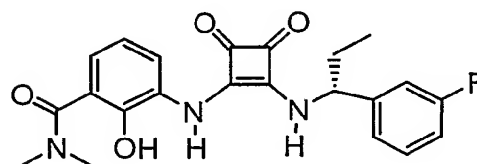
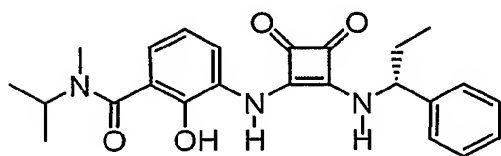
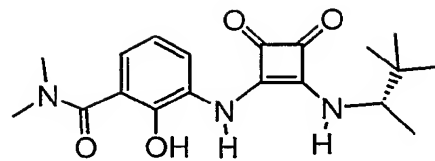
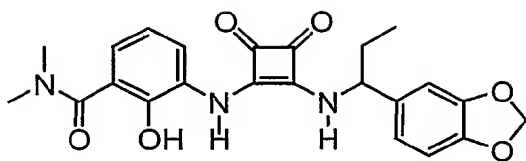
59

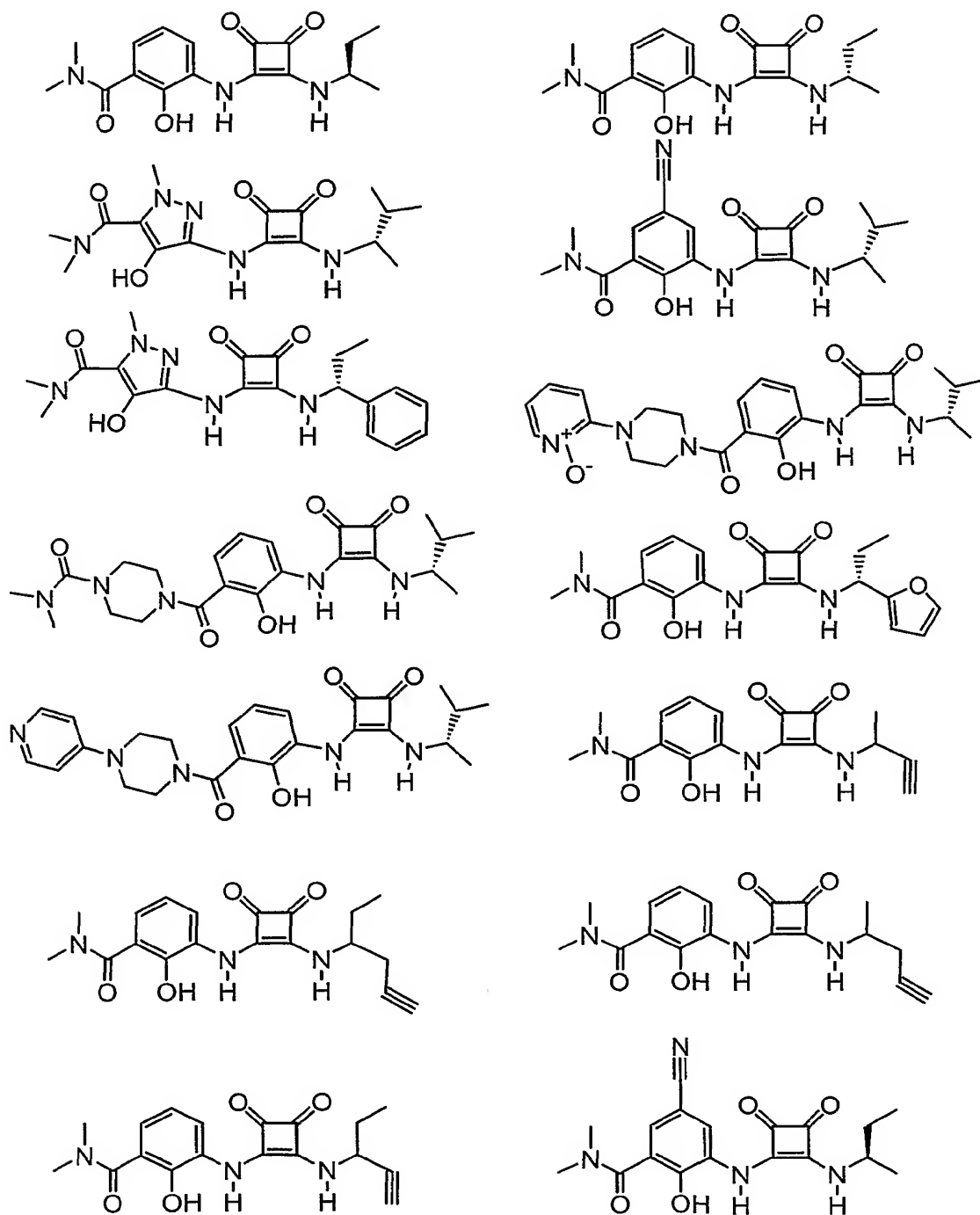


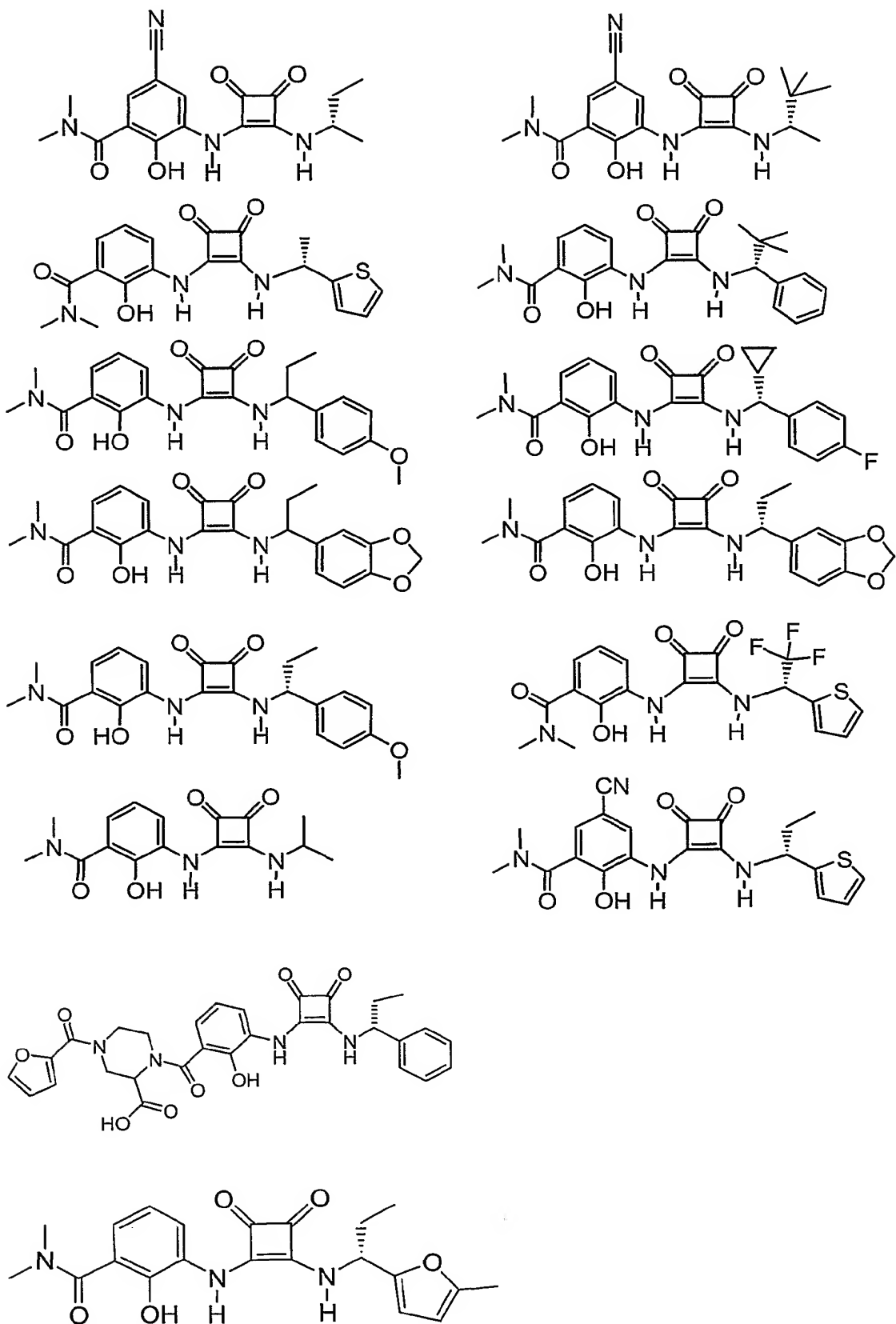
Preferred compounds of the invention include:

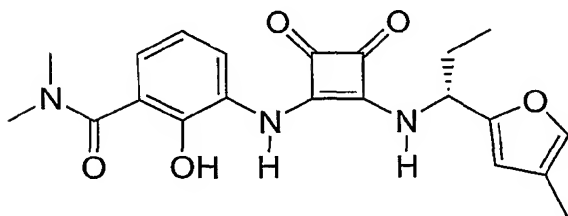
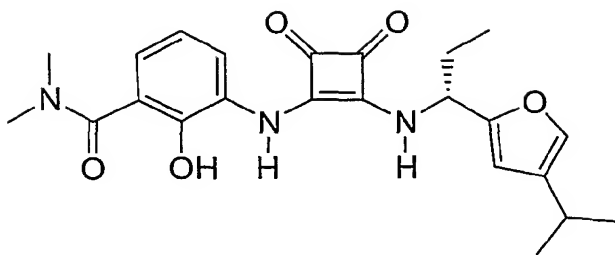




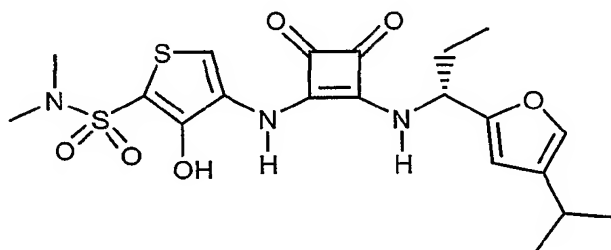
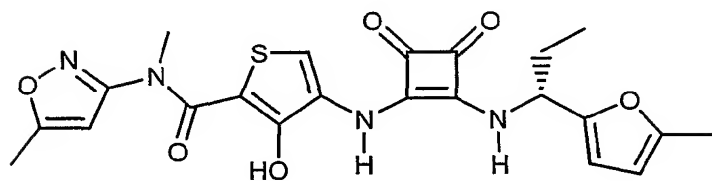




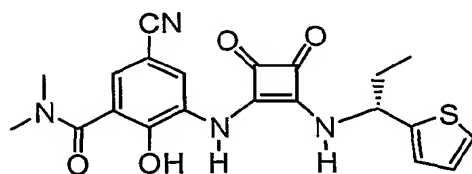
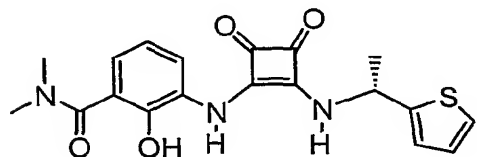
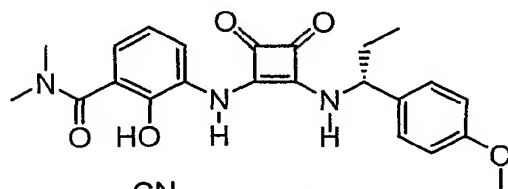
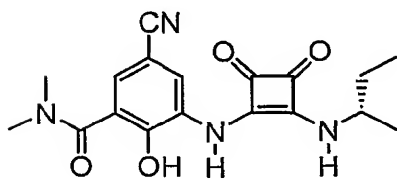
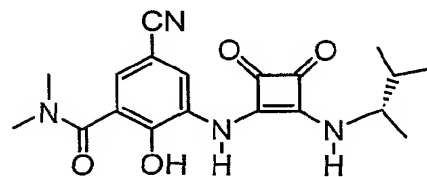
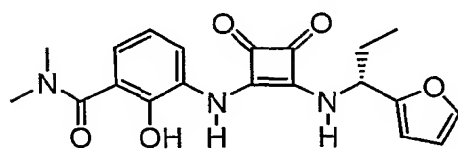
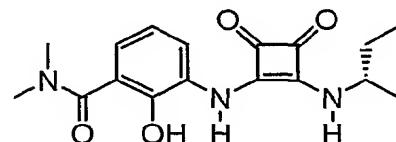
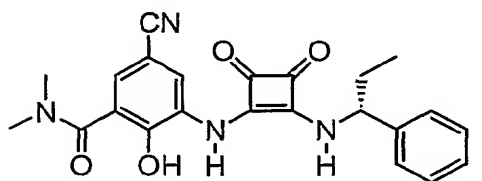
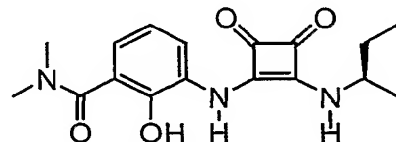
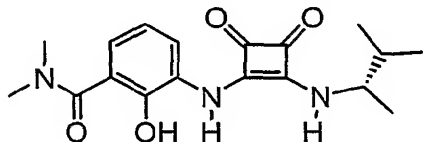
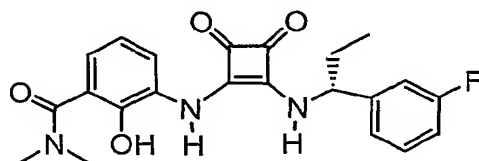
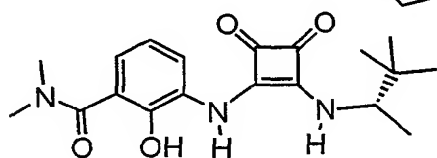
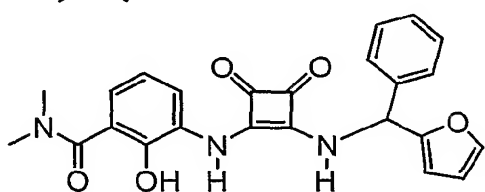
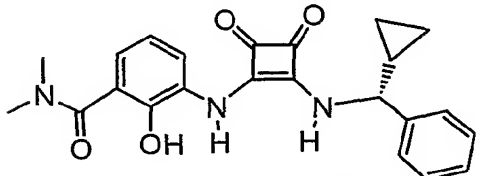
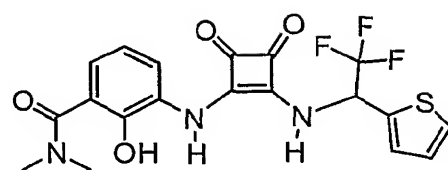
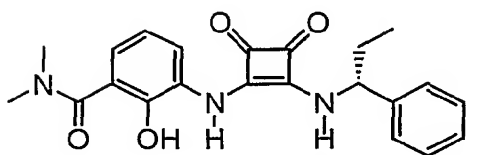




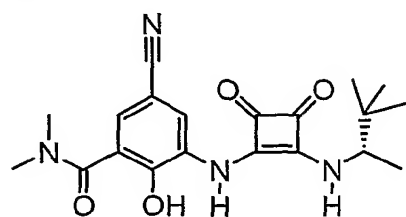
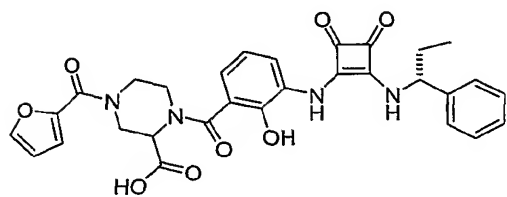
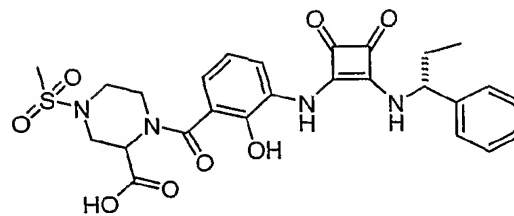
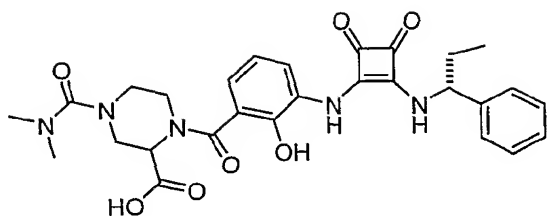
5



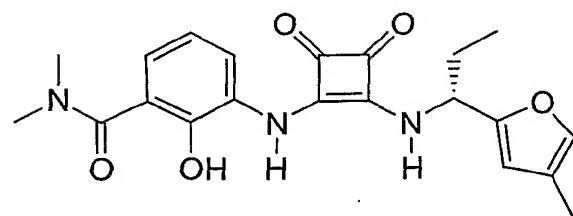
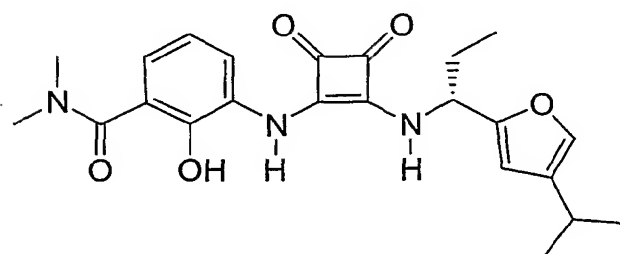
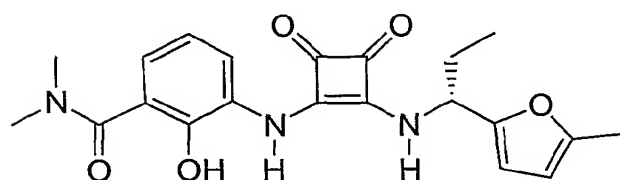
A more preferred group of compounds includes:



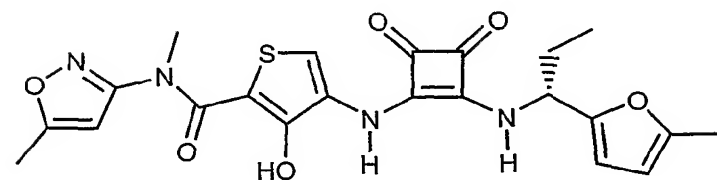
67



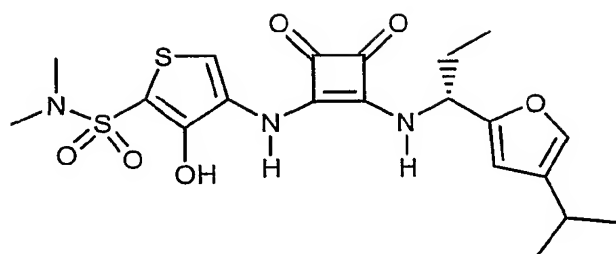
5



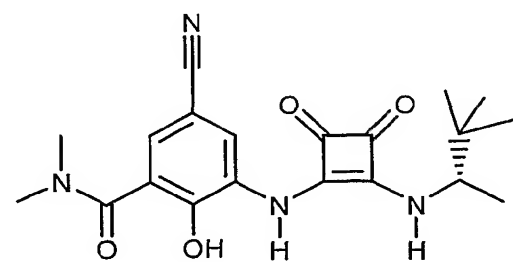
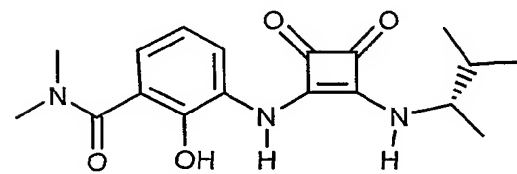
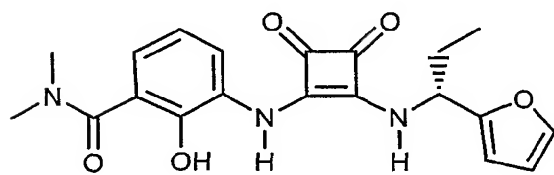
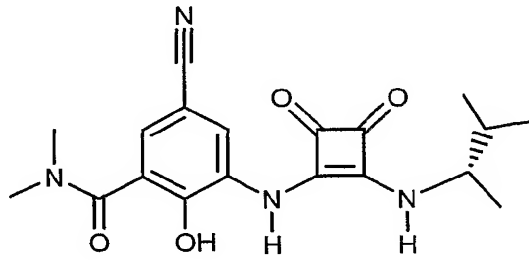
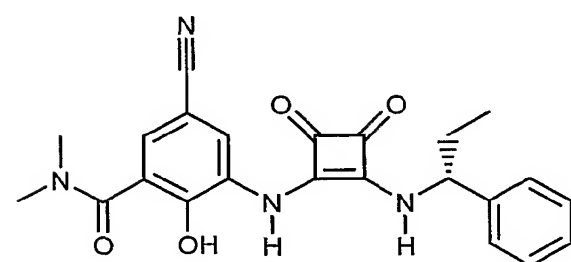
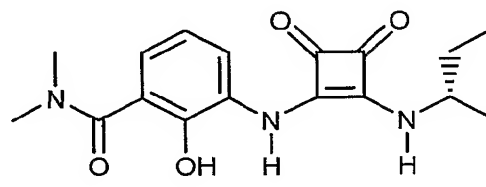
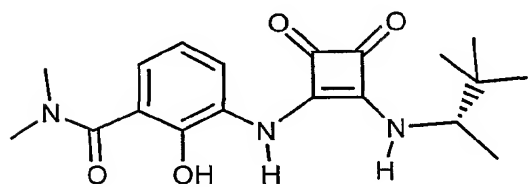
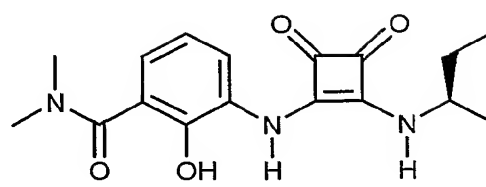
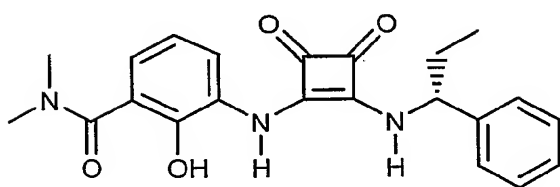
10

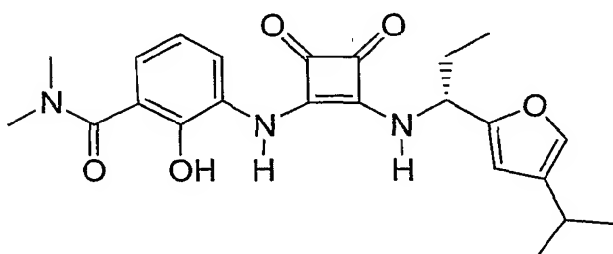
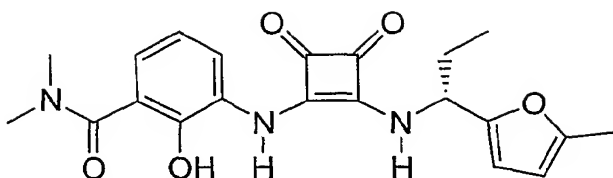


68

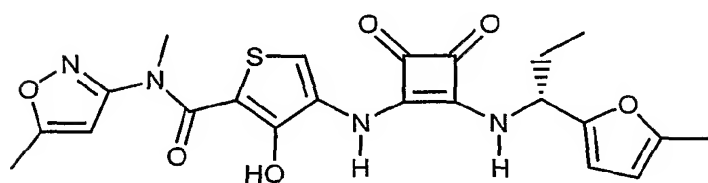
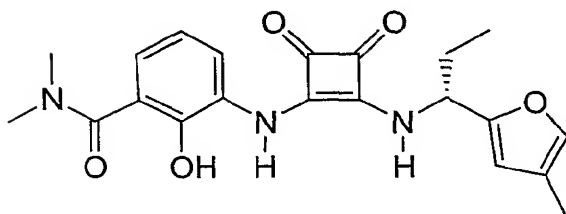


A most preferred group of compounds includes:

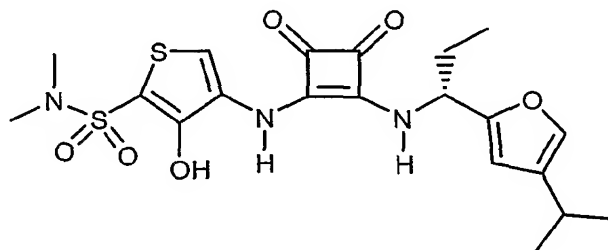




5



10



Certain compounds of the invention may exist in different stereoisomeric forms (e.g., enantiomers, diastereoisomers and atropisomers). The invention contemplates

all such stereoisomers both in pure form and in admixture, including racemic mixtures. Isomers can be prepared using conventional methods.

Certain compounds will be acidic in nature, e.g. those compounds which possess a carboxyl or phenolic hydroxyl group. These compounds may form pharmaceutically acceptable salts. Examples of such salts may include sodium, potassium, calcium, aluminum, gold and silver salts. Also contemplated are salts formed with pharmaceutically acceptable amines such as ammonia, alkyl amines, hydroxyalkylamines, N-methylglucamine and the like.

Certain basic compounds also form pharmaceutically acceptable salts, e.g., acid addition salts. For example, the pyrido-nitrogen atoms may form salts with strong acid, while compounds having basic substituents such as amino groups also form salts with weaker acids. Examples of suitable acids for salt formation are hydrochloric, sulfuric, phosphoric, acetic, citric, oxalic, malonic, salicylic, malic, fumaric, succinic, ascorbic, maleic, methanesulfonic and other mineral and carboxylic acids well known to those skilled in the art. The salts are prepared by contacting the free base form with a sufficient amount of the desired acid to produce a salt in the conventional manner. The free base forms may be regenerated by treating the salt with a suitable dilute aqueous base solution such as dilute aqueous NaOH, potassium carbonate, ammonia and sodium bicarbonate. The free base forms differ from their respective salt forms somewhat in certain physical properties, such as solubility in polar solvents, but the acid and base salts are otherwise equivalent to their respective free base forms for purposes of the invention.

All such acid and base salts are intended to be pharmaceutically acceptable salts within the scope of the invention and all acid and base salts are considered equivalent to the free forms of the corresponding compounds for purposes of the invention.

Compounds of formula I or IA can exist in unsolvated and solvated forms, including hydrated forms. In general, the solvated forms, with pharmaceutically acceptable solvents such as water, ethanol and the like, are equivalent to the unsolvated forms for the purposes of this invention.

In a preferred embodiment, a compound of formula (1) or IA is combined with one of the following antineoplastic agents: gemcitabine, paclitaxel (Taxol®), 5-Fluorouracil (5-FU), cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan®), temozolomide, or Vincristine.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a method of treating cancer, comprising administering, concurrently or sequentially, and effective amount of a compound of formula (1) or IA and a microtubule affecting agent e.g., paclitaxel.

5 For preparing pharmaceutical compositions from the compounds described by this invention, inert, pharmaceutically acceptable carriers can be either solid or liquid. Solid form preparations include powders, tablets, dispersible granules, capsules, cachets and suppositories. The powders and tablets may be comprised of from about 5 to about 95 percent active ingredient. Suitable solid carriers are known in the art,
10 e.g., magnesium carbonate, magnesium stearate, talc, sugar or lactose. Tablets, powders, cachets and capsules can be used as solid dosage forms suitable for oral administration. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and methods of manufacture for various compositions may be found in A. Gennaro (ed.), *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18th Edition, (1990), Mack Publishing Co., Easton,
15 Pennsylvania.

Liquid form preparations include solutions, suspensions and emulsions. As an example may be mentioned water or water-propylene glycol solutions for parenteral injection or addition of sweeteners and opacifiers for oral solutions, suspensions and emulsions. Liquid form preparations may also include solutions for intranasal
20 administration.

Aerosol preparations suitable for inhalation may include solutions and solids in powder form, which may be in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, such as an inert compressed gas, e.g. nitrogen.

Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted,
25 shortly before use, to liquid form preparations for either oral or parenteral administration. Such liquid forms include solutions, suspensions and emulsions.

The compounds of the invention may also be deliverable transdermally. The transdermal composition can take the form of creams, lotions, aerosols and/or

emulsions and can be included in a transdermal patch of the matrix or reservoir type as are conventional in the art for this purpose.

Preferably the compound is administered orally.

Preferably, the pharmaceutical preparation is in a unit dosage form. In such
5 form, the preparation is subdivided into suitably sized unit doses containing appropriate quantities of the active component, e.g., an effective amount to achieve the desired purpose.

The quantity of active compound in a unit dose of preparation may be varied or adjusted from about 0.01 mg to about 1000 mg, preferably from about 0.01 mg to
10 about 750 mg, more preferably from about 0.01 mg to about 500 mg, and most preferably from about 0.01 mg to about 250 mg, according to the particular application.

The actual dosage employed may be varied depending upon the requirements of the patient and the severity of the condition being treated. Determination of the
15 proper dosage regimen for a particular situation is within the skill of the art. For convenience, the total dosage may be divided and administered in portions during the day as required.

The amount and frequency of administration of the compounds of the invention and/or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof will be regulated according to the
20 judgment of the attending clinician considering such factors as age, condition and size of the patient as well as severity of the symptoms being treated. A typical recommended daily dosage regimen for oral administration can range from about 0.04 mg/day to about 4000 mg/day, in two to four divided doses.

Another aspect of the invention is a method treating cancer, comprising
25 administering to a patient in need thereof, concurrently or sequentially, a therapeutically effective amount of (a) a compound of formula (I) or IA and (b) an antineoplastic agent, microtubule affecting agent or anti-angiogenesis agent.

Classes of compounds that can be used as the chemotherapeutic agent (antineoplastic agent) include: alkylating agents, antimetabolites, natural products and
30 their derivatives, hormones and steroids (including synthetic analogs), and synthetics. Examples of compounds within these classes are given below.

Alkylating agents (including nitrogen mustards, ethylenimine derivatives, alkyl sulfonates, nitrosoureas and triazenes): Uracil mustard, Chlormethine,

Cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan®), Ifosfamide, Melphalan, Chlorambucil, Pipobroman, Triethylene-melamine, Triethylenethiophosphoramine, Busulfan, Carmustine, Lomustine, Streptozocin, Dacarbazine, and Temozolomide.

Antimetabolites (including folic acid antagonists, pyrimidine analogs, purine
5 analogs and adenosine deaminase inhibitors): Methotrexate, 5-Fluorouracil, Floxuridine, Cytarabine, 6-Mercaptopurine, 6-Thioguanine, Fludarabine phosphate, Pentostatine, and Gemcitabine.

Natural products and their derivatives (including vinca alkaloids, antitumor
antibiotics, enzymes, lymphokines and epipodophyllotoxins): Vinblastine, Vincristine,
10 Vindesine, Bleomycin, Dactinomycin, Daunorubicin, Doxorubicin, Epirubicin, Idarubicin, paclitaxel (paclitaxel is commercially available as Taxol® and is described in more detail below in the subsection entitled "Microtubule Affecting Agents"), Mithramycin, Deoxyco-formycin, Mitomycin-C, L-Asparaginase, Interferons (especially IFN- α), Etoposide, and Teniposide.

Hormones and steroids (including synthetic analogs): 17 α -Ethinylestradiol,
15 Diethylstilbestrol, Testosterone, Prednisone, Fluoxymesterone, Dromostanolone propionate, Testolactone, Megestrolacetate, Tamoxifen, Methylprednisolone, Methyltestosterone, Prednisolone, Triamcinolone, Chlorotrianisene, Hydroxyprogesterone, Aminoglutethimide, Estramustine, Medroxyprogesteroneacetate, Leuprolide,
20 Flutamide, Toremifene, Zoladex.

Synthetics (including inorganic complexes such as platinum coordination
complexes): Cisplatin, Carboplatin, Hydroxyurea, Amsacrine, Procarbazine, Mitotane,
Mitoxantrone, Levamisole, and Hexamethylmelamine.

Methods for the safe and effective administration of most of these
25 chemotherapeutic agents are known to those skilled in the art. In addition, their administration is described in the standard literature. For example, the administration of many of the chemotherapeutic agents is described in the "Physicians' Desk Reference" (PDR), e.g., 2002 edition (Medical Economics Company, Montvale, NJ 07645-1742, USA); the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference
30 thereto.

As used herein, a microtubule affecting agent is a compound that interferes with cellular mitosis, *i.e.*, having an anti-mitotic effect, by affecting microtubule

formation and/or action. Such agents can be, for instance, microtubule stabilizing agents or agents that disrupt microtubule formation.

Microtubule affecting agents useful in the invention are well known to those of skill in the art and include, but are not limited to allocolchicine (NSC 406042),
5 Halichondrin B (NSC 609395), colchicine (NSC 757), colchicine derivatives (e.g., NSC 33410), dolastatin 10 (NSC 376128), maytansine (NSC 153858), rhizoxin (NSC 332598), paclitaxel (Taxol[®], NSC 125973), Taxol[®] derivatives (e.g., derivatives (e.g., NSC 608832), thiocolchicine (NSC 361792), trityl cysteine (NSC 83265), vinblastine sulfate (NSC 49842), vincristine sulfate (NSC 67574), epothilone A, epothilone, and
10 discodermolide (see Service, (1996) *Science*, 274:2009) estramustine, nocodazole, MAP4, and the like. Examples of such agents are also described in the scientific and patent literature, see, e.g., Bulinski (1997) *J. Cell Sci.* 110:3055-3064; Panda (1997) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:10560-10564; Muhlradt (1997) *Cancer Res.* 57:3344-3346; Nicolaou (1997) *Nature* 387:268-272; Vasquez (1997) *Mol. Biol. Cell.* 8:973-
15 985; Panda (1996) *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:29807-29812.

Particularly preferred agents are compounds with paclitaxel-like activity. These include, but are not limited to paclitaxel and paclitaxel derivatives (paclitaxel-like compounds) and analogues. Paclitaxel and its derivatives are available commercially. In addition, methods of making paclitaxel and paclitaxel derivatives and analogues are
20 well known to those of skill in the art (see, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos: 5,569,729; 5,565,478; 5,530,020; 5,527,924; 5,508,447; 5,489,589; 5,488,116; 5,484,809; 5,478,854; 5,478,736; 5,475,120; 5,468,769; 5,461,169; 5,440,057; 5,422,364; 5,411,984; 5,405,972; and 5,296,506).

More specifically, the term "paclitaxel" as used herein refers to the drug
25 commercially available as Taxol[®] (NSC number: 125973). Taxol[®] inhibits eukaryotic cell replication by enhancing polymerization of tubulin moieties into stabilized microtubule bundles that are unable to reorganize into the proper structures for mitosis. Of the many available chemotherapeutic drugs, paclitaxel has generated interest because of its efficacy in clinical trials against drug-refractory tumors,
30 including ovarian and mammary gland tumors (Hawkins (1992) *Oncology*, 6: 17-23, Horwitz (1992) *Trends Pharmacol. Sci.* 13: 134-146, Rowinsky (1990) *J. Natl. Canc. Inst.* 82: 1247-1259).

Additional microtubule affecting agents can be assessed using one of many such assays known in the art, e.g., a semiautomated assay which measures the tubulin-polymerizing activity of paclitaxel analogs in combination with a cellular assay to measure the potential of these compounds to block cells in mitosis (see *Lopes* 5 (1997) *Cancer Chemother. Pharmacol.* 41:37-47).

Generally, activity of a test compound is determined by contacting a cell with that compound and determining whether or not the cell cycle is disrupted, in particular, through the inhibition of a mitotic event. Such inhibition may be mediated by disruption of the mitotic apparatus, e.g., disruption of normal spindle formation. Cells 10 in which mitosis is interrupted may be characterized by altered morphology (e.g., microtubule compaction, increased chromosome number, etc.).

In a preferred embodiment, compounds with possible tubulin polymerization activity are screened *in vitro*. In a preferred embodiment, the compounds are screened against cultured WR21 cells (derived from line 69-2 wap-ras mice) for 15 inhibition of proliferation and/or for altered cellular morphology, in particular for microtubule compaction. *In vivo* screening of positive-testing compounds can then be performed using nude mice bearing the WR21 tumor cells. Detailed protocols for this screening method are described by Porter (1995) *Lab. Anim. Sci.*, 45(2):145-150.

Other methods of screening compounds for desired activity are well known to 20 those of skill in the art. Typically such assays involve assays for inhibition of microtubule assembly and/or disassembly. Assays for microtubule assembly are described, for example, by Gaskin *et al.* (1974) *J. Molec. Biol.*, 89: 737-758. U.S. Patent No. 5,569,720 also provides *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays for compounds with paclitaxel-like activity.

25 Methods for the safe and effective administration of the above-mentioned microtubule affecting agents are known to those skilled in the art. In addition, their administration is described in the standard literature. For example, the administration of many of the chemotherapeutic agents is described in the "Physicians' Desk Reference" (PDR), e.g., 1996 edition (Medical Economics Company, Montvale, NJ 30 07645-1742, USA); the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference thereto.

The amount and frequency of administration of the compounds of formula (I) or IA and the chemotherapeutic agents and/or radiation therapy will be regulated

according to the judgment of the attending clinician (physician) considering such factors as age, condition and size of the patient as well as severity of the disease being treated. A dosage regimen of the compound of formula (I) or IA can be oral administration of from 10 mg to 2000 mg/day, preferably 10 to 1000 mg/day, more preferably 50 to 600 mg/day, in two to four (preferably two) divided doses, to block tumor growth. Intermittant therapy (e.g., one week out of three weeks or three out of four weeks) may also be used.

The chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation therapy can be administered according to therapeutic protocols well known in the art. It will be apparent to those skilled in the art that the administration of the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation therapy can be varied depending on the disease being treated and the known effects of the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation therapy on that disease. Also, in accordance with the knowledge of the skilled clinician, the therapeutic protocols (e.g., dosage amounts and times of administration) can be varied in view of the observed effects of the administered therapeutic agents (i.e., antineoplastic agent or radiation) on the patient, and in view of the observed responses of the disease to the administered therapeutic agents.

In the methods of this invention, a compound of formula (I) or IA is administered concurrently or sequentially with a chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation. Thus, it is not necessary that, for example, the chemotherapeutic agent and the compound of formula (I) or IA, or the radiation and the compound of formula (I) or IA, should be administered simultaneously or essentially simultaneously. The advantage of a simultaneous or essentially simultaneous administration is well within the determination of the skilled clinician.

Also, in general, the compound of formula (I) or IA and the chemotherapeutic agent do not have to be administered in the same pharmaceutical composition, and may, because of different physical and chemical characteristics, have to be administered by different routes. For example, the compound of formula (I) or IA may be administered orally to generate and maintain good blood levels thereof, while the chemotherapeutic agent may be administered intravenously. The determination of the mode of administration and the advisability of administration, where possible, in the same pharmaceutical composition, is well within the knowledge of the skilled clinician. The initial administration can be made according to established protocols known in the

art, and then, based upon the observed effects, the dosage, modes of administration and times of administration can be modified by the skilled clinician .

The particular choice of a compound of formula (I) or IA, and chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation will depend upon the diagnosis of the attending physicians and their judgement of the condition of the patient and the appropriate treatment protocol.

The compound of formula (I) or IA, and chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation may be administered concurrently (e.g., simultaneously, essentially simultaneously or within the same treatment protocol) or sequentially, depending upon the nature of the proliferative disease, the condition of the patient, and the actual choice of chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation to be administered in conjunction (i.e., within a single treatment protocol) with the compound of formula (I) or IA .

If the compound of formula (I) or IA, and the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation are not administered simultaneously or essentially simultaneously, then the initial order of administration of the compound of formula (I) and IA, and the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation, may not be important. Thus, the compound of formula (I) or IA may be administered first, followed by the administration of the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation; or the chemo-therapeutic agent and/or radiation may be administered first, followed by the administration of the compound of formula (I) or IA . This alternate administration may be repeated during a single treatment protocol. The determination of the order of administration, and the number of repetitions of administration of each therapeutic agent during a treatment protocol, is well within the knowledge of the skilled physician after evaluation of the disease being treated and the condition of the patient.

For example, the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation may be administered first, especially if it is a cytotoxic agent, and then the treatment continued with the administration of the compound of formula (I) or IA followed, where determined advantageous, by the administration of the chemotherapeutic agent and/or radiation, and so on until the treatment protocol is complete.

Thus, in accordance with experience and knowledge, the practicing physician can modify each protocol for the administration of a component (therapeutic agent--i.e., the compound of formula (I) or IA , chemotherapeutic agent or radiation) of the treatment according to the individual patient's needs, as the treatment proceeds.

The attending clinician, in judging whether treatment is effective at the dosage administered, will consider the general well-being of the patient as well as more definite signs such as relief of disease-related symptoms, inhibition of tumor growth, actual shrinkage of the tumor, or inhibition of metastasis. Size of the tumor can be measured by standard methods such as radio-logical studies, e.g., CAT or MRI scan, and successive measurements can be used to judge whether or not growth of the tumor has been retarded or even reversed. Relief of disease-related symptoms such as pain, and improvement in overall condition can also be used to help judge effectiveness of treatment.

BIOLOGICAL EXAMPLES

The compounds of the present invention are useful in the treatment of CXC-chemokine mediated conditions and diseases. This utility is manifested in their ability to inhibit IL-8 and GRO- α chemokine as demonstrated by the following *in vitro* assays.

Receptor Binding Assays:

CXCR1 SPA Assay

For each well of a 96 well plate, a reaction mixture of 10 μ g hCXCR1-CHO overexpressing membranes (Biosignal) and 200 μ g/well WGA-SPA beads (Amersham) in 100 μ l was prepared in CXCR1 assay buffer (25 mM HEPES, pH 7.8, 2 mM CaCl_2 , 1mM MgCl_2 , 125 mM NaCl, 0.1% BSA) (Sigma). A 0.4 nM stock of ligand, [125 I]-IL-8 (NEN) was prepared in the CXCR1 assay buffer. 20X stock solutions of test compounds were prepared in DMSO (Sigma). A 6 X stock solution of IL-8 (R&D) was prepared in CXCR2 assay buffer. The above solutions were added to a 96-well assay plate (PerkinElmer) as follows: 10 μ l test compound or DMSO, 40 μ l CXCR1 assay buffer or IL-8 stock, 100 μ l of reaction mixture, 50 μ l of ligand stock (Final [Ligand] = 0.1 nM). The assay plates were shaken for 5 minutes on plate shaker, then incubated for 8 hours before cpm/well were determined in Microbeta Trilux counter (PerkinElmer). % Inhibition of Total binding-NSB (250 nM IL-8) was determined for IC₅₀ values. Compounds of this invention had an IC₅₀ of <20 μ M. The most preferred compounds had a K_i within the range of 3nM to 1120nM.

CXCR2 SPA Assay

For each well of a 96 well plate, a reaction mixture of 4 μ g hCXCR2-CHO overexpressing membranes (Biosignal) and 200 μ g/well WGA-SPA beads (Amersham) in 100 μ l was prepared in CXCR2 assay buffer (25 mM HEPES, pH 7.4, 2 mM CaCl_2 , 1mM MgCl_2). A 0.4 nM stock of ligand, [^{125}I]-IL-8 (NEN), was prepared in the CXCR2 assay buffer. 20X stock solutions of test compounds were prepared in DMSO (Sigma). A 6 X stock solution of GRO- α (R&D) was prepared in CXCR2 assay buffer. The above solutions were added to a 96-well assay plate (PerkinElmer or Corning) as follows: 10 μ l test compound or DMSO, 40 μ l CXCR2 assay buffer or GRO- α stock, 100 μ l of reaction mixture, 50 μ l of ligand stock (Final [Ligand] = 0.1 nM). When 40 X stock solutions of test compounds in DMSO were prepared, then the above protocol was used except instead 5 μ l test compound or DMSO and 45 μ l CXCR2 assay buffer were used. The assay plates were shaken for 5 minutes on a plate shaker, then incubated for 2-8 hours before cpm/well were determined in Microbeta Trilux counter (PerkinElmer). % Inhibition of total binding minus non-specific binding (250 nM Gro- α or 50 μ M antagonist) was determined and IC₅₀ values calculated. Compounds of this invention had an IC₅₀ of <5 μ M. The most preferred compounds had a K_i within the range of 0.8nM to 40nM.

Calcium Fluorescence Assay (FLIPR)

HEK 293 cells stably transfected with hCXCR2 and G α i/q were plated at 10,000 cells per well in a Poly-D-Lysine Black/Clear plate (Becton Dickinson) and incubated 48 hours at 5% CO₂, 37°C. The cultures were then incubated with 4 mM fluo-4, AM (Molecular Probes) in Dye Loading Buffer (1% FBS, HBSS w. Ca & Mg, 20 mM HEPES (Cellgro), 2.5 mM Probenicid (Sigma) for 1 hour. The cultures were washed with wash buffer (HBSS w Ca, & Mg, 20 mM HEPES, Probenicid (2.5 mM)) three times, then 100 μ l/well wash buffer was added.

During incubation, compounds were prepared as 4X stocks in 0.4% DMSO (Sigma) and wash buffer and added to their respective wells in the first addition plate. IL-8 or GRO- α (R&D Systems) concentrations were prepared 4X in wash buffer + 0.1% BSA and added to their respective wells in second addition plate.

Culture plate and both addition plates were then placed in the FLIPR imaging system to determine change in calcium fluorescence upon addition of compound and

then ligand. Briefly, 50 μ l of compound solutions or DMSO solution was added to respective wells and change in calcium fluorescence measured by the FLIPR for 1 minute. After a 3 minute incubation within the instrument, 50 μ l of ligand was then added and the change in calcium fluorescence measured by the FLIPR instrument for 1 minute. The area under each stimulation curve was determined and values used to determine % Stimulation by compound (agonist) and % Inhibition of Total Calcium response to ligand (0.3 nM IL-8 or GRO- α) for IC50 values of the test compounds.

Chemotaxis assays for 293-CXCR2

A chemotaxis assay is setup using Fluorblok inserts (Falcon) for 293-CXCR2 cells (HEK-293 cells overexpressing human CXCR2). The standard protocol used at present is as follows:

1. Inserts are coated with collagenIV (2ug/ml) for 2 hrs at 37°C.
2. The collagen is removed and inserts are allowed to air dry overnight.
3. Cells are labeled with 10uM calcein AM (Molecular Probes) for 2 hrs. Labeling is done in complete media with 2% FBS.
4. Dilutions of compound are made in minimal media (0.1% BSA) and placed inside the insert which is positioned inside the well of a 24 well plate. Within the well is IL-8 at a concentration of 0.25nM in minimal media. Cells are washed and resuspended in minimal media and placed inside the insert at a concentration of 50,000 cells per insert.
5. Plate is incubated for 2hrs and inserts are removed and placed in a new 24 well. Fluorescence is detected at excitation=485 nM and emission=530 nM.

Cytotoxicity Assays

A cytotoxicity assay for CXCR2 compounds is conducted on 293-CXCR2 cells. Concentrations of compounds are tested for toxicity at high concentrations to determine if they may be used for further evaluation in binding and cell based assays. The protocol is as follows:

1. 293-CXCR2 cells are plated overnight at a concentration of 5000 cells per well in complete media.
2. Dilutions of compound are made in minimal media w/0.1% BSA. Complete media is poured off and the dilutions of compound are added. Plates are incubated for 4,

24 and 48hrs. Cells are labeled with 10uM calcein AM for 15 minutes to determine cell viability. Detection method is the same as above.

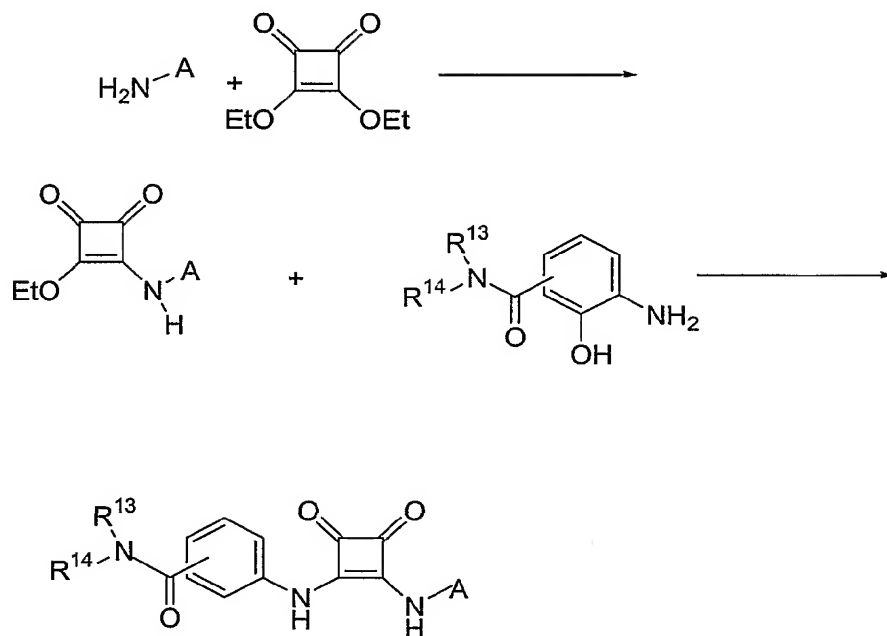
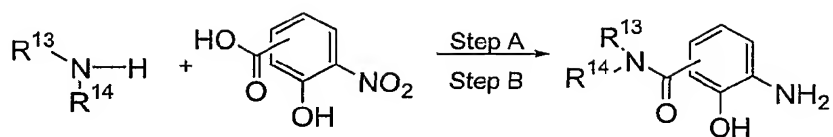
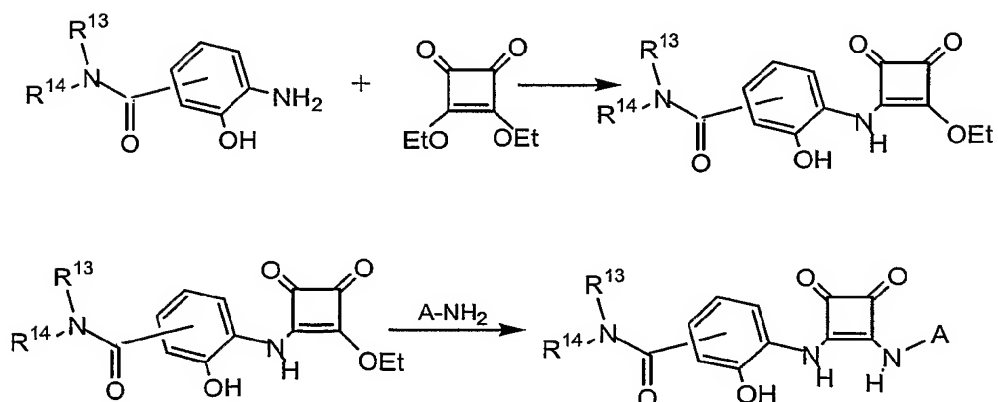
Soft Agar Assay

10,000 SKMEL-5 cells/well are placed in a mixture of 1.2% agar and complete media with various dilutions of compound. Final concentration of agar is 0.6%. After 21 days viable cell colonies are stained with a solution of MTT (1mg/ml in PBS). Plates are then scanned to determine colony number and size. IC₅₀ is determined by comparing total area vs. compound concentration.

Compounds of formula (I) or IA may be produced by processes known to those skilled in the art in the following reaction schemes and in the preparations and examples below.

A general procedure for the preparation of compounds of formula I or IA is as follows:

82

Scheme 1Scheme 2Scheme 1

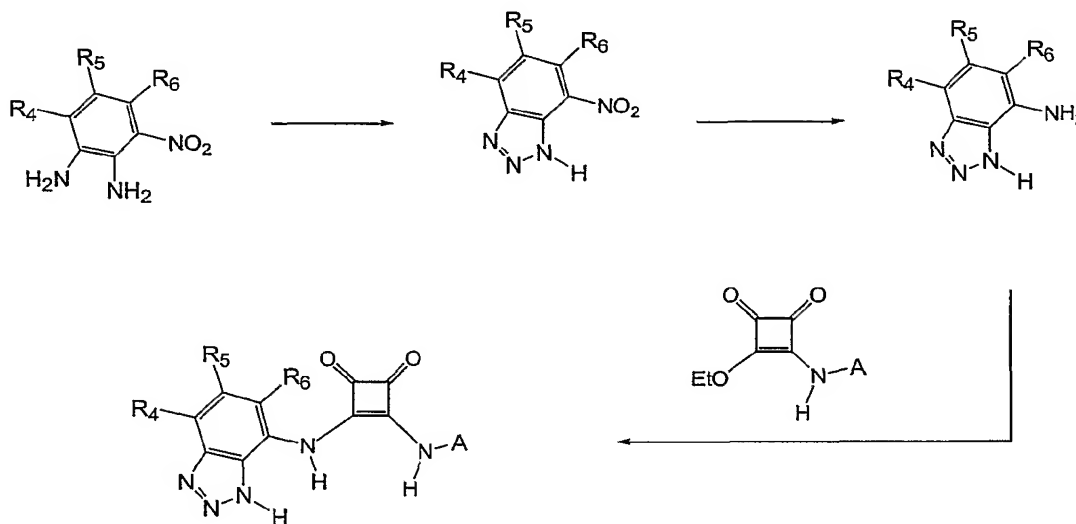
An amine is condensed (Step A) with a nitrosalicylic acid under standard coupling conditions and the resulting nitrobenzamide is reduced (Step B) under

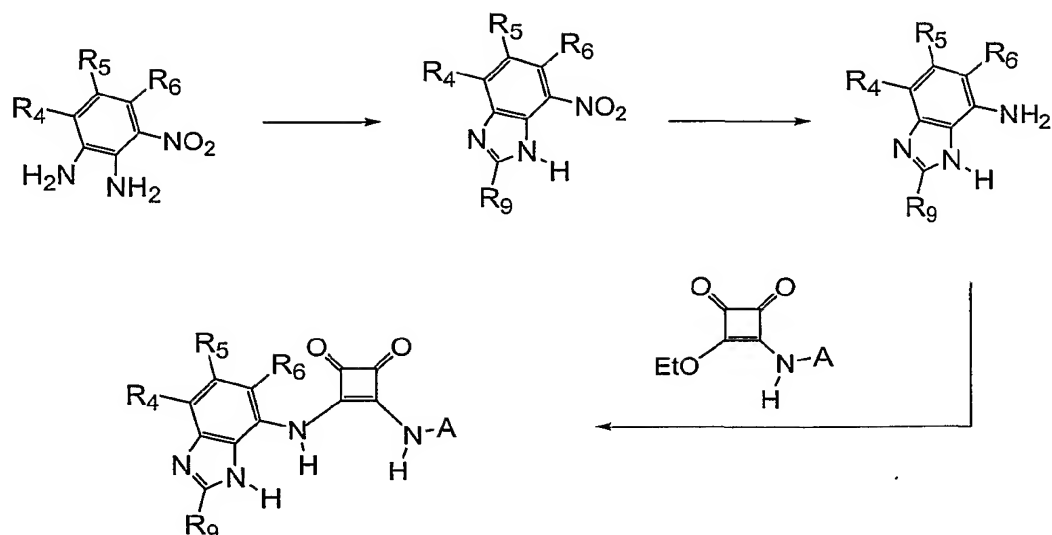
hydrogen atmosphere in the presence of a suitable catalyst. The remaining partner required for the synthesis of the final target is prepared by condensing an aryl amine with the commercially available diethylsquarate to give the aminoethoxysquarate product. Subsequent condensation of this intermediate with the aminobenzamide prepared earlier provides the desired chemokine antagonist (Scheme 1).

Scheme 2

Alternatively, the aminobenzamide of Scheme 1 is first condensed with commercially available diethylsquarate to give an alternate monoethoxy intermediate. Condensation of this intermediate with an amine gives the desired chemokine antagonist.

Scheme 3

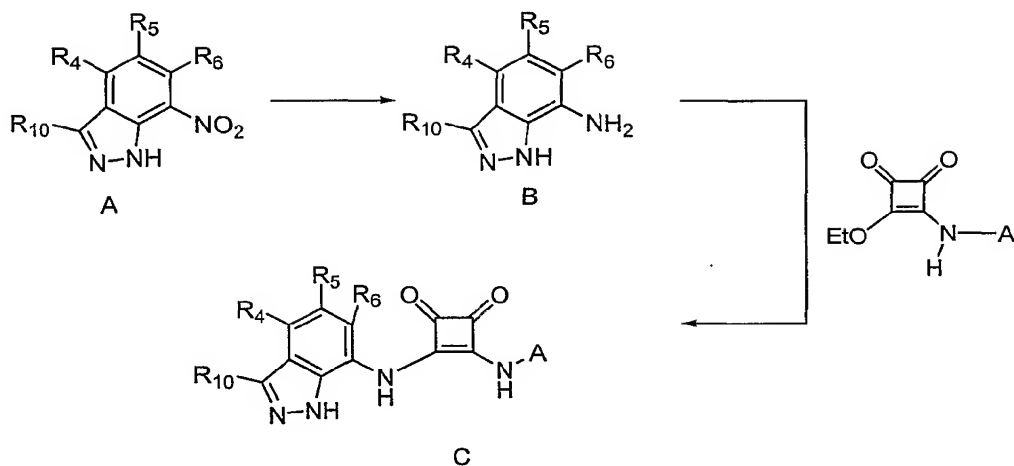


Scheme 4Scheme 3

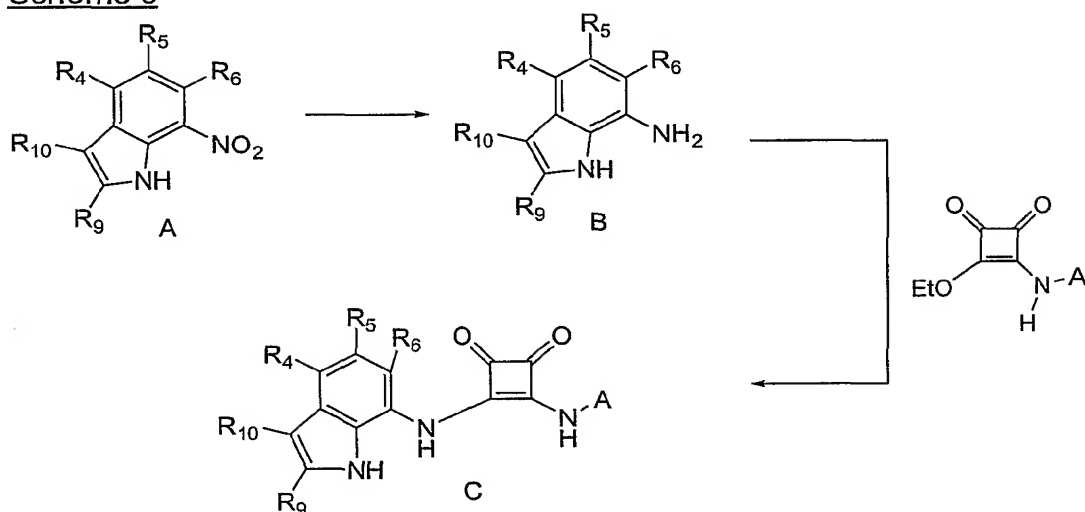
Benztriazole compounds of Formula (I) or IA are prepared by stirring
 5 nitrophenylenediamines with sodium nitrite in acetic acid at 60°C to afford the
 nitrobenzotriazole intermediate (Scheme 3). Reduction of the nitro group in the
 presence of palladium catalyst and hydrogen atmosphere provides the amine
 compound. Subsequent condensation of this intermediate with the
 aminoethoxysquarate prepared earlier (Scheme 1) provides the desired chemokine
 10 antagonist.

Scheme 4

Condensation of nitrophenylenediamines with anhydrides or activated acids at
 reflux (Scheme 4) affords benzimidazole intermediates which after reduction with
 hydrogen gas and palladium catalyst and condensation with the aminoethoxysquarate
 15 previously prepared (Scheme 1) affords benzimidazole chemokine antagonists.

Scheme 5

5

Scheme 6Scheme 5

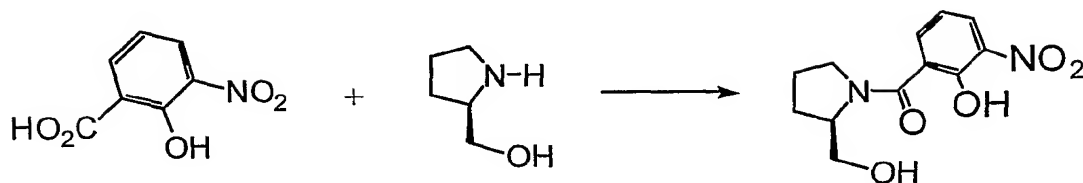
Indazole structures of Formula (I) or IA can be prepared according to Scheme 5 by reduction of nitroindazole A (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1943**, 65, 1804-1805) to give aminoindazole B and subsequent condensation with the aminoethoxysquarate prepared earlier (Scheme 1).

Scheme 6

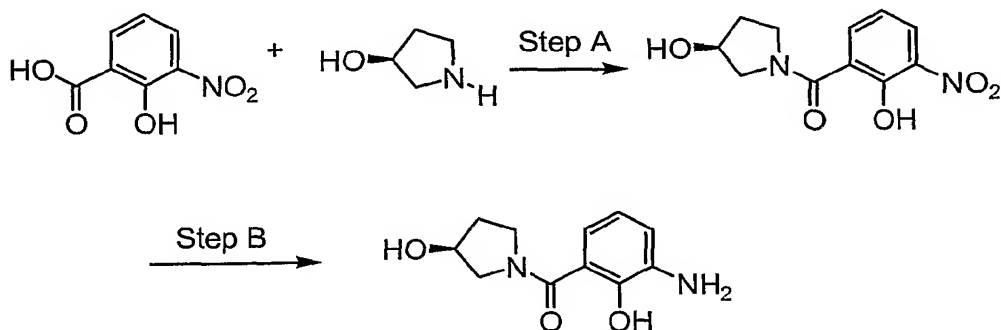
Indole structures of Formula (I) or IA can be prepared according to Scheme 6 by reduction of nitroindole A (*J. Med. Chem.* **1995**, 38, 1942-1954) to give

aminoindole B and subsequent condensation with the aminoethoxysquarate prepared earlier (Scheme 1).

The invention disclosed herein is exemplified by the following preparations and
5 examples which should not be construed to limit the scope of the disclosure.
Alternative mechanistic pathways and analogous structures may be apparent to those
skilled in the art.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 1

3-Nitrosalicylic acid (500 mg, 2.7 mmol), DCC (563 mg) and ethyl acetate (10 mL) were combined and stirred for 10 min. (R)-(-)-2-pyrrolidinemethanol (0.27 mL) was added and the resulting suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solid was filtered and the filtrate washed with 1N NaOH. The aqueous phase was acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The resulting organic phase was dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification of the residue by preparative plate chromatography (silica gel, 5% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2 saturated with AcOH) gave the product (338 mg, 46%, $\text{MH}^+ = 267$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2Step A

3-Nitrosalicylic acid (9.2 g), bromotripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBroP, 23 g) and N,N-diisopropylethylamine (DIEA, 26 mL) in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (125 mL) were combined and stirred at 25°C for 30 min. (R)-(+)-3-pyrrolidinol (8.7 g) in CH_2Cl_2 (25 mL) was added over 25 min and the resulting suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture was extracted with 1M NaOH (aq) and the organic phase was discarded. The aqueous phase was

88

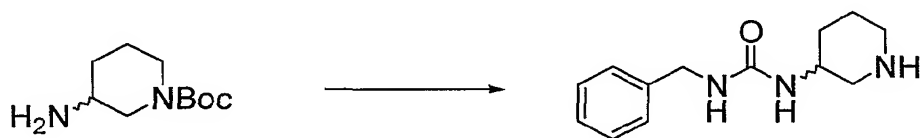
acidified with 1M HCl (aq), extracted with EtOAc, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the crude product (7 g) which was used without further purification.

5 Step B

The crude product from Step A above was stirred with 10% Pd/C (0.7 g) in MeOH (100 mL) under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ saturated with NH₄OH) to give the product (2.5 g, 41%, MH⁺=223).

10

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.1



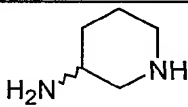
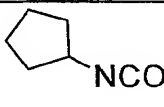
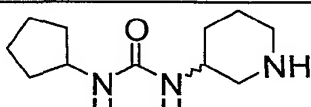
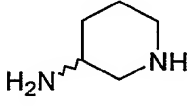
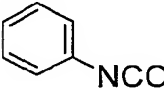
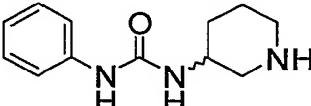
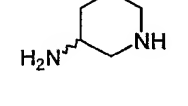
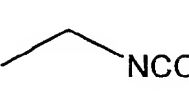
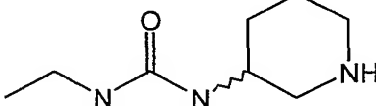
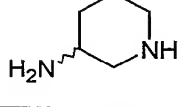
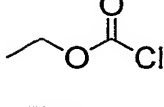
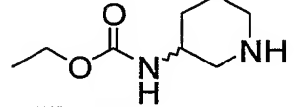
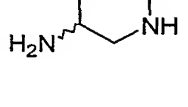
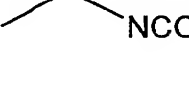
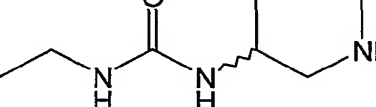
To N-BOC-3-(amino)piperidine (0.5 g) dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) was added benzylisocyanate (3 mmol). After stirring for 2 hrs, amine scavenger resin (1.9 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight, filtered, the resin back-washed with CH₂Cl₂ and methanol, and the organics concentrated *in vacuo*. Stirring of the crude material in 4N HCl/dioxane (40 mL) for 2.5 hrs before concentrating *in vacuo* gave the title compound (41%, MH⁺=369).

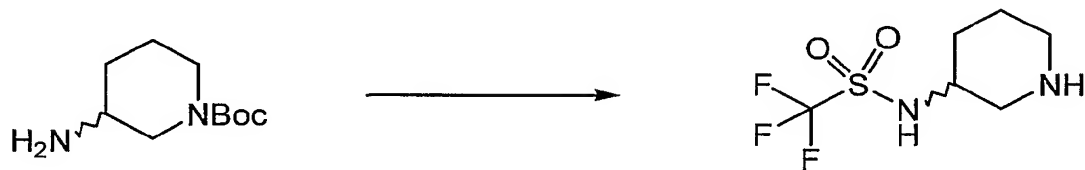
20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.2 – 2.6

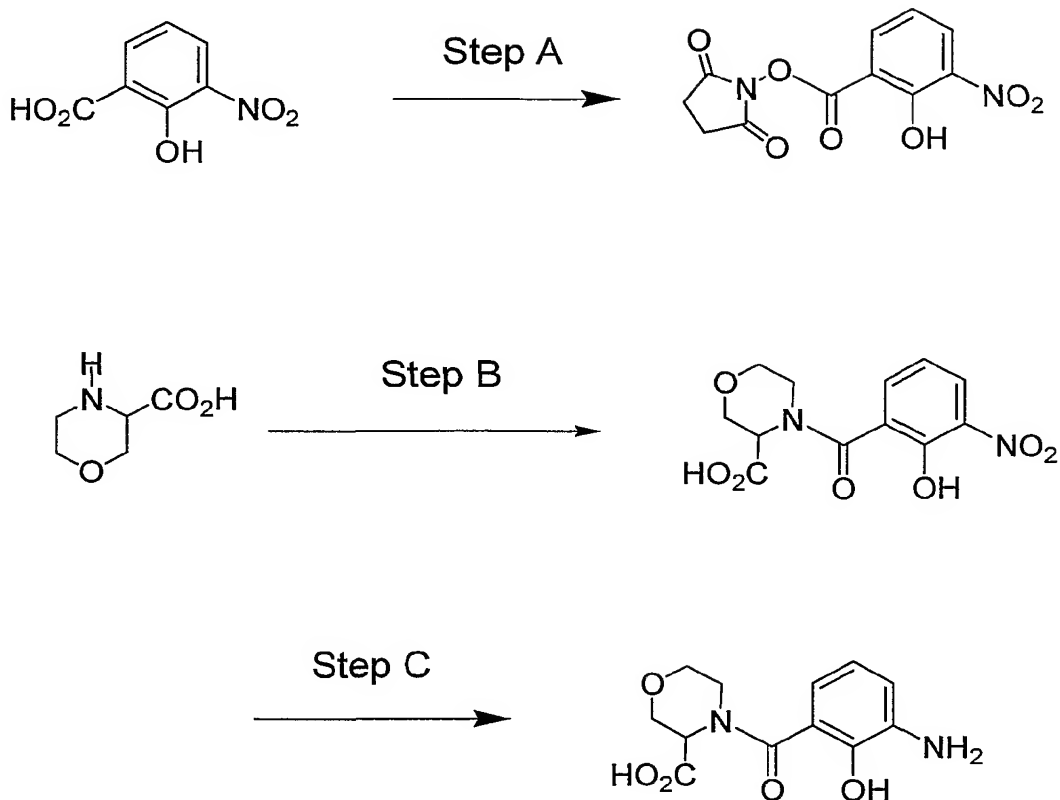
Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 2.1 but using the isocyanate (or chloroformate) indicated in the Table below, the amines were obtained and used without further purification.

25

Prep Ex.	Amine	Isocyanate	Amine
2.2			
2.3			
2.4			
2.5			
2.6			

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.7

To N-BOC-3-(amino)piperidine (5 mmol) dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (30 mL) was added trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride (5 mmol) and the mixture was stirred overnight. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with CH_2Cl_2 (10 mL) and treated with trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL). After stirring for 2 hr, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound (43%, $\text{MH}^+=233.1$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.8

5

Step A

3-Nitrosalicylic acid (5 mmol) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (5 mmol) were added to a solution of 2% DMF/CH₂Cl₂, followed by DCC (5 mmol). After stirring for 2 hr, the mixture was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue used directly in Step B.

10

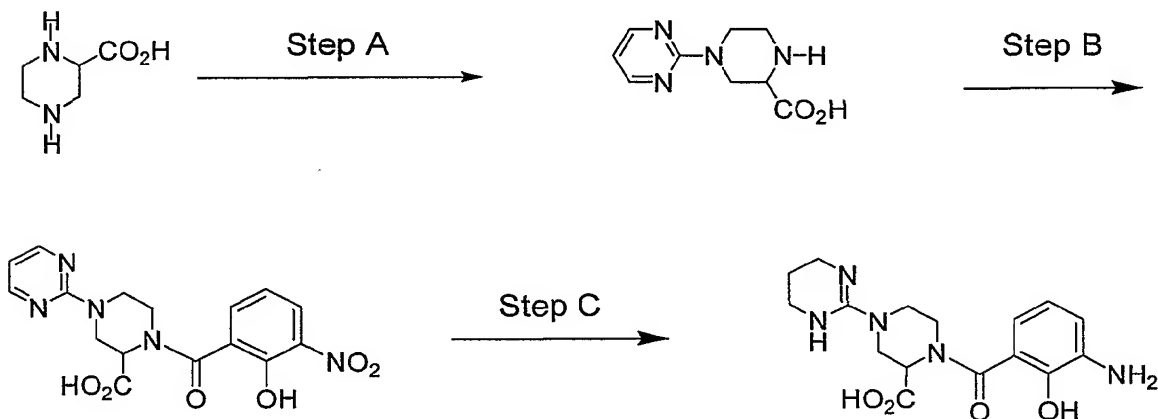
Step B

The product from Step A above was suspended in DMF and to this was added morpholino-2-carboxylic acid HCl (5 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL)/DMF (5 mL) and diisopropylethylamine (10 mmol). The mixture was stirred overnight, filtered, basified with 1N NaOH (50 mL), washed with CH₂Cl₂, acidified with 5N HCl and extracted with EtOAc. The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired compound which was used directly in Step C (MH⁺=296).

15

Step C

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2 Step B, but using the product from Step B above, the title compound was obtained (23%, $MH^+ = 267$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.9Step A

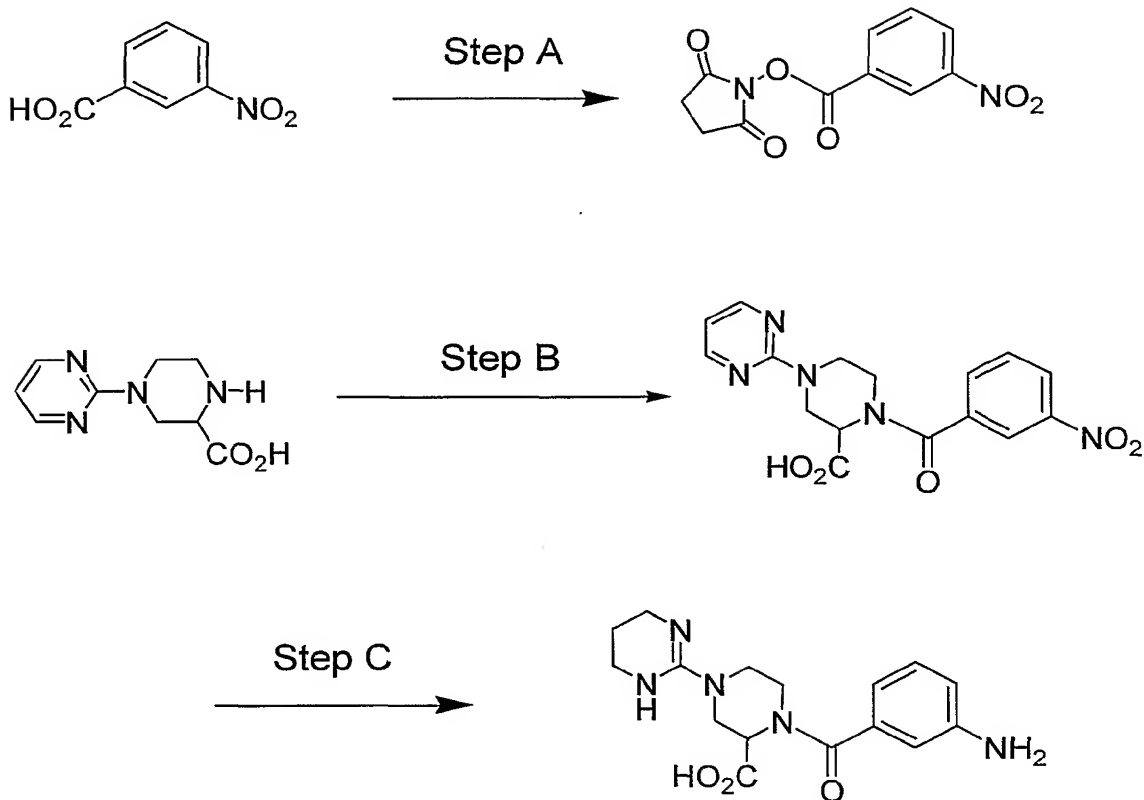
2-Piperazinecarboxylic acid and 2-chloro-1,3-pyrimidine were stirred with triethylamine and MeOH. After stirring overnight at reflux, the mixture was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired compound which was used directly in Step B ($MH^+ = 209$).

Step B

Following a similar procedure as Preparative Example 2.8, Step B except using the product from Preparative Example 2.9 Step A above, the desired compound was obtained (41%, $MH^+ = 374$).

Step C

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B, but using the product from Step B above, the desired compound was obtained (99%, $MH^+ = 344$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.10

5

Step A

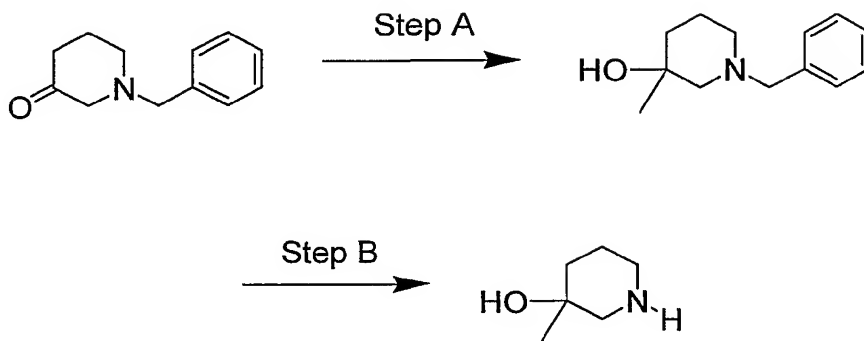
Following a similar procedure as Preparative Example 2.8, Step A except using 3-nitrobenzoic acid, the desired compound was obtained and used directly in Step B.

10 Step B

Following a similar procedure as Preparative Example 2.8, Step B except using the products from Preparative Example 2.9, Step A and Preparative Example 2.10, Step A, the desired compound was obtained (86%).

15 Step C

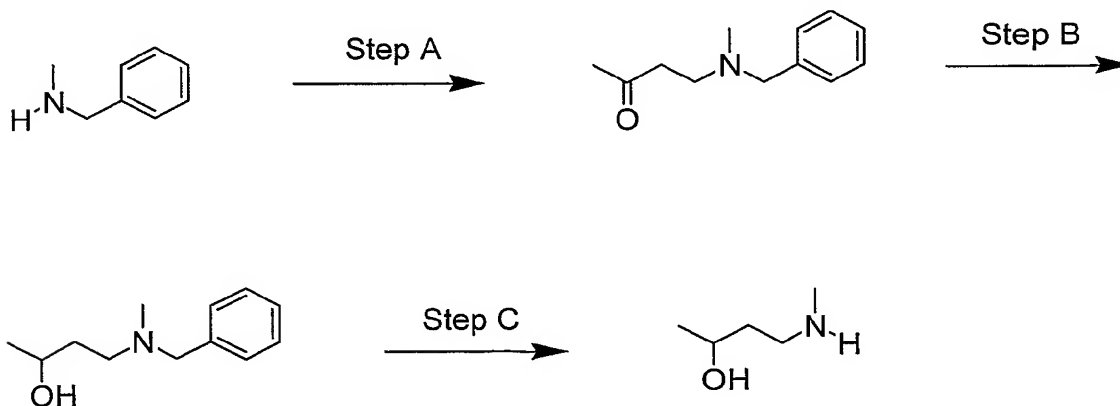
Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B, but using the product from Step B above, the desired compound was obtained (67%, $MH^+=331$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.11Step A

N-Benzylpiperidone (2 g, HCl salt, hydrate) was stirred with THF (20 mL), concentrated to dryness, and placed under high vac. The residue was diluted in THF (20 mL), and methyllithium was added (2.5 eq of 1.6N in Et₂O) via syringe. After stirring for 3 hr, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with water, extracted with CH₂Cl₂, and dried over Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentrating *in vacuo* gave the desired product (50%, MH⁺ = 205).

Step B

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B, but using the product from Step A above, the title compound was obtained (95%, MH⁺=116).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.12Step A

To N-benzyl-N-methylamine (20 mmol) dissolved in acetone (50 mL) was added concentrated HCl (20 mmol), paraformaldehyde (30 mmol) and 2-propanol (2

94

mL). After stirring at reflux overnight, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with water, basified to pH 14 and extracted with ether. The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired product (98%) which was used directly in Step B.

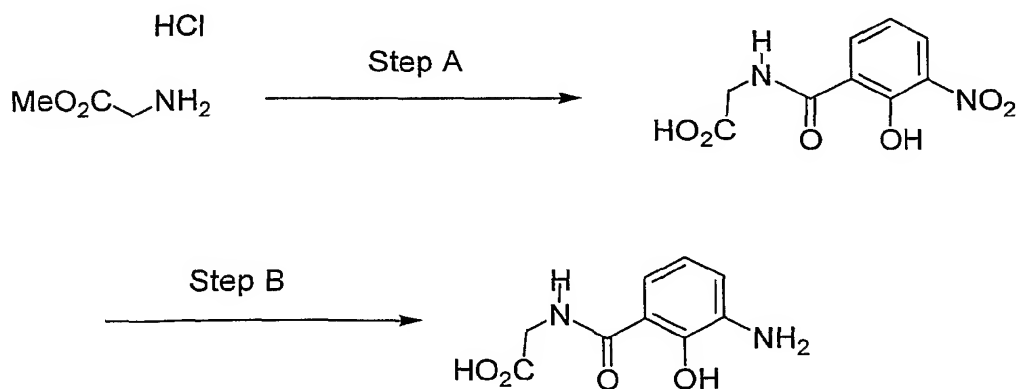
Step B

The product from Step A above (500 mg) was dissolved in MeOH (20 mL) and to this was added NaBH₄ (50 mg). After stirring for 10 min, the solution was concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired compound which was used directly in Step C without purification.

Step C

The product from Step B above was diluted with MeOH (20 mL) and to this was added AcOH (0.1 mL), a catalytic amount of Pd/C (10%) and the mixture stirred under H₂ atmosphere (balloon) overnight. The mixture was filtered, 4N HCl in dioxane (1 mL) was added, and the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired compound that was used directly without purification.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.13



Step A

Following a similar procedure as Preparative Example 2, Step A except using methyl glycinate, the desired ester was obtained. The mixture was poured into 200 mL of 1N NaOH, then extracted with dichloromethane. The pH was adjusted to 1 and

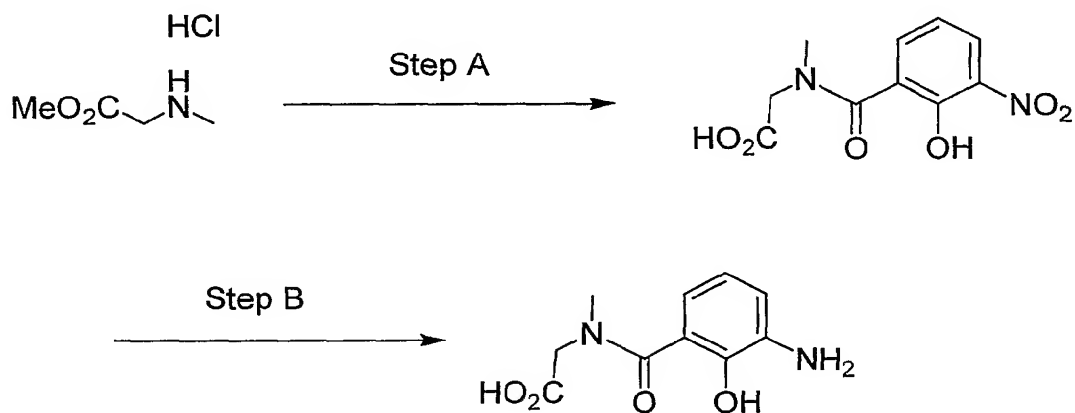
95

NaCl was added until saturation. After several hours, the resulting precipitate was filtered and washed with cold water to give the desired product (42%).

Step B

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2 Step B, but using the product from Step A above, the title compound was obtained (95%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.14



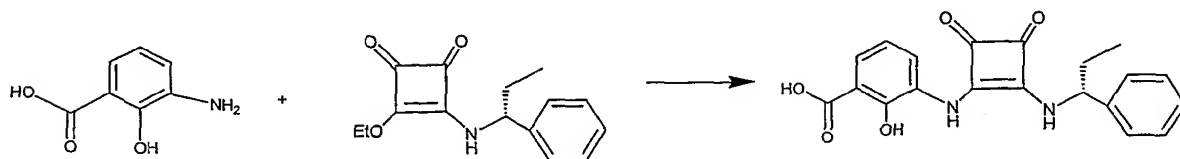
Step A

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2.13, Step A except using methyl N-methylglycinate, the desired product was obtained (18%).

Step B

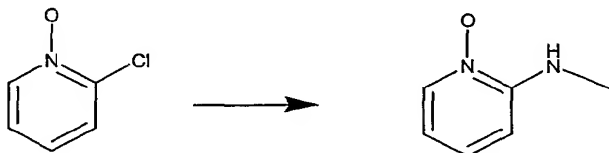
Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B, but using the product from Step A above, the title compound was obtained (95%, $\text{MH}^+ = 225$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.15



The cyclobutenedione intermediate from Preparative Example 87 (200mg), DIEA (100ul), 3-aminosalicylic acid (120mg) and EtOH (4ml) were combined and heated to reflux overnight to give the title compound (90%, MH+=367).

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 2.16

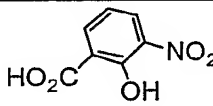
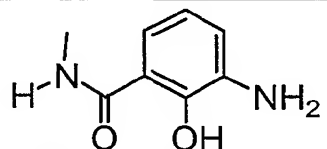
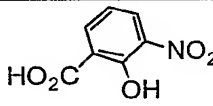
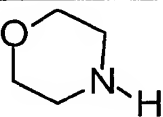
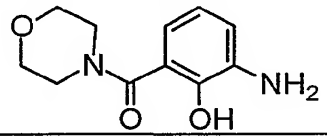
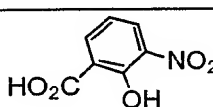
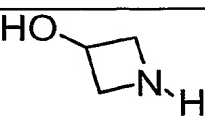
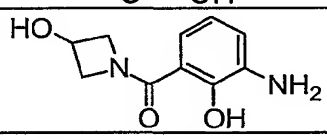
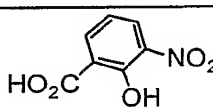
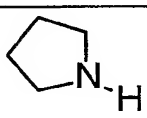
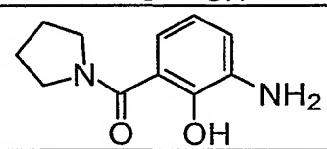
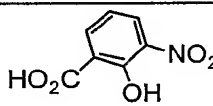
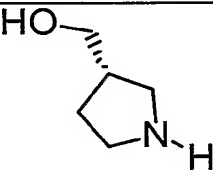
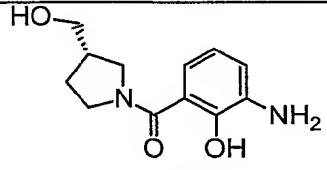
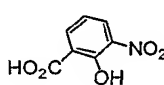
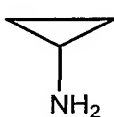
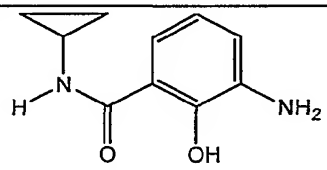
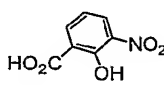
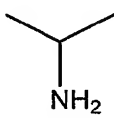
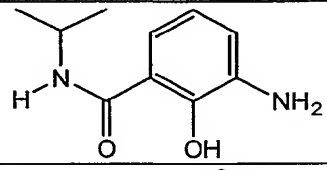
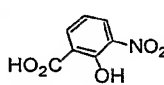
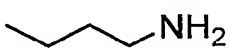
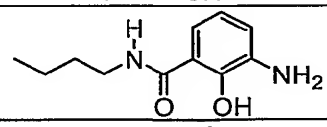
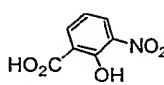
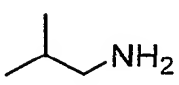
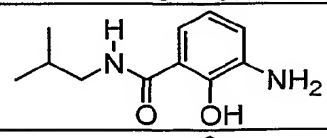
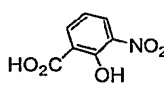
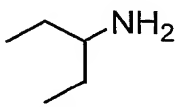
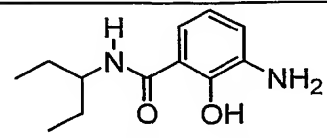
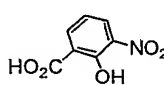
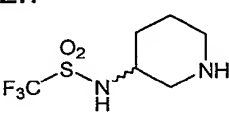
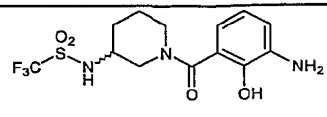
10

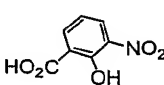
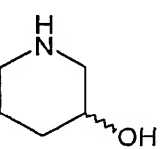
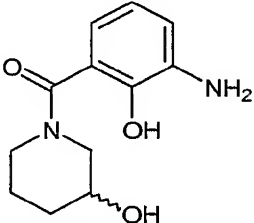
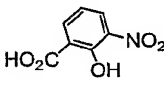
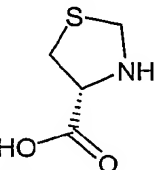
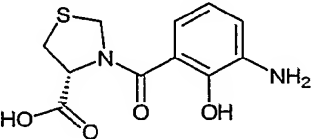
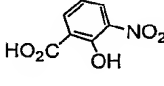
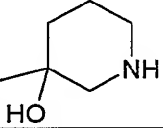
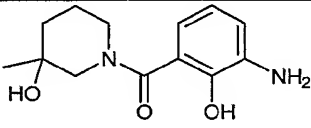
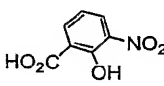
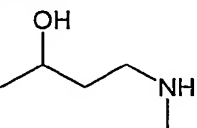
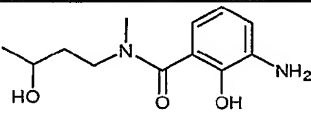
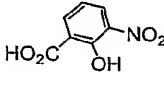
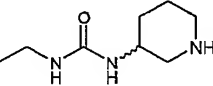
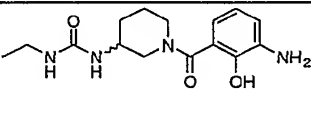
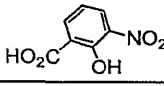
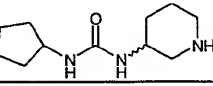
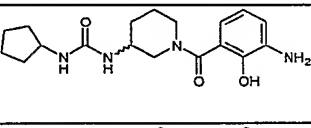
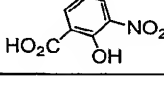
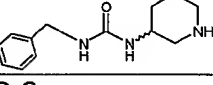
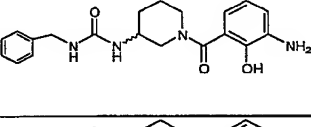
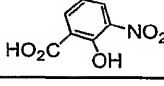
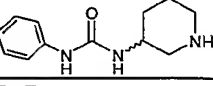
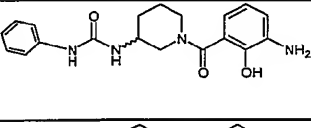
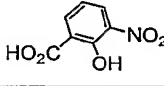
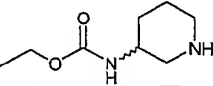
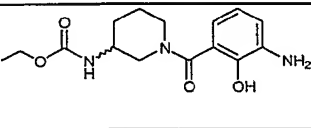
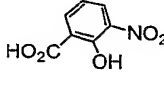
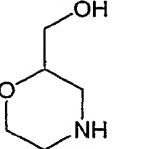
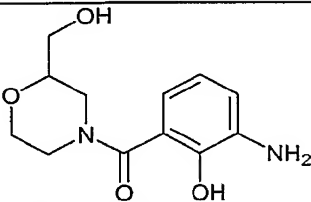
The above n-oxide (2g) was combined with H₂NMe/H₂O (15cm³) and heated to 140°C overnight. Potassium carbonate (1.3g) added and the mixture concentrated *in vacuo*. Extraction with EtOH and concentration of the filtrate *in vacuo* gave 1.56g of crude amine (MH+=125).

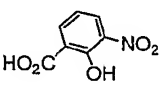
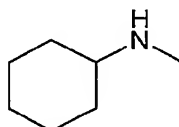
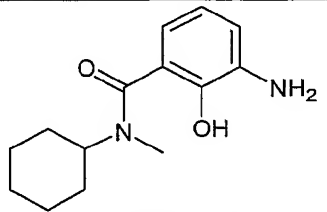
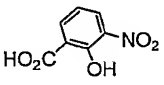
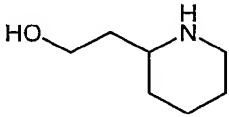
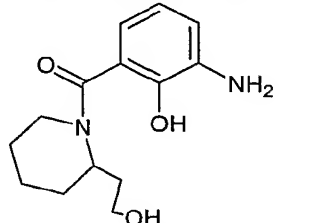
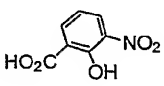
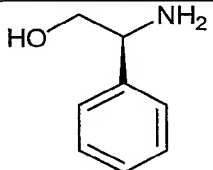
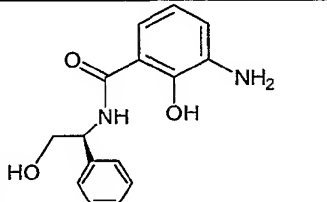
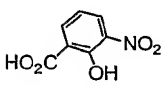
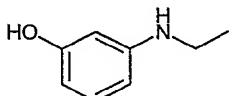
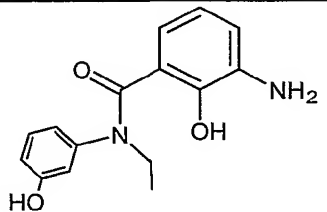
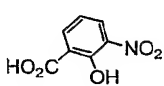
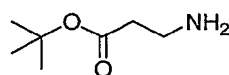
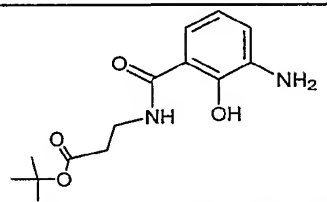
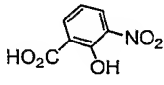
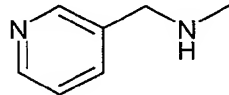
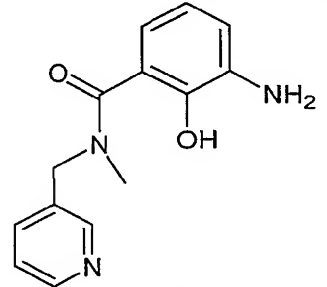
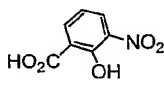
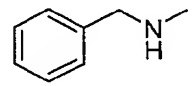
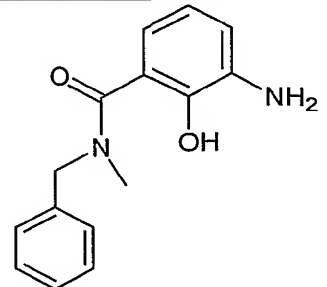
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 3-10.50

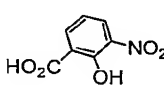
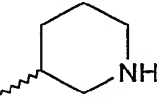
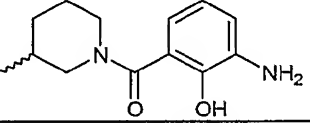
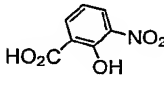
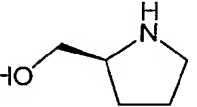
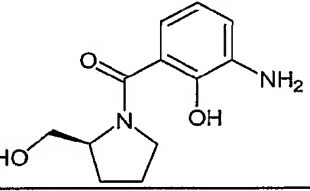
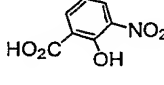
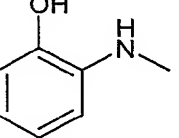
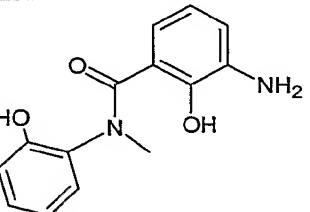
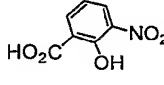
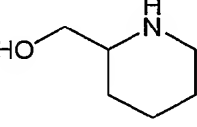
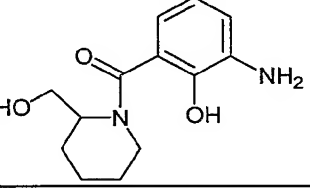
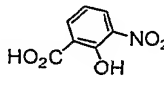
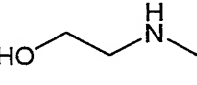
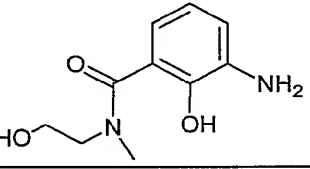
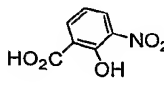
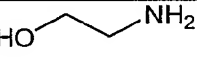
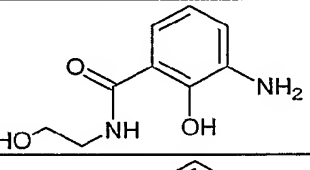
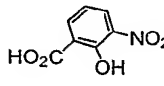
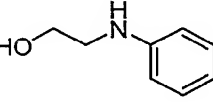
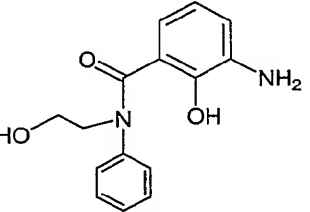
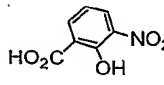
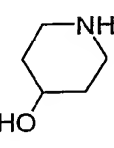
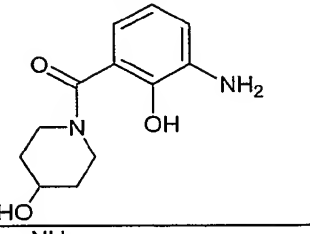
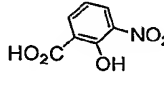
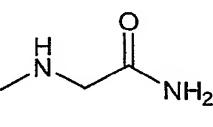
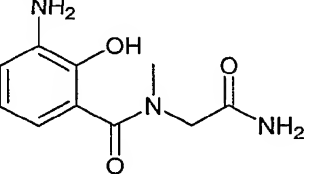
Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Examples 1-2 but using the carboxylic acid, amine, and coupling agent [DCC (Prep. Ex. 1) or PyBroP (Prep. Ex. 2)] listed in the Table below, the indicated amide products were obtained and used without further purification.

Prep Ex.	Carboxylic acid	Amine	Product	1. Coupling Agent 2. % Yield 3. MH ⁺
3				1. PyBroP 2. 87%, 86% 3. 181
4				1. PyBroP 2. 49% 3. 209
5		NH ₃		1. PyBroP 2. 95% 3. 153

6		—NH_2		1. PyBroP 2. 83% 3. 167
7				1. PyBroP 2. 76% 3. 223
8				1. PyBroP 2. 65, 53 3. 209
9				1. PyBroP 2. 59, 69 3. 207
10				1. PyBroP 2. 49, 86 3. 237
10.1				1. PyBroP 2. 30, 88 3. 193
10.2				1. PyBroP 2. 26, 87 3. 195
10.3				1. PyBroP 2. 38 3. 209
10.4				1. PyBroP 2. 29 3. 209
10.5				1. PyBroP 2. 38 3. 223
10.6		2.7 		1. PyBroP 2. 32, 99 3. 367.9

10.7				1. PyBroP 2. 35,99 3. 237
10.8				1. DCC 2. 30,99 3. 269
10.9		2.11 		1. PyBroP 2. 58,95 3. 233.1
10.10		2.12 		1. PyBroP 2. 42,95 3. 238.9
10.13		2.4 		1. PyBroP 2. 51,95 3. 307
10.14		2.2 		1. PyBroP 2. 55 3. 347
10.15		2.1 		1. PyBroP 2. 41 3. 369.1
10.16		2.3 		1. PyBroP 2. 56 3. 354.9
10.17		2.5 		1. PyBroP 2. 56 3. 308
10.18		12.4 		1. PyBroP 2. 10,95 3. 252.9

10.19				1. PyBroP 2. 42,95 3. 249
10.20				1. PyBroP 2. 15,95 3. 264.9
10.21				1. PyBroP 2. 64,95 3. 273
10.22				1. PyBroP 2. 45,95 3. 273
10.23				1. PyBroP 2. 44,95 3. 281
10.24				1. PyBroP 2. 41,95 3. 281.1
10.25				1. PyBroP 2. 48,95 3. 257

10.26				1. DCC 2. 15,99 3. 235
10.28				1. PyBroP 2. 52,95 3. 237.1
10.29				1. PyBroP 2. 31,95 3. 259.1
10.30				1. PyBroP 2. 54,95 3. 250.9
10.31				1. PyBroP 2. 64,95 3. 210.9
10.32				1. PyBroP 2. 47,95 3. 197
10.33				1. PyBroP 2. 47,95 3. 273
10.34				1. PyBroP 2. 51,95 3. 237.1
10.35				1. PyBroP 2. 60,90 3. 224

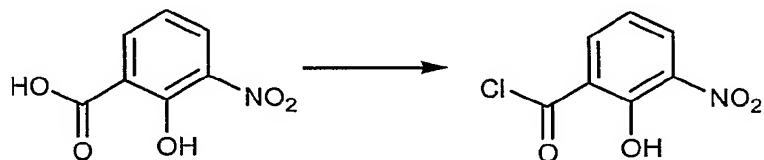
10.36				1. PyBroP 2. 65,99 3. 252
10.37				1. PyBroP 2. 58,99 3. 239
10.38				1. PyBroP 2. 35,99 3. 221.1
10.39				1. PyBroP 2. 42,99 3. 235.2
10.40				1. DCC 2. 32,99 3. 293.1
10.41				1. PyBroP 2. 45,99 3. 223.1
10.42				1. PyBroP 2. 55,81 3. 251.1
10.43				1. PyBroP 2. 68,66 3. 224.9
10.44				1. PyBroP 2. 68,66 3. 241.1

102

10.45		12.3 		1. PyBroP 2. 44,40 3. 295
10.46				1. DCC 2. 37,81 3. 265
10.47		2.6 		1. PyBroP 2. 71,95 3. 293.1
10.48				1. PyBroP 2. 35,99 3. 220.9
10.49				1. DCC 2. 16,99 3. 209.0
10.50				1. DCC 2. 18,99 3. 264.0

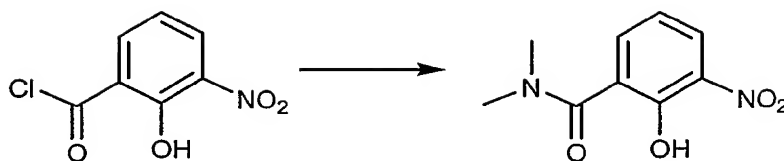
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 10.55Alternative Procedure for Preparative Example 3

5

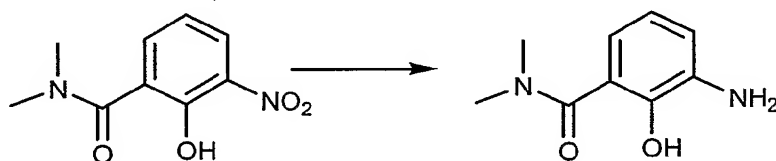
Step A

10

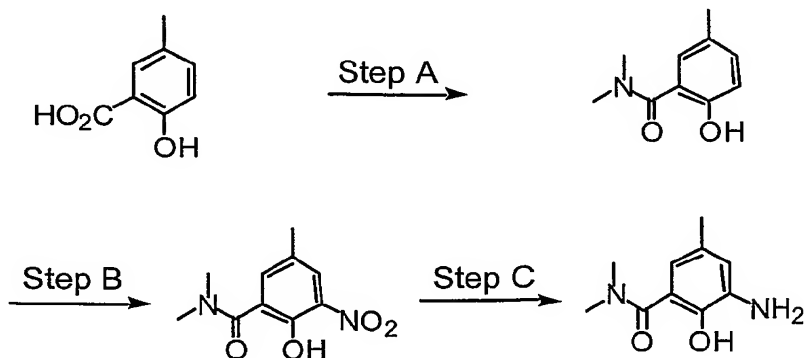
To the nitrosalicylic acid (3 g) dissolved dichloromethane (150 mL) at room temperature was added oxalyl chloride (4.3 mL) and DMF (0.01 eq.). After stirring for one day the mixture was concentrated in a vacuum to give a semi solid which was used directly in step B.

Step B

To the material from step A diluted in dichloromethane (50 mL) and cooled to 0° C was added dimethyl amine in THF (2N solution, 24.6 mL) and triethylamine (4 eq.). After stirring for 24 hours at room temperature the mixture was concentrated in vacuo, diluted with 1M sodium hydroxide (30 mL) and after a half hour was washed with dichloromethane. The aqueous phase was acidified with 6M HCl (aq), extracted with dichloromethane and the organic phase was washed with water, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to give the title compound (3.2 g, 93%).

Step C

A mixture of the product from step B above (6 g), 10% Pd/C (0.6 g), and EtOH (80 mL) was stirred in a parr shaker under hydrogen (40 psi) at room temperature for 2 days. Filtration through celite and concentration *in vacuo* afforded the title product (5.1 g, 99%, MH⁺ = 181).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11

Step A

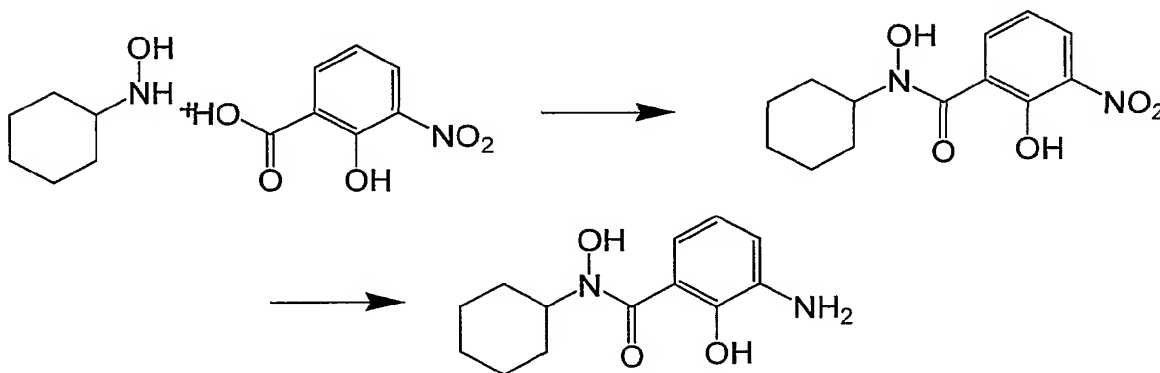
Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 1 except using dimethylamine (2M in THF, 33 mL) and 5-methylsalicylic acid (5 g), the desired product was prepared (6.5 g).

Step B

Nitric acid (0.8 mL) in H₂SO₄ was added to a cooled (-20°C) suspension of the product from Step A above (3 g) in H₂SO₄ (25 mL). The mixture was treated with 50% NaOH (aq) dropwise, extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product as a crude solid (2.1 g, 44%, MH⁺ = 225).

Step C

The product was prepared in the same manner as described in Step B of Preparative Example 2 (0.7 g, 99%, MH⁺ = 195).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11.1Step A

The above amine was reacted with the acid using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step A to yield the desired amide (54%).

Step B

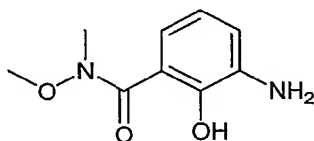
Na₂S₂O₄ (1.22g) was dissolved in water (4ml) followed by the addition of NH₃/H₂O (300ul). The solution was then added to the product from Step A (200 mg) in

105

dioxane (4ml) and stirred for 30min. The crude material was purified via flash column chromatography ($\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{MeOH}$, 20:1) to give 100mg of product (56%, $\text{MH}^+=251$).

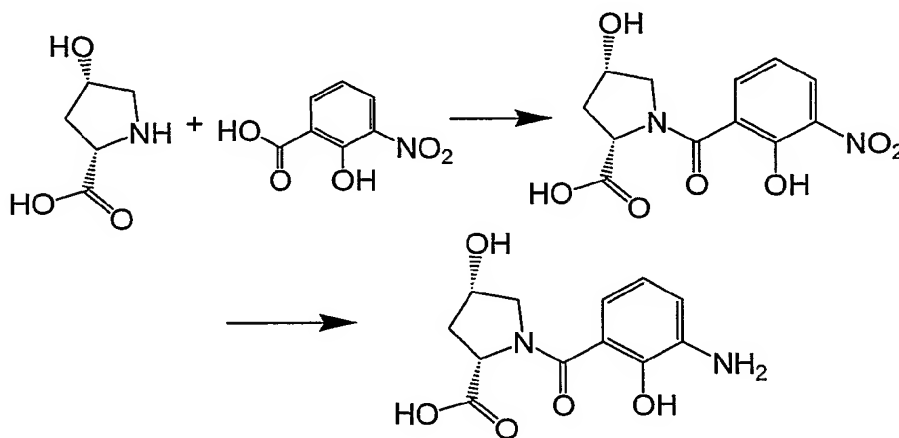
5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11.2



Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 11.1, Steps A and B, but using N-methylmethoxylamine, the title compound was obtained (86%, $\text{MH}^+=181$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11.10



15

Step A

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 1, but using N-hydroxysuccinimide and 2% DMF in CH_2Cl_2 , the desired amide was obtained (33%, $\text{MH}^+=297$).

20

Step B

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step B, the amine was prepared (99%, $\text{MH}^+=267$).

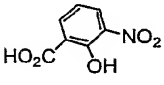
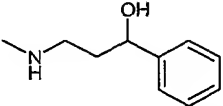
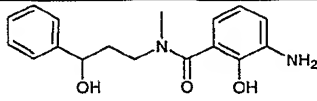
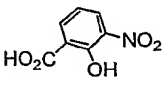
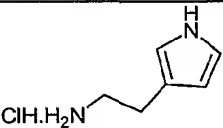
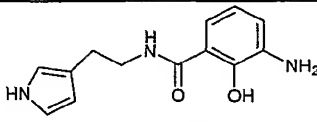
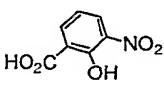
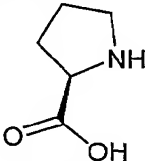
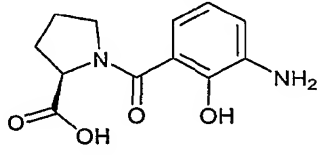
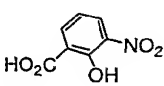
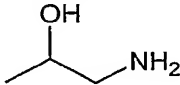
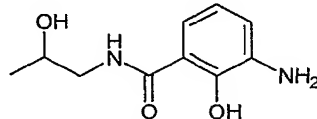
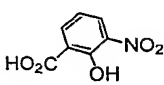
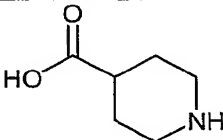
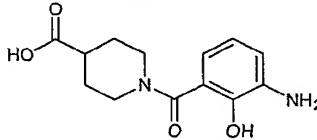
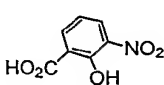
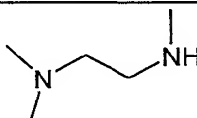
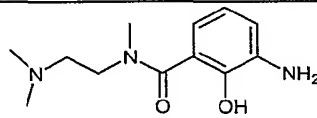
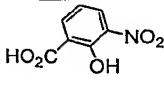
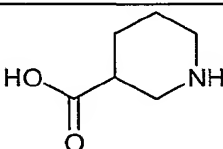
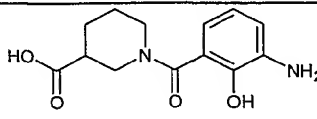
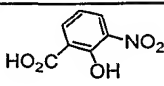
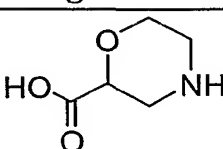
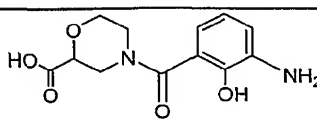
25

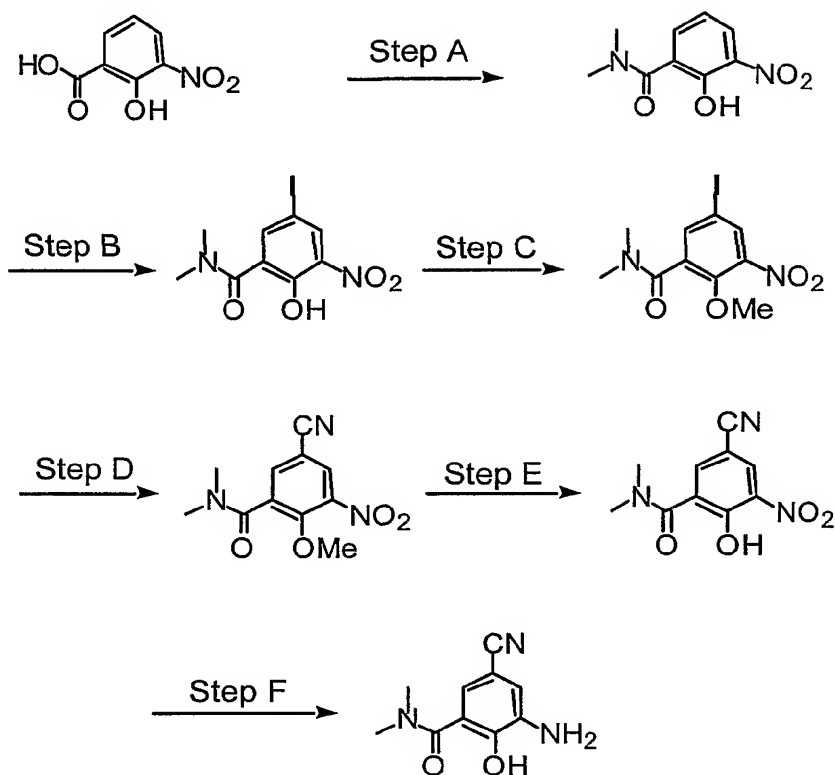
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 11.11 –

11.18

Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Examples 11.11 but using the carboxylic acid, amine, and coupling agent DCC indicated, the indicated amide products were obtained and used without further purification.

5

Prep Ex.	Carboxylic acid	Amine	Product	1. % Yield 2. MH ⁺
11.11				1. 45,92 2. 310.0
11.12				1. 45,95 2. 247.2
11.13				1. 85,85 2. 251.1
11.14				1. 99,92 2. 211.1
11.15				1. 48,84 2. 265
11.16				1. 78,91 2. 238.1
11.17				1. 67,90 2. 265.1
11.18				1. 28,99 2. 267

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12

5

Step A

Following a similar procedure as described in Preparative Example 2 Step A except using dimethylamine in place of R-(+)-3-pyrrolidinol, the desired product was prepared.

10

Step B

The product from step A above (8 g) was combined with iodine (9.7 g), silver sulfate (11.9 g), EtOH (200 mL) and water (20 mL) and stirred overnight. Filtration, concentration of the filtrate, re-dissolution in CH₂Cl₂ and washing with 1M HCl (aq) gave an organic solution which was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the product (7.3 g, 57%, MH⁺ = 337).

15

Step C

The product from Step B above (3.1 g) was combined with DMF (50 mL) and MeI (0.6 mL). NaH (60% in mineral oil, 0.4 g) was added portionwise and the mixture

20

108

was stirred overnight. Concentration *in vacuo* afforded a residue which was diluted with CH_2Cl_2 , washed with 1M NaOH (aq), dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification through a silica gel column (EtOAc/Hex, 1:1) gave the desired compound (1.3 g, 41%, $\text{MH}^+ = 351$).

5

Step D

The product from Step D above (200 mg), $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$ (132 mg), $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$ (130 mg) and DMF (5 mL) were heated at 80°C for 48 hrs, then cooled to room temperature and diluted with EtOAc and 2M NH_4OH . After shaking well, the organic extract was dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by preparative plate chromatography (Silica, EtOAc/Hex, 1:1) to give the desired compound (62 mg, 44%, $\text{MH}^+ = 250$).

10

Step E

BBR_3 (1.3 mL, 1M in CH_2Cl_2) was added to a CH_2Cl_2 solution (5 mL) of the product from step D above (160 mg) and stirred for 30 min. The mixture was diluted with water, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired compound (158 mg, $\text{MH}^+ = 236$).

15

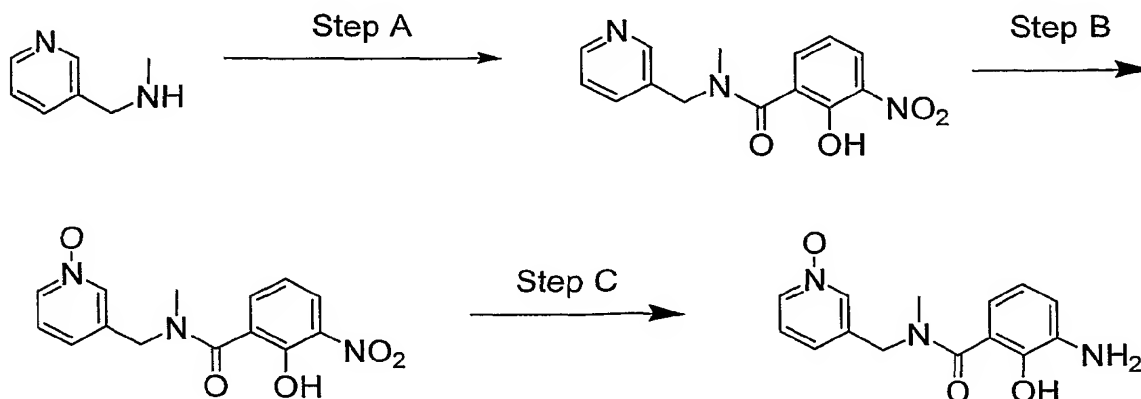
Step F

A mixture of the product from step E above (160 mg), platinum oxide (83%, 19 mg), and EtOH (20 mL) was stirred under hydrogen (25-40 psi) for 1.5 hr. Filtration through celite and concentration *in vacuo* afforded the product (165 mg, $\text{MH}^+ = 206$).

20

25

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12.1



Step A

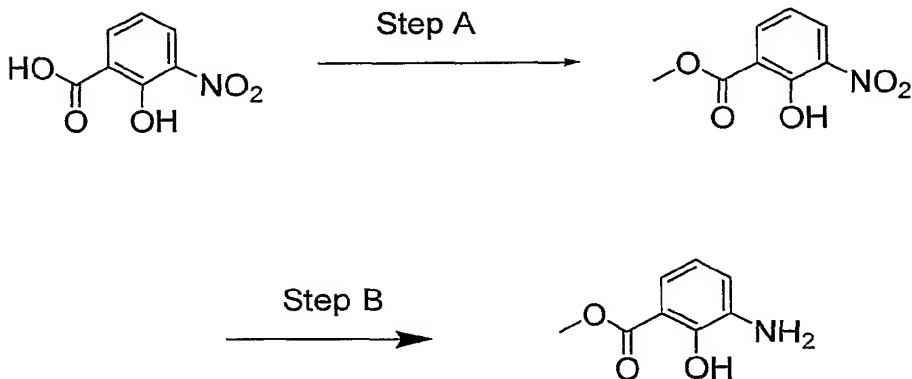
Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step A except using 3-(methylaminomethyl)pyridine and 3-nitrosalicylic acid, the desired compound was prepared (41%).

Step B

The compound from Step A above (0.3 g) was diluted with chloroform (15 mL) and stirred with *m*CPBA (0.4 g) for 2 hr. Purification by column chromatography (silica, 10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) gave the pyridyl N-oxide (0.32 g, 100%, MH⁺ = 303.9).

Step C

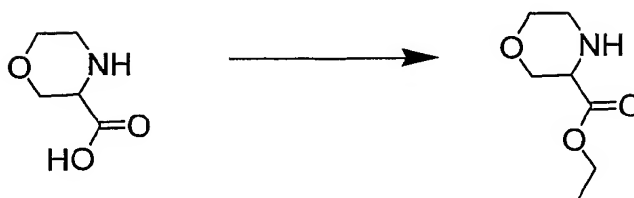
Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 11.1, Step B, but using the product from Step B above, the desired compound was obtained (15%, MH⁺=274).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12.2Step A

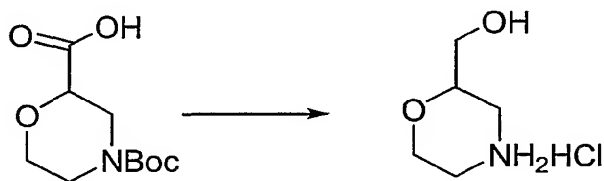
3-Nitrosalicylic acid (4 g) in MeOH (100 mL) and concentrated H₂SO₄ (1 mL) were stirred at reflux overnight, concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with CH₂Cl₂, and dried over Na₂SO₄. Purification by column chromatography (silica, 5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) gave the methyl ester (2.8 g, 65%).

Step B

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B, but using the product from Step A above, the desired compound was obtained (95%, MH⁺=167.9).

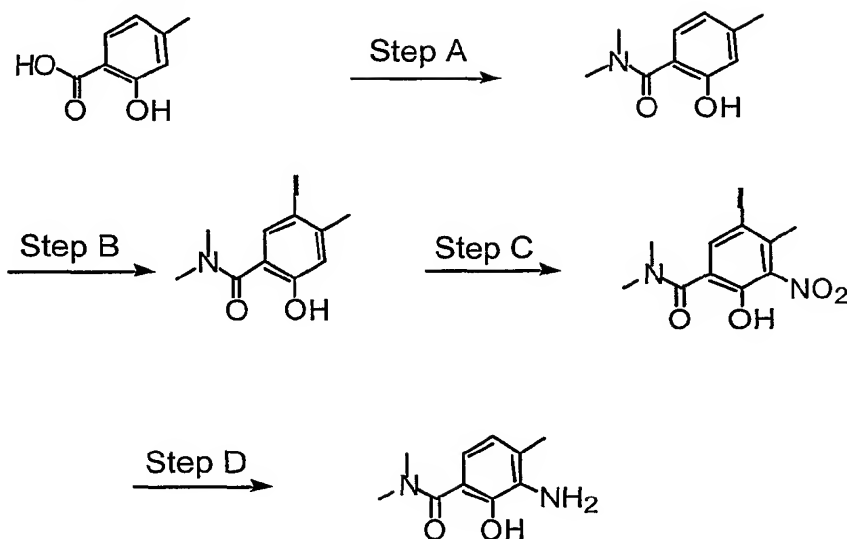
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12.3

To morpholine-2-carboxylic acid (200mg) in EtOH (40mL) at 0°C was added acetyl chloride (3mL) and the mixture was stirred at reflux overnight. Concentration *in vacuo*, dilution with CH₂Cl₂ and washing with NaHCO₃ (aq) gave the title compound (99%, MH⁺ = 160.1).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 12.4

To N-Boc morpholine-2-carboxylic acid (2g) in THF (5ml) at 0°C was added a solution of borane.THF complex (1N, 10.38ml) and the mixture was stirred for 30min at 0°C, and for 2hr at room temperature. Water (200ml) was added to the reaction and the mixture extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 490mg of product (26%). The product was then stirred in 4N HCl/dioxane to give the amine salt.

111

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13Step A

- 5 Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 1 except using dimethylamine (2M in THF, 50 mL) and 4-methylsalicylic acid (15 g), the desired compound was prepared (6.3 g, 35%) .

Step B

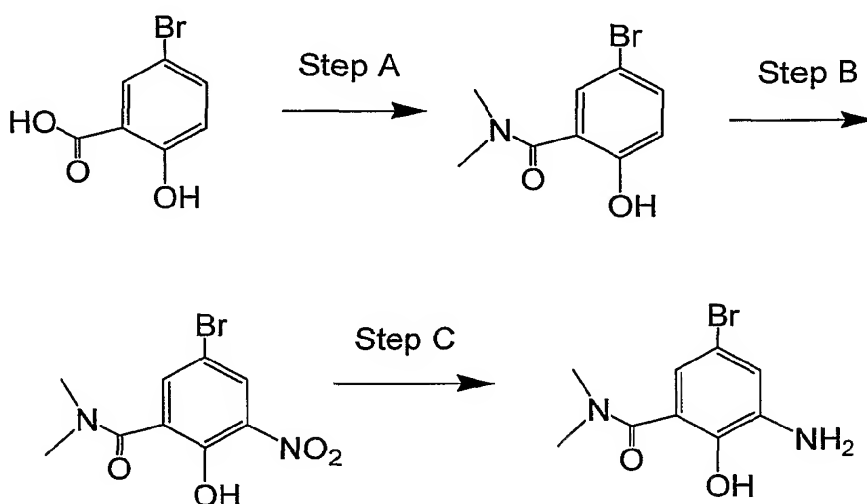
- 10 The product from step A above (1.5 g) was combined with iodine (2.1 g), NaHCO₃ (1.1 g), EtOH (40 mL) and water (10 mL) and stirred overnight. Filtration, concentration of the filtrate, re-dissolution in CH₂Cl₂ and washing with 1M HCl (aq) gave an organic solution which was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification by flash column chromatography (silica gel, 0.5-
15 0.7% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) gave the product (0.5 g, 20%, MH⁺ = 306).

Step C

- Nitric acid (3.8 mL) in AcOH (10 mL) was added to the product from Step B above (0.8 g) and the mixture was stirred for 40 min. The mixture was diluted with
20 water and extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product as an orange solid (0.8 g, 92%, MH⁺ = 351).

Step D

A mixture of the product from step C above (800 mg), 10% Pd/C (100 mg), and EtOH/MeOH (40 mL) was stirred in a parr shaker under hydrogen (45 psi) for 1.5 hr. Filtration through celite and concentration *in vacuo* afforded the title product after
5 purification by preparative plate chromatography (Silica, 10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, saturated with NH₄OH) to give the product (92 mg, 22%, MH⁺ = 195).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.1Step A

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step A except using dimethylamine (2M in THF, 23 ml) and 5-bromosalicylic acid (5g), the desired
15 compound was prepared (4.2g, 75%, MH⁺=244).

Step B

Nitric acid (10ml) in AcOH (100ml) was added to the product from Step A above (2g) and the mixture was stirred for 20 min. The mixture was diluted with water
20 and extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product as a yellow solid (1.9g, 80%, MH⁺=289).

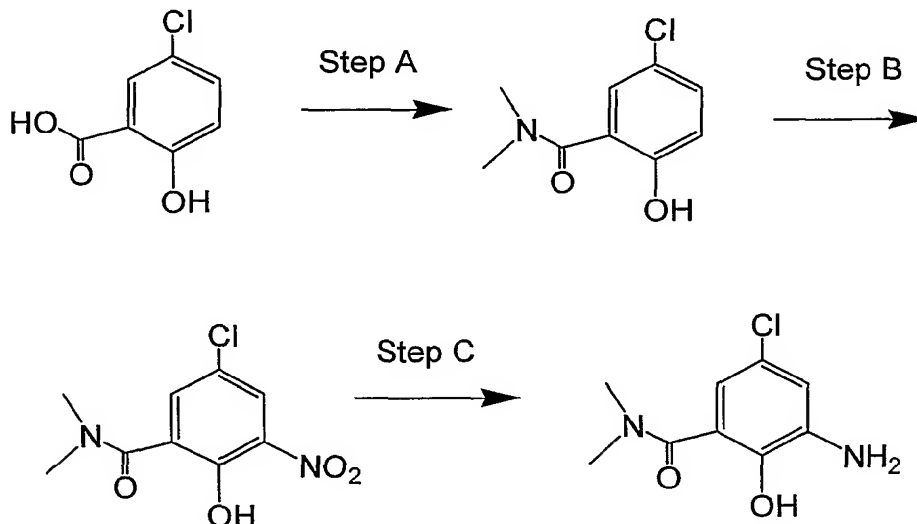
Step C

The product from Step B above (1.9g) was partially dissolved in EtOH(50ml).
25 Conc HCl in EtOH (5ml in 40ml), followed by SnCl₂·2H₂O (5.74g) was added and stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*,

113

diluted with CH_2Cl_2 and washed with NaHCO_3 , dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product as a solid (185mg, 9%, $\text{MH}^+=259$).

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.2Step A

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step A, except using dimethylamine (2M in THF, 29 ml) and 5-chlorosalicylic acid (5g), the desired compound was prepared (4.5g, 78%, $\text{MH}^+=200$).

Step B

Nitric acid (10ml) in AcOH (100ml) was added to the product from Step A above (2g) and the mixture was stirred for 20 min. The mixture was diluted with water and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product as a solid (2.2g, 88%, $\text{MH}^+=245$).

Step C

The product from Step B above (2.2g) was partially dissolved in EtOH(50ml). Conc HCl in EtOH (5ml in 40ml), followed by $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (7.01g) was added and stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with CH_2Cl_2 and neutralized with NaOH. The entire emulsion was filtered though celite, the layers were separated and the organic layer was dried over

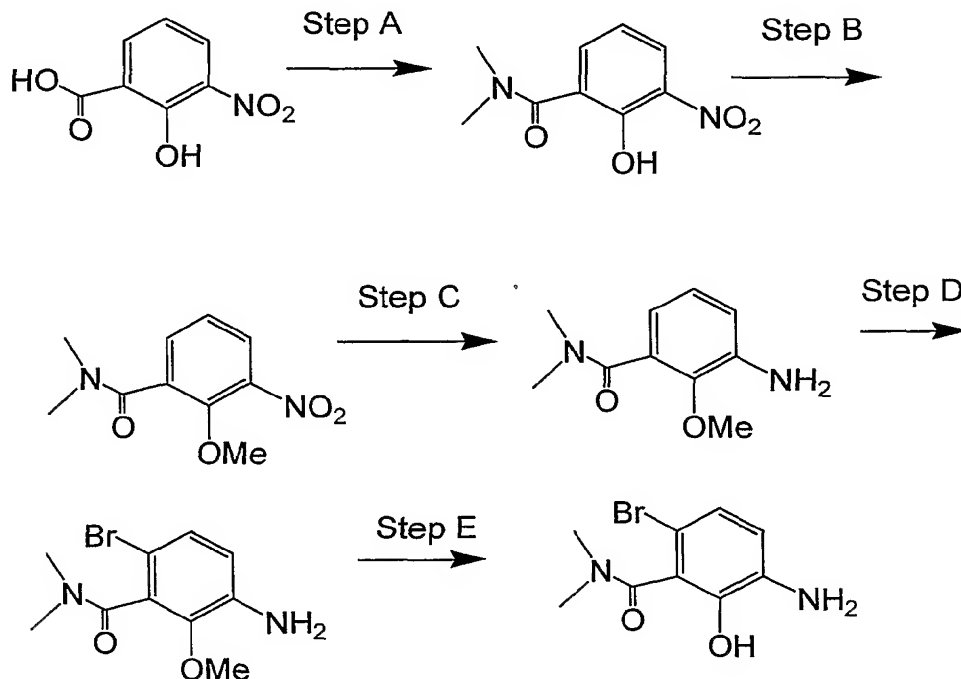
114

anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and
(540mg, 22%, $\text{MH}^+=215$).

concentrated *in vacuo* to give a solid

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.3

5



Step A

10 3-Nitrosalicylic acid (10g), PyBroP (20.52g), and DIEA (28ml) in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (200ml) were combined and stirred at room temperature for 10 min. Dimethylamine (2M in THF, 55ml) was added and let the reaction stir over the weekend. The mixture was extracted with 1N NaOH (aq) and the organic phase was discarded. The aqueous phase was acidified with 1N HCl (aq), extracted with CH_2Cl_2 ,
15 dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The oil was taken up in ether and a solid crashed out, triterated in ether to give 4.45g of a solid (39%, $\text{MH}^+=211$).

Step B

20 The product from Step A (2.99g), K_2CO_3 (9.82g), and iodomethane (8.84ml) were combined in acetone and heated to reflux overnight. The reaction was filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The oil was taken up in CH_2Cl_2 and washed with 1N

115

NaOH, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 3.3g of an oil (99%, $\text{MH}^+=225$).

Step C

- 5 The crude product from Step B (3.3g) was stirred with 10% Pd/C (350mg) in EtOH (50ml) under a hydrogen gas atmosphere at 20psi overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 2.34 g of a solid (85%, $\text{MH}^+=195$).

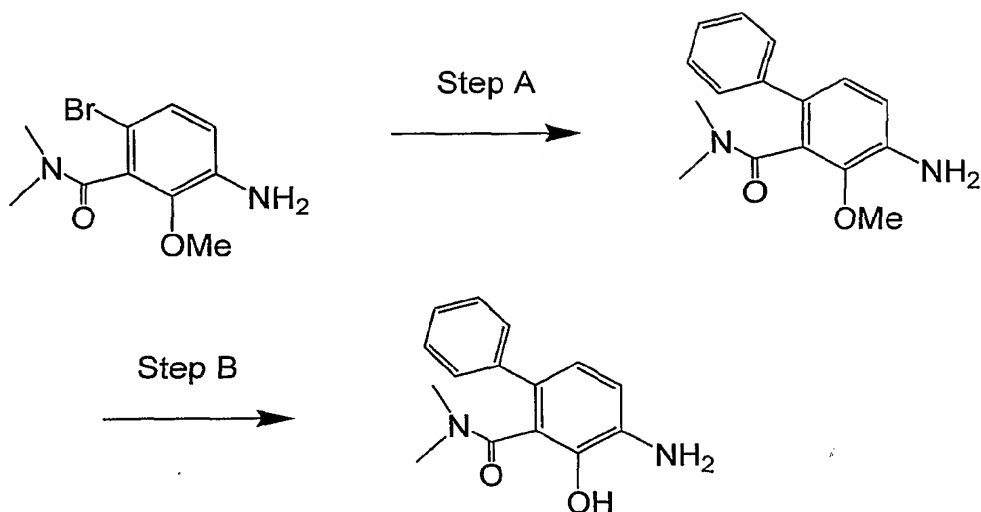
Step D

- 10 The product from Step C (469mg) was dissolved in AcOH (6ml). 1.95M Br_2 in AcOH (1.23ml) was added dropwise to the reaction and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. 50% NaOH was added to the reaction at 0°C and the mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and
15 concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude mixture was purified by preparative plate chromatography (Silica, 5% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to give the desired product (298mg, 23%, $\text{MH}^+=273$).

Step E

- 20 BBr_3 (2.14ml, 1M in CH_2Cl_2) was added to a CH_2Cl_2 solution (8ml) of the product from Step D above (290mg) and stirred overnight. A solid formed and was filtered, taken up in MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2 and purified by preparative plate chromatography (Silica, 5% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to give the desired product (137mg, 49%, $\text{MH}^+=259$).

116

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.4Step A

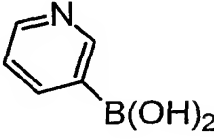
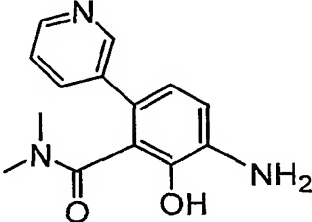
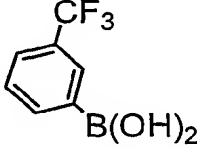
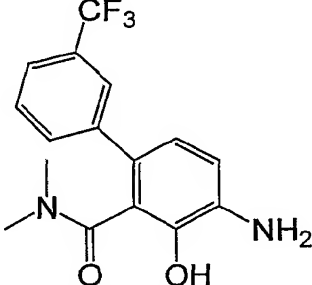
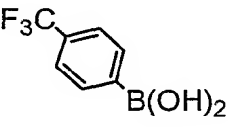
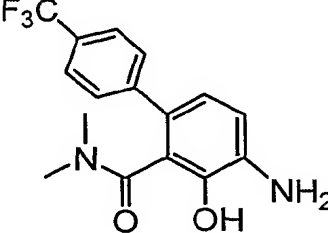
To the product from Preparative Example 13.3 Step D (200mg) was added phenylboronic acid (98mg), $\text{PdCl}_2(\text{PPh}_3)_2$ (51mg), and Na_2CO_3 (155mg) in THF/ H_2O (4ml/1ml). The solution was heated at 80°C overnight. EtOAc was added to reaction and washed with 1N NaOH. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude mixture was purified by preparative plate chromatography (5% MeOH/ CH_2Cl_2) to give 128mg of an oil (65%, $\text{MH}^+=271$).

Step B

Following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 13.3 Step E and using the product from Step A above, the desired compound was prepared (0.1 g, 69%, $\text{MH}^+=257.1$).

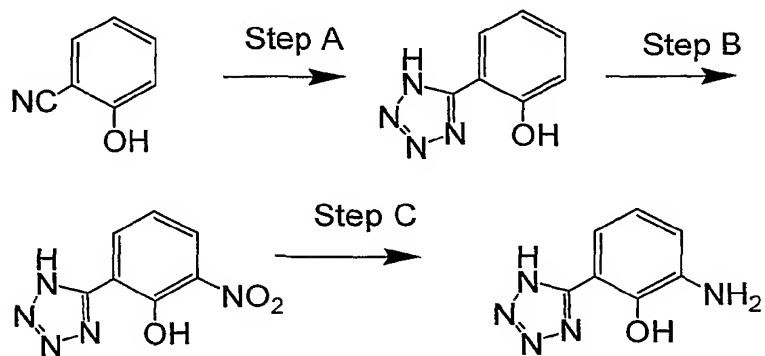
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.5-13.7

Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 13.4 but using the boronic acid from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the amine products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Boronic Acid	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
13.5			1. 15% 2. 258
13.6			1. 32% 2. 325
13.7			1. 18% 2. 325

Preparative Example 13.8

5



Step A

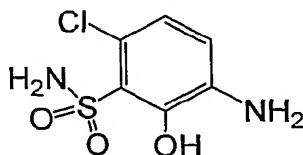
2-Cyanophenol (500mg), sodium azide (819mg), and triethylamine hydrochloride (1.73g) were combined in anhydrous toluene and heated to 99°C overnight. After the reaction cooled down, product was extracted with H₂O. Aqueous layer was acidified with conc. HCl dropwise giving a precipitate, which was filtered to give the product (597mg, 87%, MH+=163).

Step B

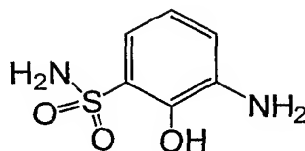
Nitric acid (0.034ml) in AcOH (5ml) was added to the product from Step A above (100mg) in AcOH and the mixture was allowed to stir for 1hr. CH₂Cl₂ and H₂O were added to reaction. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil. Trituration in ether gave the product as a solid (12mg, 9%, MH+=208).

Step C

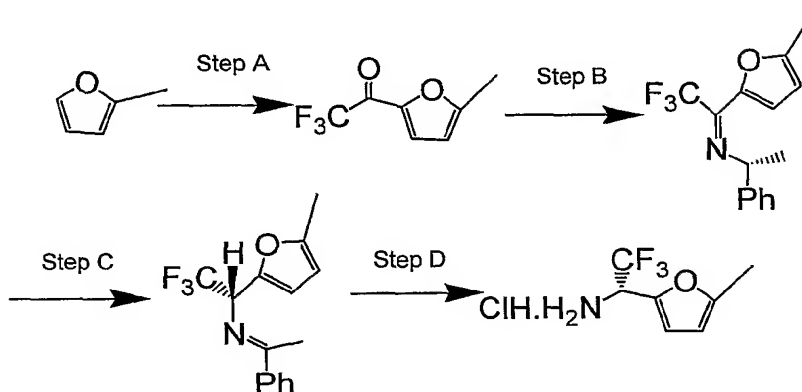
The product from step C (56mg) was stirred with 10% Pd/C (20mg) in EtOH/MeOH (15ml) under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 29mg of a solid (62%, MH+=178).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.9

The amine was prepared following the procedure disclosed in WO Patent Application 01/68570.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.10

The amine was prepared following the procedure disclosed in WO Patent Application 01/68570.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.11Step A

Following the procedure described in Preparative Example 88.2, Step A, the ketone was prepared (6.4g, 36%).

Step B

To a solution of ketone (1g) and 2-*R*-methylbenzylamine (0.73ml) in anhydrous toluene (20ml) was added 1N TiCl_4 in toluene (3ml) at room temperature for 1.5hrs. The precipitate was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc, 18/1) to give 800mg of product (71%).

Step C

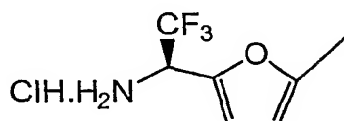
The imine from above (760mg) and DBU (800ul) were stirred without solvent for 4hr. The crude reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc, 8/1) to give 600mg of product (79%).

120

Step D

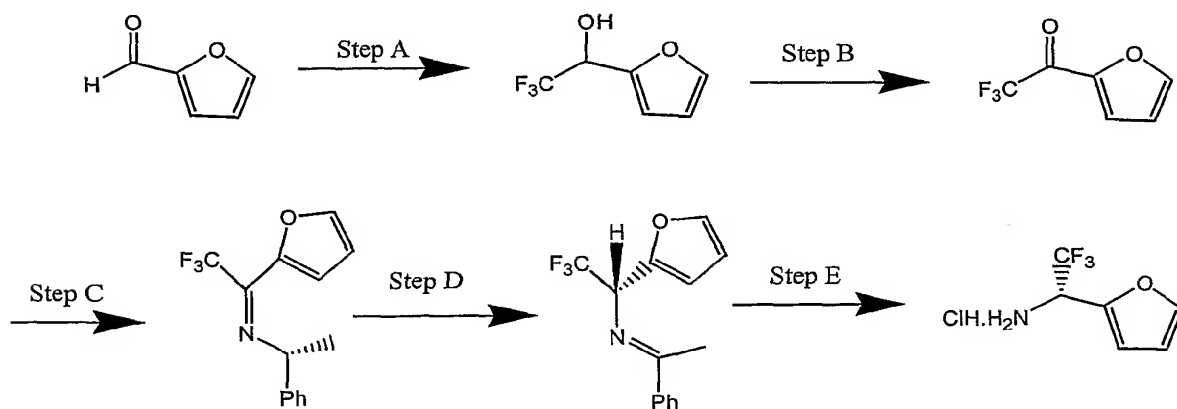
The imine from Step C (560mg) was dissolved in ether (8ml). 3N HCl (5ml) added and let stir at room temperature overnight. The ether layer was separated and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 400mg of the amine hydrochloride product (93%).

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.12

10

The title compound was prepared similarly as in Preparative Example 13.11, but using the 2-*S*-methylbenzylamine instead of 2-*R*-methylbenzylamine (69%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.13

15

Step A

At room temperature, CsF (60mg) was added to a mixture of furfuraldehyde (1.3ml) and TMS-CF₃ (2.5g) and stirred at room temperature (24 h) and refluxed for another 12h. 3N HCl (40ml) was added and after 4hr, the mixture was extracted with ether, washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product (2.6g, 100%).

20

Step B

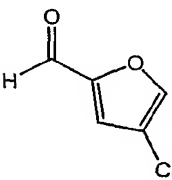
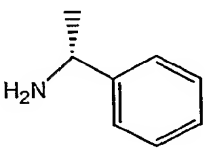
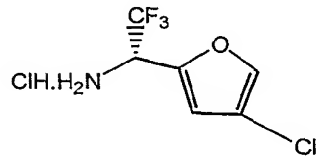
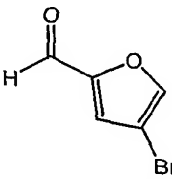
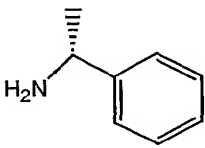
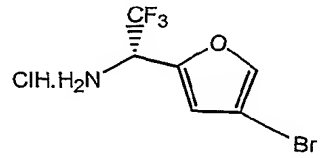
To a solution of alcohol from above (2.6g) in CH_2Cl_2 at room temperature was added Dess-Martin reagent (10g) portionwise and 1 drop of water. After stirring for 3hr at room temperature, 10% $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ (60ml) was added and after stirring overnight, the solid was filtered off and the filtrate was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Ether/hexane (1:2; 30ml) was added to the residue, filtered, and filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product (2g, 78%).

Step C

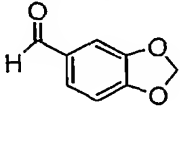
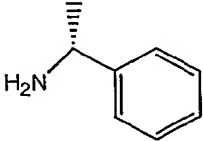
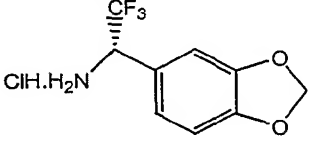
Following the procedures described in Preparative Example 13.11, Steps B, C and D, the amine salt was prepared.

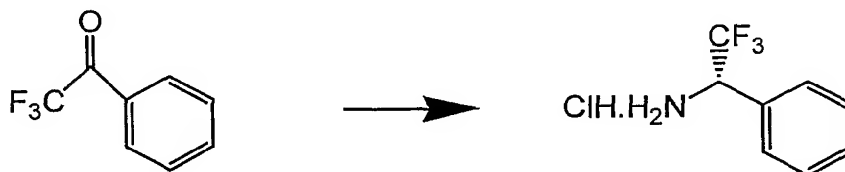
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 13.15-13.17

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.13, but using the prepared or commercially available aldehydes, the optically pure amine products in the Table below were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Amine	Product	Yield (%)
13.15				20%
13.16				31%

122

13.17				66%
-------	---	---	--	-----

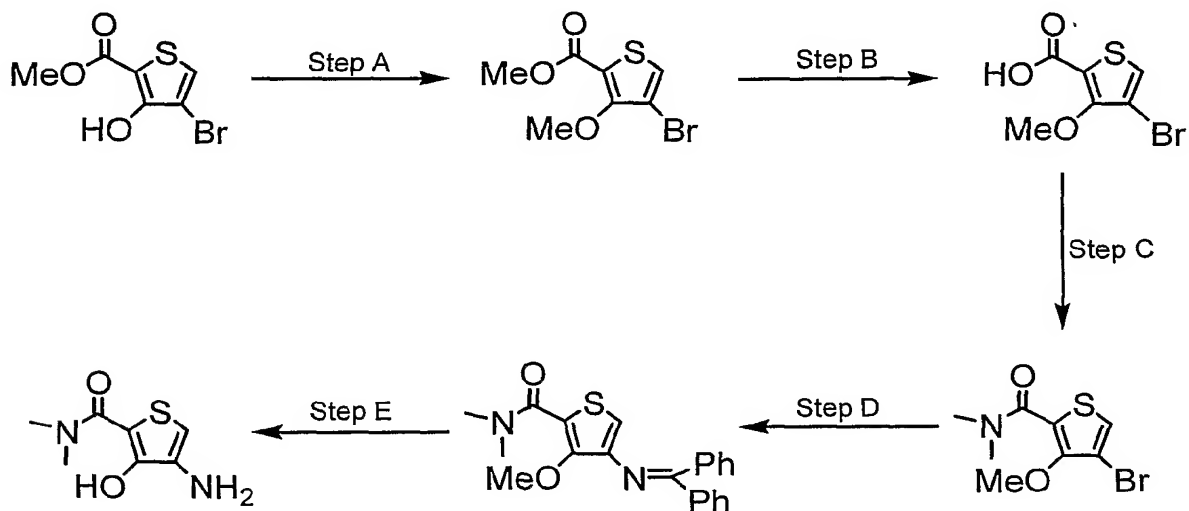
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.18

5

The title compound was prepared from trifluorophenylketone according to the procedures described in Preparative Example 13.11, Steps B, C, and D (68%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.19

10

Step A

15

Methyl-3-hydroxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxylate (10.0 g, 42.2 mmol) was dissolved in 250 mL of acetone. Potassium carbonate (30.0 g, 217.4 mmol) was added followed by a solution of iodomethane (14.5 mL, 233.0 mmol). The mixture was heated to reflux and continued for 6 h. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was filtered, the solid material was rinsed with acetone (~200 mL). The filtrate

123

and rinsing were concentrated under reduced pressure to a solid, further dried on high vacuum, yielding 13.7 g (100%) of methyl-3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxylate ($MH^+ = 251.0$).

5 Step B

Methyl-3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxylate (13.7 g), available from step A, was dissolved in 75 mL of THF, and added with a 1.0 M sodium hydroxide aqueous solution (65 mL, 65.0 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 h. A 1.0 M hydrogen chloride aqueous solution was added dropwise to the mixture until pH was approximately 2. The acidic mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL x 2, 50 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with brine (40 mL), dried with Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated under reduced pressure to a solid, 10.0 g (100%, over two steps) of 3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxylic acid ($MH^+ = 237.0$).

15

Step C

To a stirred solution of 3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxylic acid (6.5 g, 27.4 mmol) in 140 mL of CH_2Cl_2 , obtained from step B, was added bromotripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBrop, 12.8 g, 27.5 mmol), a 2.0 M solution of dimethyl amine in THF (34.5 mL, 69.0 mmol), and diisopropylethyl amine (12.0 mL, 68.7 mmol). After 3 d, the mixture was diluted with 100 mL of CH_2Cl_2 , and washed with a 1.0 M sodium hydroxide aqueous solution (30 mL x 3) and brine (30 mL). The organic solution was dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated to an oil. This crude oil product was purified by flash column chromatography, eluting with CH_2Cl_2 -hexanes (1:1, v/v). Removal of solvents afforded a solid, further dried on high vacuum, yielding 6.76 g (93 %) of *N, N'*-dimethyl-3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxamide ($MH^+ = 265.0$, $M+2 = 266.1$).

20

Step D

An oven dried three-neck round bottom flask was equipped with a refluxing condenser, charged sequentially with palladium acetate (95 mg, 0.42 mmol), (*R*)-BINAP (353 mg, 0.57 mmol), cesium carbonate (9.2 g, 28.33 mmol), and *N, N'*-dimethyl-3-methoxy-4-bromo-2-thiophenecarboxamide (3.74 g, 14.2 mmol, from step C). The solid mixture was flushed with nitrogen. Toluene (95 mL) was added to the

30

124

solid mixture followed by benzophenone imine (3.6 mL, 21.5 mmol). The mixture was heated to reflux and continued for 10 h. A second batch of palladium acetate (95 mg, 0.42 mmol) and (*R*)-BINAP (353 mg, 0.57 mmol) in 5 mL of toluene was added. Refluxing was continued for 14 h. The third batch of palladium acetate (30 mg, 0.13 mmol) and (*R*)-BINAP (88 mg, 0.14 mmol) was added, and reaction continued at 110°C for 24 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, diluted with ether (50 mL), filtered through a layer of Celite, rinsing with ether. The filtrate and rinsing were concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil, which was purified twice by flash column chromatography using CH₂Cl₂ and CH₂Cl₂-MeOH (200:1) as eluents. Removal of solvents afforded 4.1 g (79 %) of the amido-thiophene diphenylimine product as a solid (MH⁺ = 365.1).

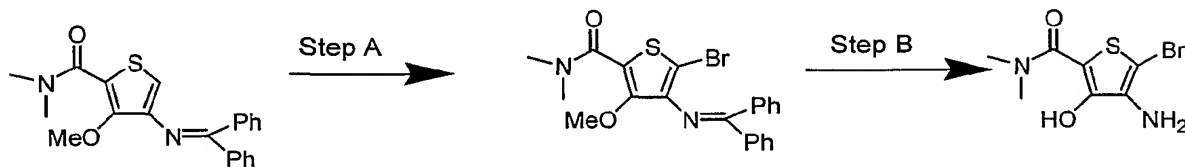
Step E

To a stirred solution of thiophene imine (5.09 g, 13.97 mmol), obtained from step D, in 140 mL of CH₂Cl₂ at -78°C was added dropwise a 1.0 M solution of boron tribromide in CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was stirred for 3 h while the temperature of the cooling bath was increased slowly from -78°C to -15°C. 100 mL of H₂O was added, the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min, then the two layers were separated. The organic layer (as A) was extracted with H₂O (30 mL x 2). The aqueous layer and aqueous extracts were combined, washed with CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL), and adjusted to pH ~ 8 using a saturated NaHCO₃ aqueous solution. The neutralized aqueous solution was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (100 mL x 3), the extracts were washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated under reduced pressure to a light yellow solid, 1.49 g of *N, N'*-dimethyl-3-hydroxy-4-amino-2-thiophenecarboxamide (first crop). The previous separated organic layer A and organic washing were combined, stirred with 30 mL of a 1.0 M HCl aqueous solution for 1 h. The two layers were separated, the aqueous layer was washed with CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL) and adjusted to pH ~8 using a saturated NaHCO₃ aqueous solution, and the separated organic layer and organic washing were combined as organic layer B. The neutralized aqueous solution was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (30 mL x 4), the extracts were washed with brine, dried by Na₂SO₄, and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.48g of a solid as the second crop of the titled product. Organic layer B from above was washed with brine, and concentrated to an oil, which was separated by preparative TLC (CH₂Cl₂-MeOH = 50:1) to afford 0.45 g of a solid as the third crop of the titled product. The

125

overall yield of the product, *N, N'*-dimethyl-3-hydroxy-4-amino-2-thiophenecarboxamide, is 2.32 g (89%) ($MH^+ = 187.0$).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.20



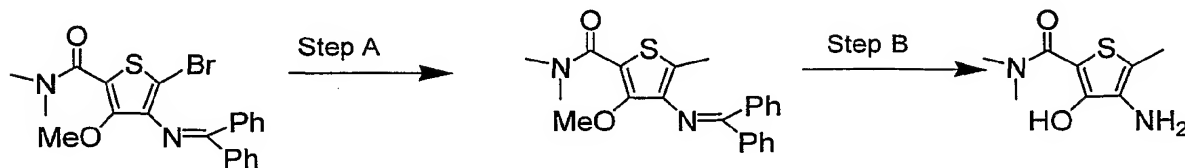
Step A

To the product from Preparative Example 13.19 Step D (1.56g) in CH_2Cl_2 (55ml) was added potassium carbonate (1.8g) followed by dropwise addition of bromine (0.45ml). After 5hr of mixing, water (100ml) was added to the reaction and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , which was then washed with brine, saturated sodium bicarbonate, and brine again. The organic layer was dried with Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified via flash column chromatography (CH_2Cl_2) to yield 1.6g of product (83%).

Step B

The product from above was reacted in the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19 Step C to give the amine.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.21



Step A

To the product from Preparative Example 13.20, Step A (300mg) in THF (7ml) at $-78^\circ C$ was added a solution of n-BuLi (1.6M in hexanes, 0.54ml). After 1hr, iodomethane (0.42ml) was added dropwise. After 3 hrs of stirring at $-78^\circ C$, the

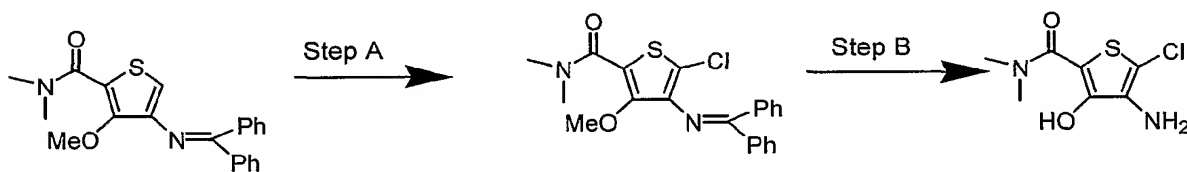
126

reaction was warmed to room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride and water were added to the reaction and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative plate chromatography (CH_2Cl_2 -MeOH = 70:1 to 50:1) to afford the product (111mg, 43%).

Step B

The product from above was reacted in the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step E to give the amine.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.22

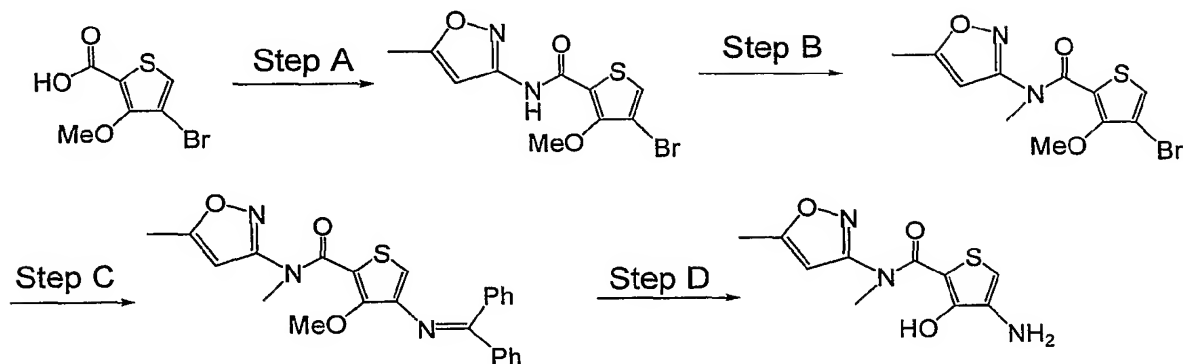


Step A

To the product from Preparative Example 13.19 (400mg), Step D in CH_2Cl_2 -pyridine (14ml) was added N-chlorosuccinimide (220mg). The mixture was stirred for 5hr and then diluted with CH_2Cl_2 and washed with water, saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified via preparative plate chromatography (CH_2Cl_2 -MeOH = 50:1) to give 180mg of product (64%).

Step B

The product from above (274mg) was reacted in the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step E to give the amine (89mg, 58%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.23

5

Step A

To a stirred solution of acid (630mg) from Preparative Example 13.19, Step B in CH_2Cl_2 (25ml) was added oxalyl chloride (235ul) followed by a catalytic amount of DMF (10ul). The mixture was stirred for 1hr, then potassium carbonate (1.8g) was added followed by 3-amino-5-methylisoxazole (443mg). The reaction stirred overnight and was quenched with water (25ml). Layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative plate chromatography (CH_2Cl_2) to afford the product (580mg, 78%, $\text{MH}^+=317,319$).

15

Step B

The acid from the above (750mg) step was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.3, Step B to yield 625mg of product (80%, $\text{MH}^+=331$).

20

Step C

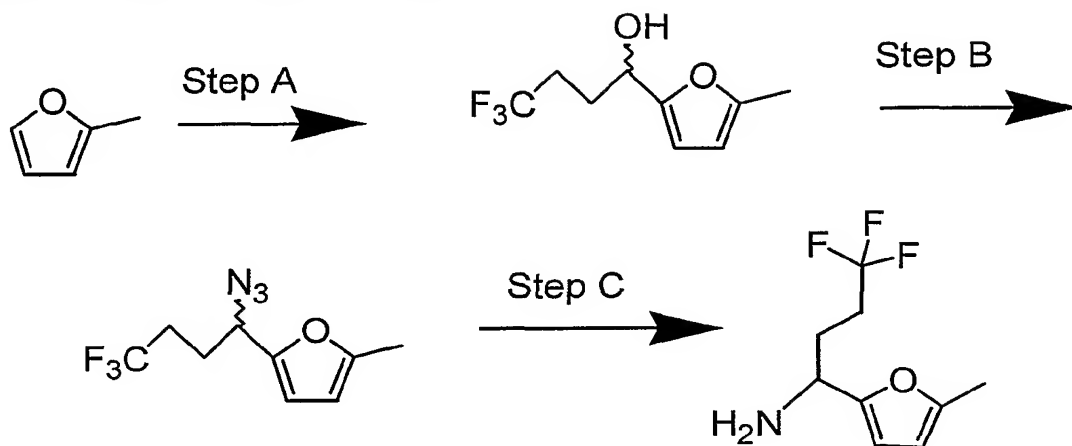
The product from above was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step D to yield 365mg of product (53%)

Step D

25

The product from above was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step E to give the amine product ($\text{MH}^+=254$).

128

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.25Step A

5 To a solution of 2-methylfuran (1g) in ether (30ml) was added n-BuLi (5.32ml) at -78°C . The reaction was warmed to room temperature and then refluxed at 38°C for 1hr. The reaction was cooled back down to -78°C where the furyl lithium was quenched with trifluorobutylaldehyde and let stir at room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride added and extracted with ether. Purified via flash
10 column chromatography to yield pure product (2g, 80%)

Step B

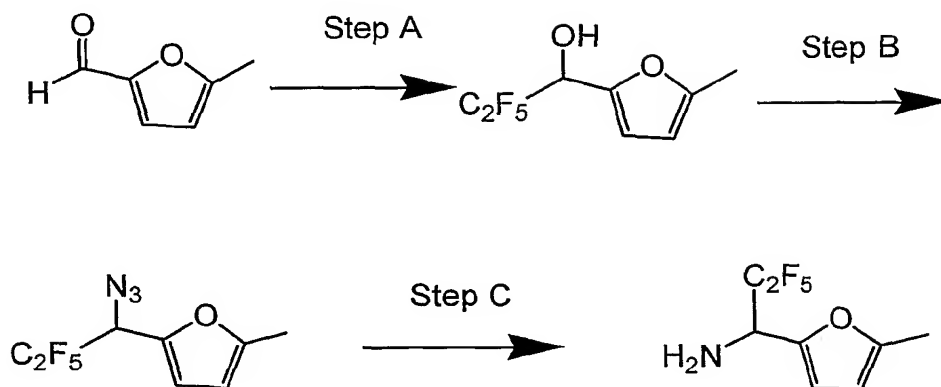
The azide was prepared using the procedure from Preparative Example 75.75, Step B and the alcohol (1g) from above and carried on crude to Step C below.

15

Step C

The amine was prepared using the procedure from Preparative Example 75.75, Step C to yield 400mg of an oil (53%).

129

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.26Step A

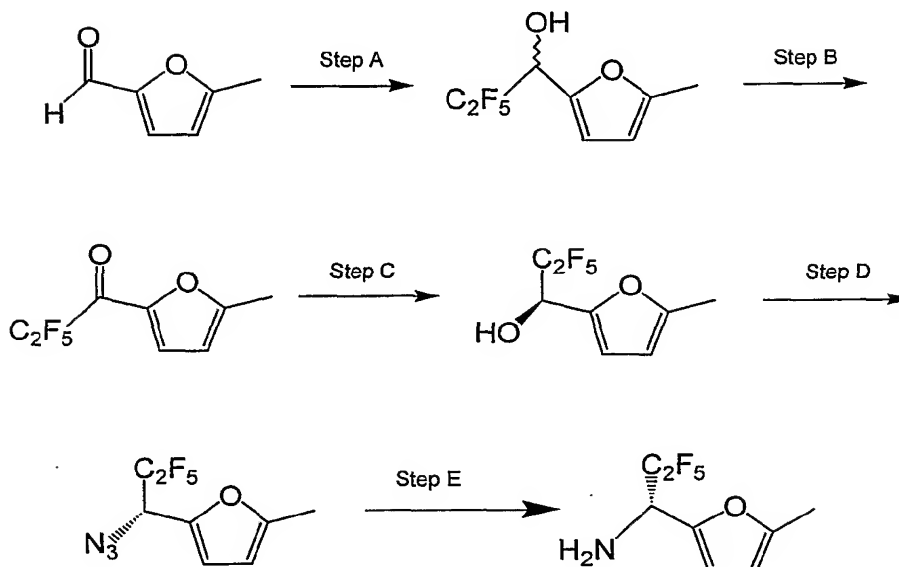
5 Perfluoroiodide (3.6ml) was condensed at -78°C . Ether (125ml) was added followed by the methyllithium.lithiumbromide complex (1.5M in ether, 18.4ml). After 15min, a solution of 5-methylfuraldehyde (2.5ml) in ether was added dropwise. The reaction was warmed to -45°C and let stir for 2hr. Saturated ammonium chloride (30ml) and water (30ml) were added and let stir at room temperature for 1hr. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was washed with brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 5.86g of product (100%).

Step B

15 The alcohol from above was reacted to form the azide using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 75.75 Step B.

Step C

20 The azide from above was reacted to form the racemic amine using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 75.75 Step C.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.275 Step A

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.26, Step A, the alcohol was prepared (100%).

10 Step B

To a solution of the alcohol (500mg) from step A above in CH_2Cl_2 (20ml) was added N-methyl-morpholine monohydrate (575mg) and a catalytic amount of tetrapropyl ammonium perruthenate (76mg). After 3hr, the mixture was diluted with hexane (10ml) and filtered through a silica pad, rinsing with hexane: CH_2Cl_2 (200ml). The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 350mg of product (70.7%)

15 Step C

The ketone (1.19g) from Step B was dissolved in THF (9.5ml) and cooled to 0 °C. A solution of S-methyl oxazaborolidine (1M in toluene, 1ml) followed by a solution of borane complexed with dimethylsulfide (9.5ml, 2M in THF) was added to the solution. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30min and continued at room temperature for 5hr. The mixture was cooled back down to 0 °C and methanol (15ml) was added dropwise to the mixture. After 30min, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oily residue.

The residue was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 and washed with 1N HCl, water, and brine. Dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified via flash column chromatography (Hex/ CH_2Cl_2 , 1:1) to afford 1.14g of an oil (67%).

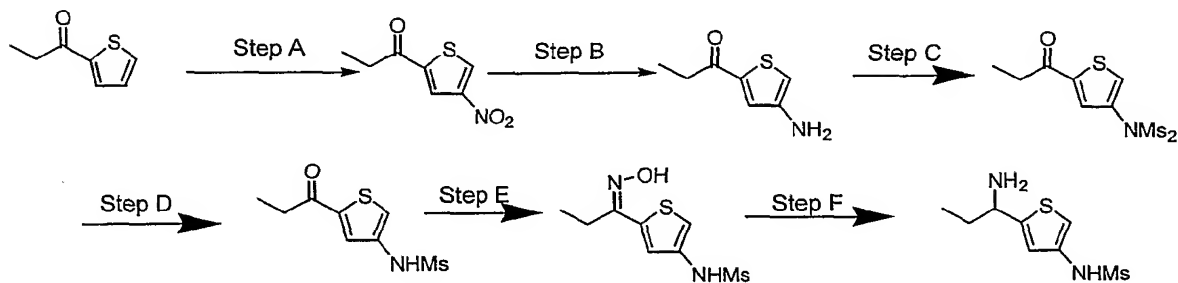
Step D

The alcohol (1.14g) from above was reacted to form the azide using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 75.75 Step B.

Step E

The azide (1.11g) from above was stirred with 10% Pd/C (280mg) in EtOH (40ml) under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction was filtered through celite, the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 700mg of product (70%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 13.28



Step A

To a stirred solution of 1-(2-thienyl)-1-propanone (3g) in acetic anhydride (6ml) at 0°C was added dropwise a solution of fuming nitric acid in acetic acid (2ml in 10ml). After 30min, the reaction was warmed to room temperature and let stir for 5hrs where a solid precipitated out. Ice was added to the reaction and the solid was filtered. The solid was purified by flash column chromatography (Hex/ CH₂Cl₂, 3:1 and 2:1) to yield 800mg of desired product (20%).

Step B

The above nitro-thiophene compound (278mg) was reduced using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step B to give 54mg of product (23%).

Step C

The above amine (395mg), TEA (1ml) and methanesulfonylchloride (0.5ml) were combined in CH₂Cl₂ (35ml) and stirred at room temperature for 1hr. The reaction was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate (15ml). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford product (854mg, 100%).

Step D

To the above product (854mg) in THF (25ml) was added dropwise a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1M in THF, 2.8ml). The mixture was stirred overnight, then diluted with CH₂Cl₂ (30ml), washed with ammonium chloride and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford product (2.36g, >100%).

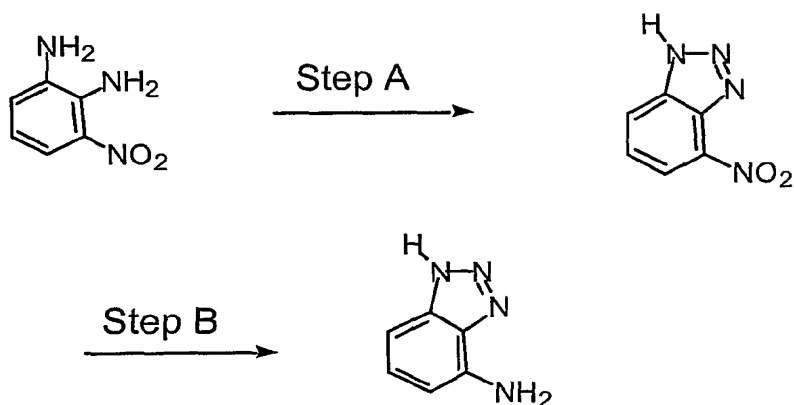
Step E

The ketone (2.36g) above was reacted via the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 88.2, Step B to yield 547mg of product (86.6%).

Step F

To the product from step E (310mg) in dimethoxyethane (12ml) was added dropwise a solution of LAH (1M in ether, 3.8ml). The mixture was heated to reflux overnight. The reaction was cooled to room temperature, SiO₂ was added as well as water (1ml) dropwise and let stir for 15min. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified by preparative plate chromatography (MeOH/ CH₂Cl₂, 15:1) to give the amine product (40mg, 14%).

133

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 14

5

Step A

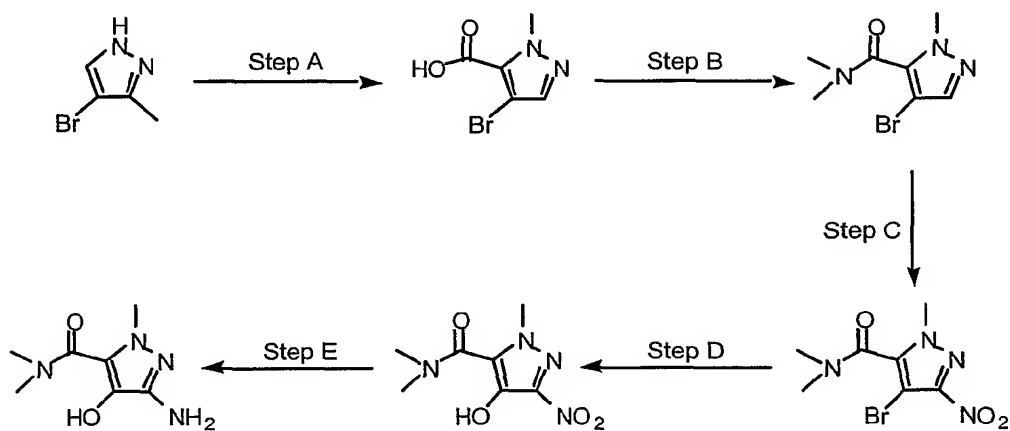
3-Nitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (10 g), sodium nitrite (5.4 g) and acetic acid (20 mL) were heated at 60°C overnight, then concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc. The product precipitated from the organic phase (5.7 g) as a solid and used directly in step B.

10

Step B

The product from Step A above (2.8 g) was stirred with 10% Pd/C (0.3 g) in MeOH (75 mL) under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*, to give the product (2.2 g, MH⁺=135).

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 155 Step A

N-methyl-4-bromopyrazole-3-carboxylic acid was prepared according to known methods, see: Yu. A. M.; Andreeva, M. A.; Perevalov, V. P.; Stepanov, V. I.; Dubrovskaya, V. A.; and Seraya, V. I. in *Zh. Obs. Khim.* (Journal of General Chemistry of the USSR) 1982, 52, 2592, and refs cited therein.

10

Step B

To a solution of N-methyl-4-bromopyrazole-3-carboxylic acid (2.0 g), available from step A, in 65 mL of anhydrous DMF was added bromotripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBrop, 4.60 g), dimethyl amine (10 mL, 2.0 M in THF) and
 15 diisopropylethyl amine (5.2 mL) at 25 °C. The mixture was stirred for 26 h, and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oily residue. This residue was treated with a 1.0 M NaOH aqueous solution, and extracted with ethyl acetate (50 mL x 4). The organic extracts were combined, washed with brine, and dried with anhydrous Na₂SO₄. Removal of solvents yielded an oil, which was purified by preparative thin
 20 layer chromatography, eluting with CH₂Cl₂-MeOH (20:1), to give 1.09 g of the amide product (48%, MH⁺ = 232.0).

Step C

To a solution of the amide (0.67 g), obtained from step B, in 8 mL of
 25 concentrated sulfuric acid at 0 °C was added potassium nitrate (1.16 g) in small portions. The cooling bath was removed and the mixture was heated at 110 °C for 6

135

h. After cooling to 25 °C, the mixture was poured into 80 mL of H₂O, and an additional 20 mL of H₂O was used as a rinse. The aqueous mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (100 mL x 4). The combined extracts were washed with brine (50 mL), sat. NaHCO₃ aqueous solution (50 mL), brine (50 mL), and dried with Na₂SO₄.

Evaporation of solvent gave an oil, which solidified on standing. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography, eluting with CH₂Cl₂-MeOH (1:0, 50:1 and 40:1). Removal of solvents afforded 0.521 g (65%) of the product as a solid (MH⁺ = 277.1)

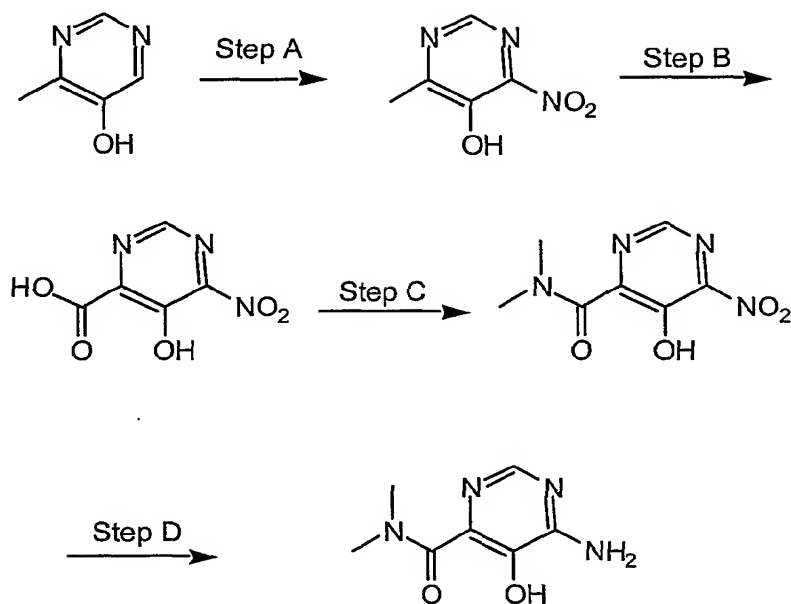
Step D

The product (61 mg) obtained from step C was dissolved in 3 mL of THF. To this solution at -78 °C was added dropwise along the inside wall of the flask a 1.6 M solution of *n*-butyl lithium in hexane. After 45 min, a solution of methyl borate (0.1 mL) in THF (1.0 mL) was added. After 1.5 h, a solution of acetic acid in THF (0.25 mL, 1:10 v/v) was added to the cold mixture. Stirring was continued for 10 min, and a 30 wt % aqueous hydrogen peroxide solution (0.1 mL) was added. An additional portion of hydrogen peroxide aqueous solution (0.05 mL) was added 20 min later. The cooling bath was removed, and the mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 36 h. The mixture was poured into 30 mL of H₂O, and the aqueous mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (30 mL x 4). The extracts were combined, washed with brine (10 mL), 5% NaHCO₃ aqueous solution (10 mL) and brine (10 mL). The organic layer was dried with Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure to a residue, which was then purified by preparative thin layer chromatography eluting with CH₂Cl₂-MeOH (20:1) to give the hydroxylated product (5 mg, 10%, MH⁺ = 215.3).

Step E

By treating the hydroxylated product of Step E with H₂ under the conditions of 10% palladium on carbon in ethanol, one would obtain the desired hydroxyl-amino compound.

136

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 165 Step A

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 13, Step C except using the known compound, 4-methyl-pyrimidin-5-ol, the product can be prepared.

Step B

10 Following a similar oxidation procedure used in Preparative Example 15, Step A except using the compound from Step A above, the product can be prepared.

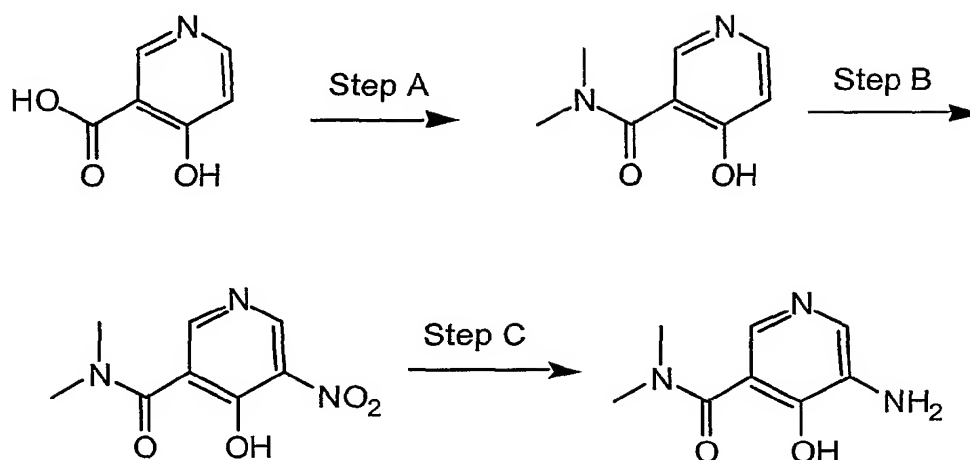
Step C

15 Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 11, Step A except using the compound from Step B above, the product can be prepared.

Step D

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 12, Step F except using the compound from Step C above, the product can be prepared.

137

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 17

5

Step A

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 11, Step A except using the known 4-hydroxynicotinic acid, the product can be prepared.

10

Step B

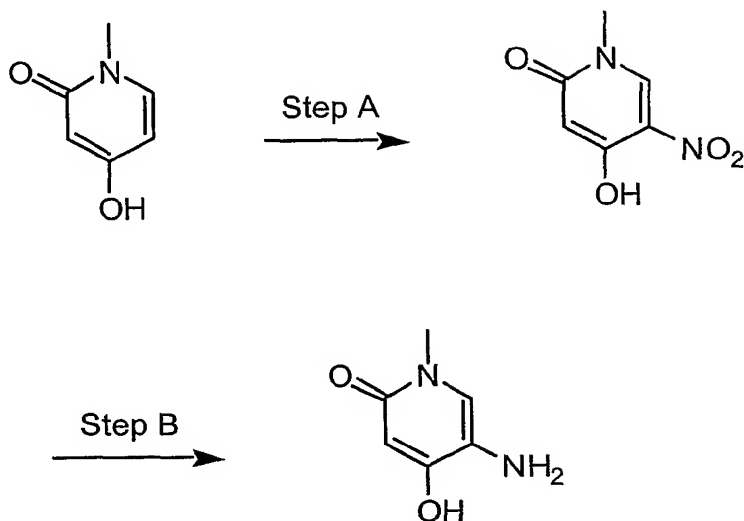
Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 13, Step C except using the compound from Step A above, the product can be prepared.

Step C

15

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 12, Step F except using the compound from Step C above, the product can be prepared.

138

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 18

5

Step A

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 13, Step C except using the compound from Step A above, the product can be prepared.

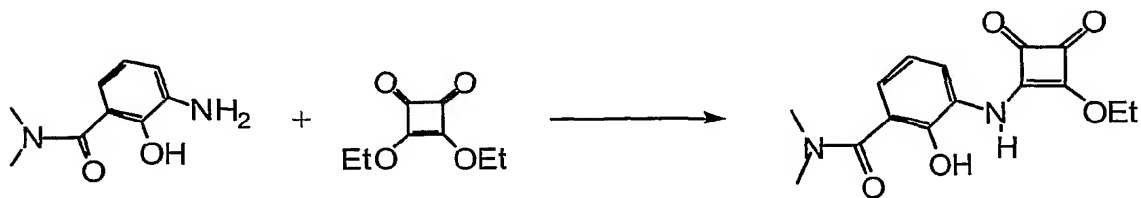
10

Step B

Stirring the compound from Step A above, a suitable Pt or Pd catalyst and EtOH under hydrogen atmosphere (1-4 atm) the product can be prepared.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 19

15



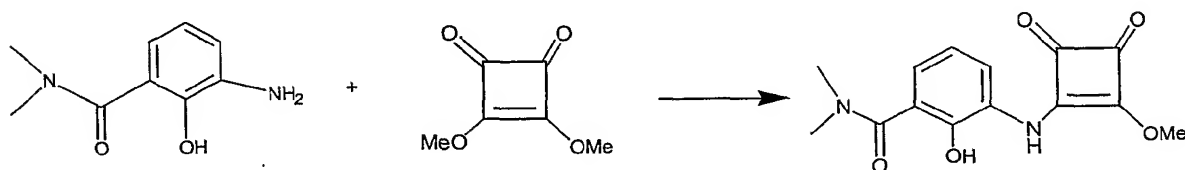
20

The product from Preparative Example 3 (14.6 g) dissolved in absolute EtOH (100 mL) was added dropwise over 4 hours to a stirred ethanolic (100 mL) solution of diethylsquarate (19 mL, 128 mmol). After 5 days, the reaction mixture was

139

concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 0-5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) gave the product (65%, MH⁺ = 305, mp = 178.6°C).

5

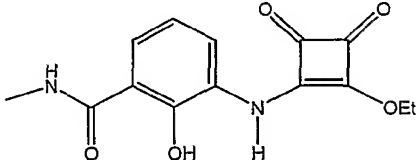
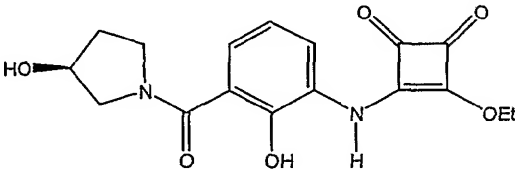
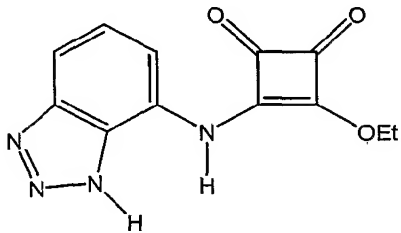
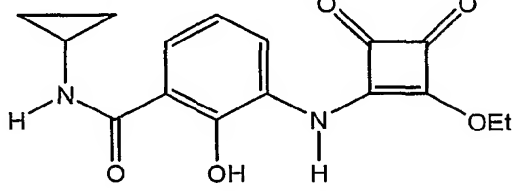
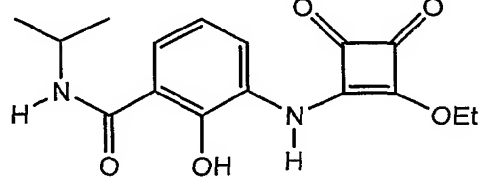
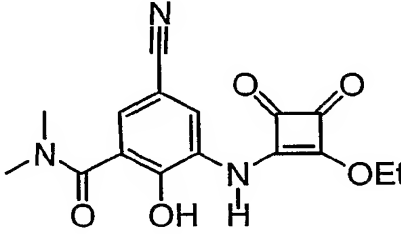
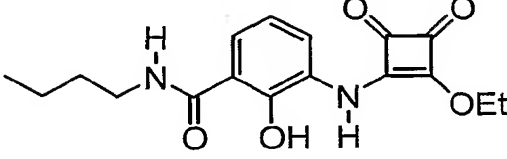
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 19.1

The amine from Preparative Example 3 (5g) and dimethylsquarate (3.95g) in MeOH were stirred overnight. The precipitated product was filtered to give 6.32g of solid (78%, MH⁺=291.1)

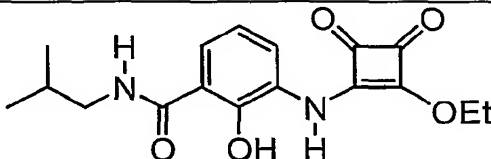
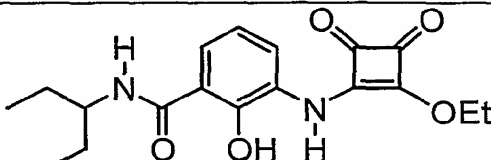
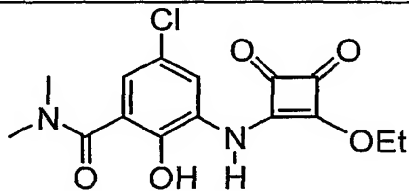
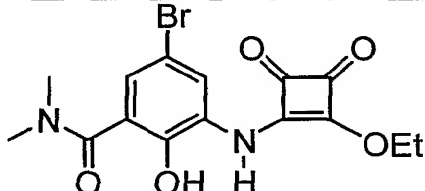
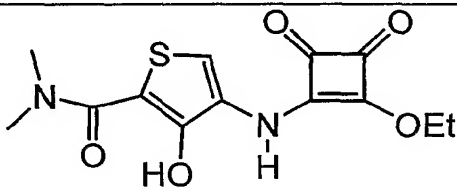
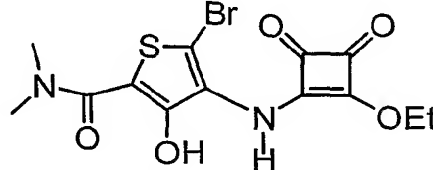
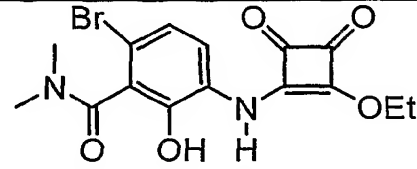
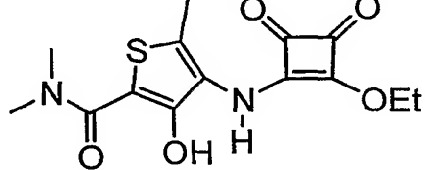
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 20-23.14

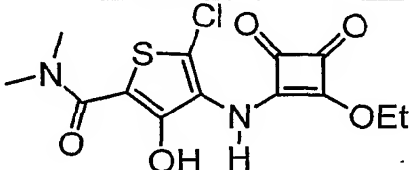
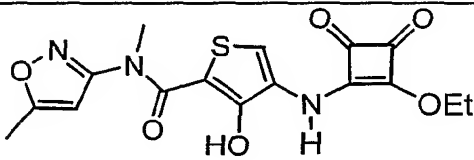
Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 19 but using the amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the cyclobutenedione intermediates were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Amine from Prep Ex.	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
20	4		1. 85% 2. 333
21	11		1. 44% 2. 319

21.1	6		1. 9% 2. 291
22	2		1. 38% 2. 347
23	14		1. 51% 2. 259
23.1	10.1		1. 62% 2. 317
23.2	10.2		1. 61% 2. 319
23.3	12		1. 40% 2. 330
23.4	10.3		1. 42% 2. 333

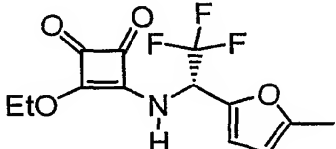
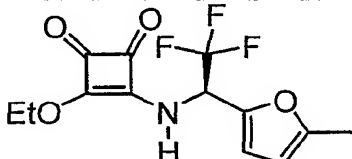
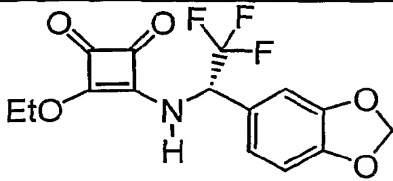
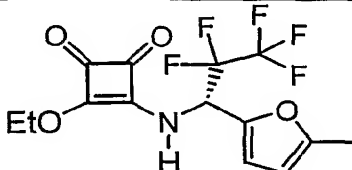
141

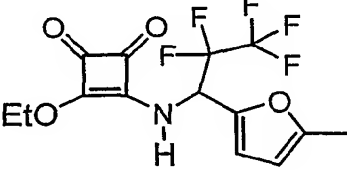
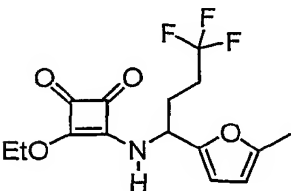
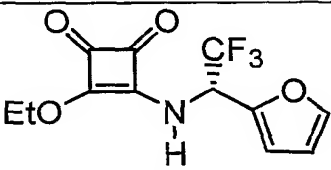
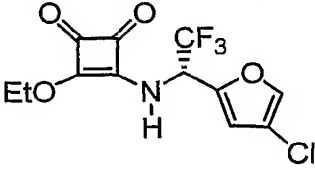
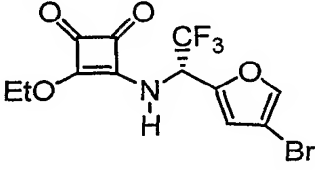
23.5	10.4		1. 40% 2. 333
23.6	10.5		1. 37% 2. 347
23.7	13.2		1. 39% 2. 339
23.8	13.1		1. 42% 2. 383/385
23.9	13.19		1. 51% 2. 311
23.10	13.20		1. 67% 2. 389.1,390
23.11	13.3		1. 52% 2. 383/385
23.12	13.21		1. 76% 2. 325.1

23.13	13.22	<div style="text-align: center;">142</div> 	1. 54%
23.14	13.23		1. 62% 2. 378

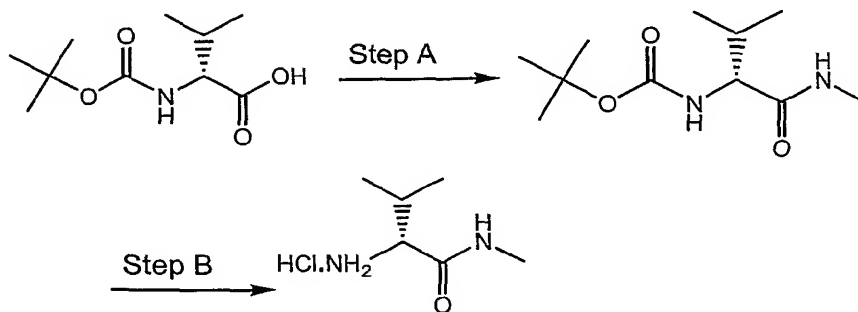
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 23.16-23.24

Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 19 but using the
 5 amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the
 cyclobutenedione intermediate products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Amine from Prep Ex.	Product	Yield (%)
23.16	13.11		91%
23.17	13.12		81%
23.18	13.17		47%
23.19	13.27		21%

23.20	13.26	<div style="text-align: center;">143</div> 	10%
23.21	13.25		49%
23.22	13.13		80%
23.23	13.15		63%
23.24	13.16		64%

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 24



5

Step A

To a solution of *N*-protected amino acid (1.5 g, 6.9 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL) at room temperature was added DIPEA (3.6 mL, 20.7 mmol), and PyBrop (3.4 g, 6.9 mmol) followed by MeNH₂ (6.9 mL, 13.8 mmol, 2.0 M in CH₂Cl₂). The resulting solution was stirred for 18 h at room temperature (until TLC analysis deemed the

10

144

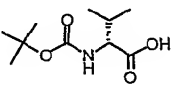
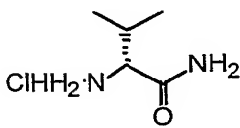
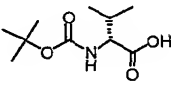
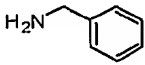
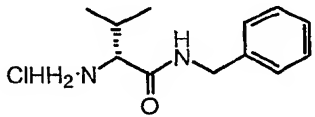
reaction to be complete). The resulting mixture was washed sequentially with 10% citric acid (3 x 20 mL), sat. aq. NaHCO₃ (3 x 20 mL), and brine (3 x 20 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography eluting with CH₂Cl₂/MeOH (40:1) to afford 1.0 g (63% yield) of a solid.

Step B

To a round bottom charged with the *N*-protected amide (1.0 g, 4.35 mmol) (from Step A) was added 4N HCl/dioxane (10 mL) and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The mixture was diluted with Et₂O (20 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was treated with Et₂O (2 x 20 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 0.72 g (~100 % yield) of crude product as the HCl salt. This material was taken on without further purification or characterization.

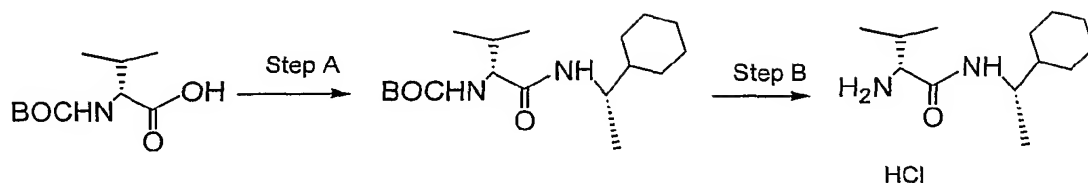
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 25-33.1

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 24 but using the commercially available *N*-protected amino acids and amines in the Table below, the amine hydrochloride products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Amino acid	Amine	Product	1.Yield (%)
25		NH ₃		1. 70%
26				1. 71%

27				1. 66%
28				1. 65%
29				1. 90%
30				1. 68%
31				1. 68%
32				1. 97%
33				1. 97%
33.1				1. 20%

146

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 33.25 Step A

BOC-valine (45mg) and PS-carbodiimide (200mg) were suspended in CH_2Cl_2 (4ml). After addition of the CH_2Cl_2 -amine solution (0.138N, 1ml), the mixture was shaken overnight. The solution was filtered and the resin was washed with more CH_2Cl_2 , and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the product, which was carried on directly in Step B.

10 Step B

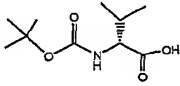
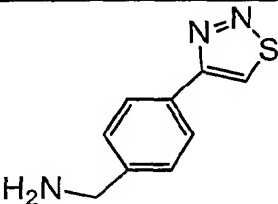
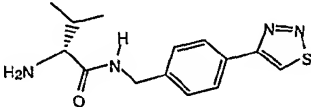
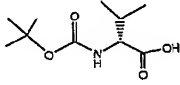
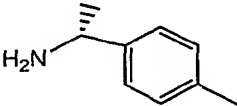
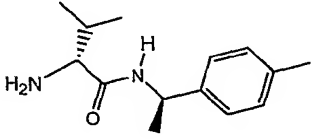
The crude material from Step A was dissolved in 4N HCl/dioxane (2.5ml) and stirred for 2h. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the desired amine hydrochloride, which was used directly in the next step.

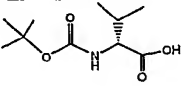
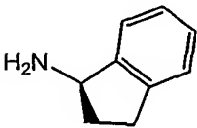
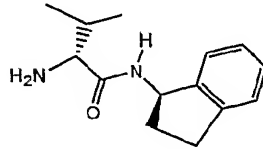
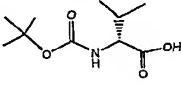
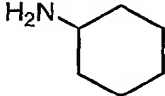
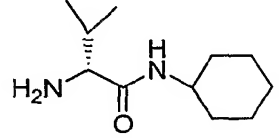
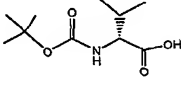
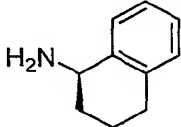
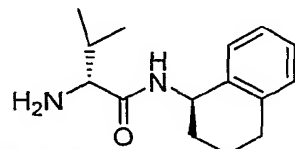
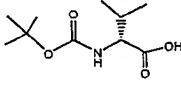
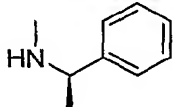
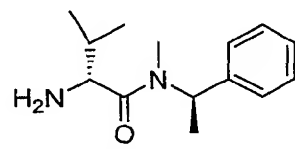
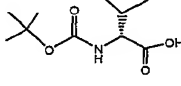
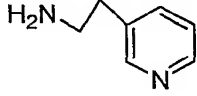
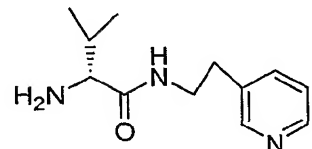
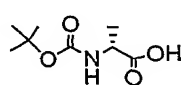
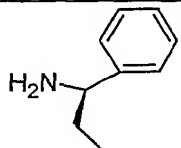
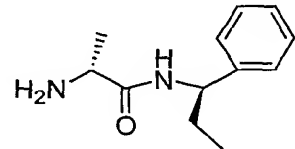
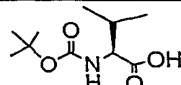
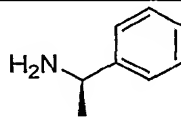
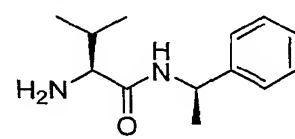
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 33.3-33.47

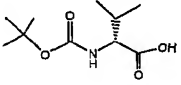
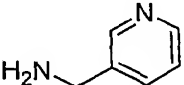
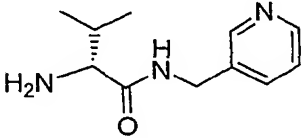
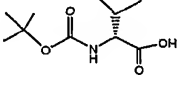
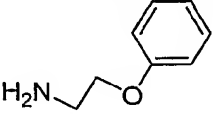
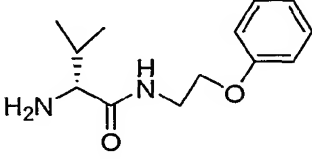
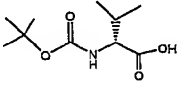
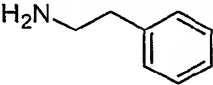
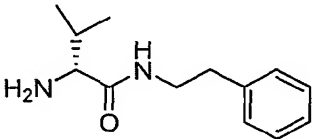
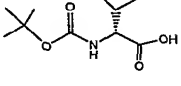
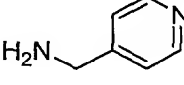
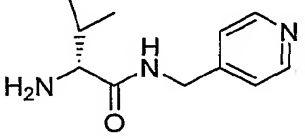
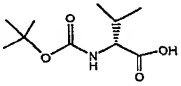
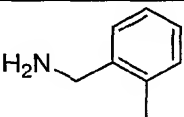
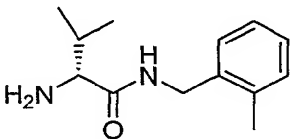
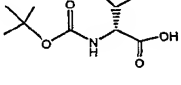
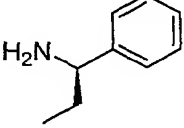
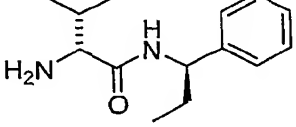
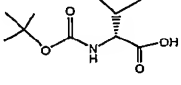
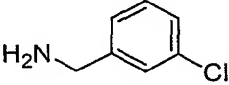
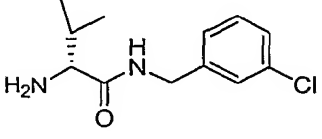
Following the procedure set forth in Example 33.2 but using the commercially available N-protected amino acids in the Table below, the amine hydrochloride products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Amino acid	Amine	Product
33.3			HCl

147

33.4			HCl 
33.5			HCl 

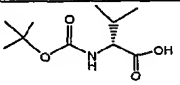
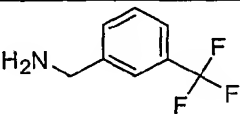
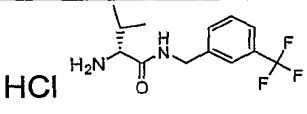
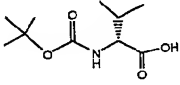
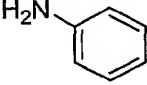
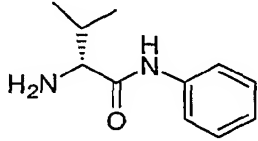
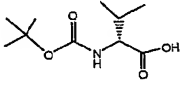
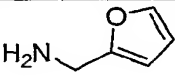
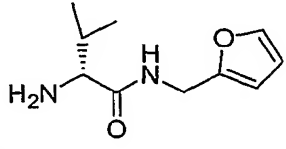
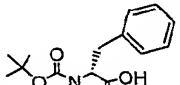
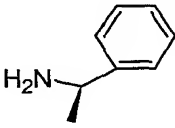
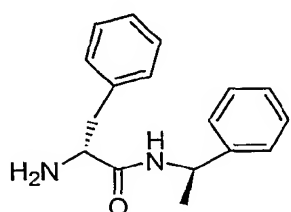
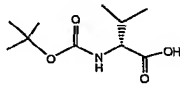
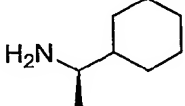
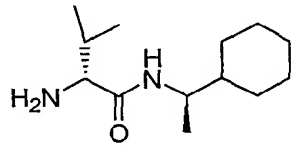
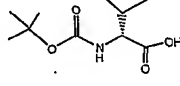
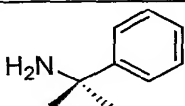
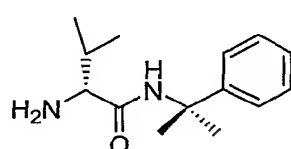
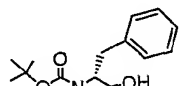
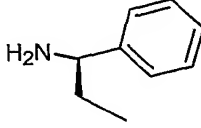
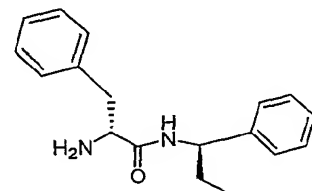
33.6			HCl 
33.7			HCl 
33.8			HCl 
33.9			HCl 
33.10			HCl 
33.11			HCl 
33.12			HCl 

33.13			HCl 
33.14			HCl 
33.15			HCl 
33.16			HCl 
33.17			HCl 
33.18			HCl 
19			HCl 

33.20			HCl
33.21			HCl
33.22			HCl
33.23			HCl
33.24			HCl
33.25			HCl
33.26			HCl

33.27			HCl
33.28			HCl
33.29			HCl
33.30			HCl
33.31			HCl
33.32			HCl
33.33			HCl
33.34			HCl

152

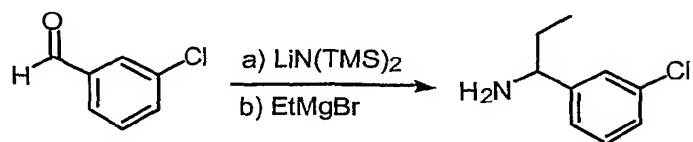
33.35			 HCl
33.36			 HCl
33.37			 HCl
33.38			 HCl
33.39			 HCl
33.40			 HCl
33.41			 HCl

153

33.42			
33.43			
33.44			
33.45			
33.46			
33.47			

Preparative Example 34

5



154

To a solution of 3-chlorobenzaldehyde (2.0 g, 14.2 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at 0 °C was added $\text{LiN}(\text{TMS})_2$ (17.0 mL, 1.0 M in THF) dropwise and the resulting solution was stirred for 20 min. EtMgBr (6.0 mL, 3.0 M in Et_2O) was added dropwise and the mixture was refluxed for 24 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, poured into saturated aqueous NH_4Cl (50 mL), and then extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 50 volumes). The organic layers were combined, concentrated under reduced pressure.

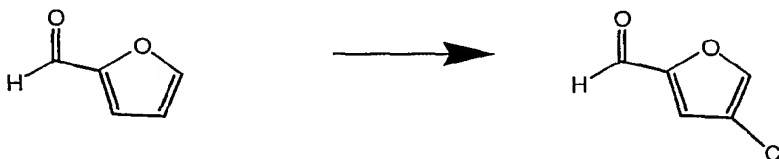
The crude residue was stirred with 3 M HCl (25 mL) for 30 min and the aqueous layer was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 15 mL) and the organic layers were discarded. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0 °C and treated with solid NaOH pellets until $\text{pH} = 10$ was attained. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 15 mL) and the organic layers were combined. The organic layer was washed with brine (1 x 25 mL), dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1.6 g (66% yield) of the crude amine as an oil (MH^+ 170). This material was determined to be >90% pure and was used without further purification.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.1



The aldehyde (3.5g) and conc. HCl (20ml) were combined and stirred overnight at 40°C. The reaction mixture was poured into cold water and extracted with ether, washed with satd. NaHCO_3 and brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1.76g of product (55%)

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.2



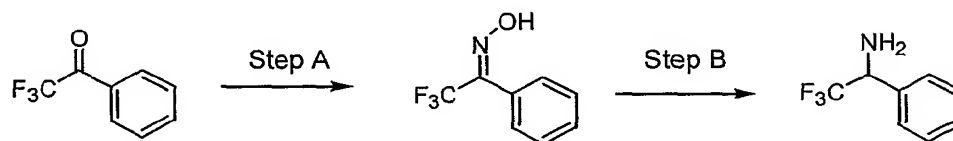
Chlorine was bubbled into 100ml of CH_2Cl_2 at 10°C. The aldehyde (3.73ml) was charged with 50ml of CHCl_3 and then cooled to 0°C. AlCl_3 was added portionwise, followed by the chlorine solution and let stir at room temperature

155

overnight. The reaction was poured into 150ml of ice and 50ml of 3N HCl and stirred for 30min. Organic layer was washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified via flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc 40/1) to yield 1.5g of pure product.

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.3



Step A

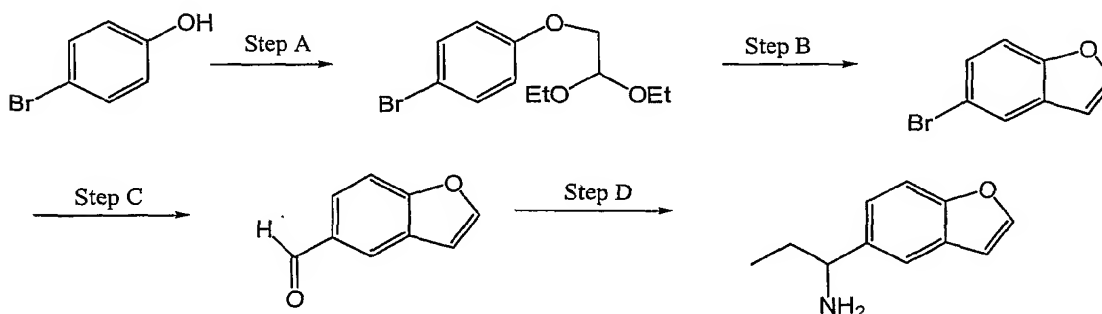
10 The ketone (3.25g) was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 88.2, Step B to give the oxime (3.5g, 99%).

Step B

15 The product from step A (1.2g) was stirred with AcOH (3ml) and Pd/C (10%, 300mg) in EtOH (40ml) under a hydrogen atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material dissolved in ether and washed with 2N NaOH, organic washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give product (960mg, 86%).

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.4



Step A

25 To a suspension of NaH (1.45g) in DMF (25ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere was added *p*-bromophenol (5g) at 0°C. After stirring for 20min, BrCH₂CH(OEt)₂ (5.3ml) was added and the reaction was heated to reflux overnight. The solution was

156

cooled and poured into ice water (80ml) and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with 1N NaOH and brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 8.4g of crude product (100%)

5 Step B

To a solution of the product from Step A (8.4g) in benzene (50ml) was added polyphosphoric acid (10g). The mixture was heated at reflux for 4 hrs. The reaction was cooled to 0°C and poured into ice water (80ml) and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 4.9g of crude product (85%)

10

Step C

To a solution of the product from Step B (2g) in ether (20ml) at -78°C was added t-BuLi dropwise. After stirring for 20min, DMF (950mg) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred at -25°C for 3hrs and then warmed to room temperature overnight. Saturated ammonium chloride was added and the solution was extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 980mg of crude product (67%).

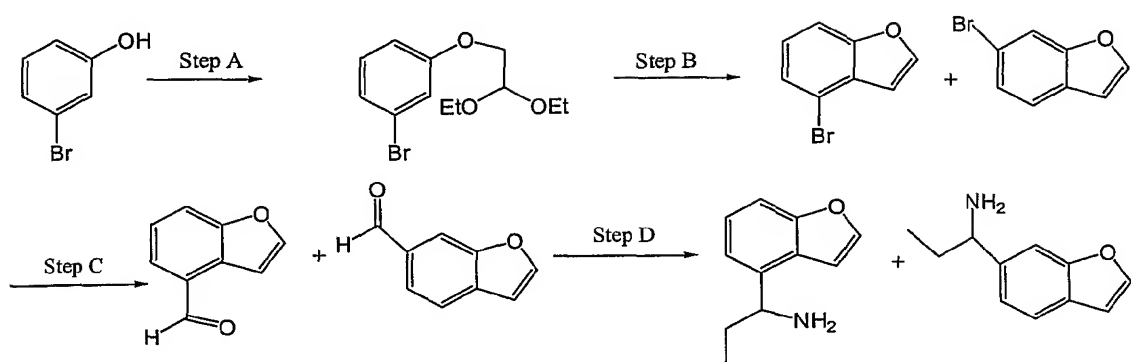
15

20 Step D

To a solution of aldehyde (400g) in ether (10ml) was added $\text{LiN}(\text{TMS})_2$ (1M in THF, 3.3ml) at 0°C dropwise. The solution was stirred at 0°C for 30min and EtMgBr (3M in THF, 1.83ml) was added dropwise. The reaction was refluxed overnight, cooled to 0°C , quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with ether. The ether was stirred with 3N HCl (20ml), then the aqueous layer was basified with NaOH pellets and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 220mg of product (46%).

25

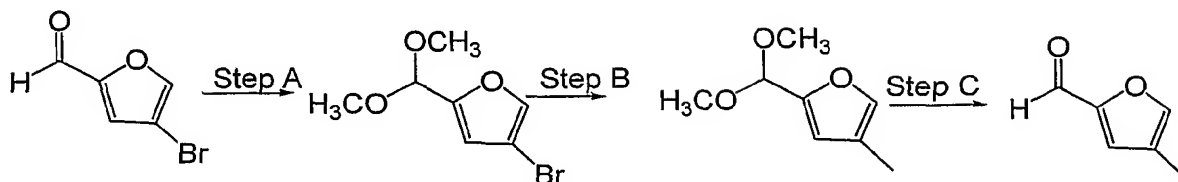
157

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.5

Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 34.4 Steps A through D, but using *m*-bromophenol (8g), both amines were formed and separated by preparative plate chromatography (63-65%, MH⁺=175).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.6

To a solution of 3-methyl-thiophene (5g) in ether (50ml) was added dropwise a solution of n-BuLi (1.6M in hexane, 32ml). The mixture was stirred for 1.5hr at room temperature. DMF (5.1ml) was then added and let stir overnight. The mixture was poured into saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with ether. The ether layer was washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude product was purified via flash column chromatography (EtOAc/Hex 20:1) to afford 5.27g of an oil (84%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.7Step A

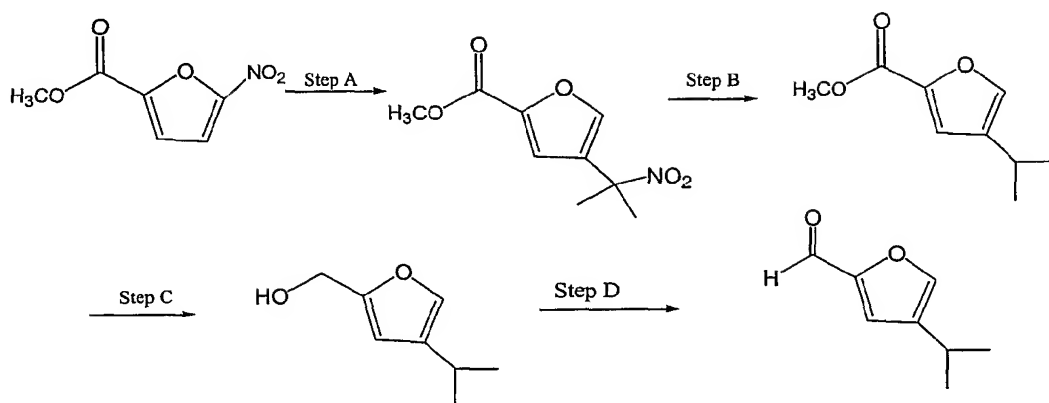
To a solution of 4-bromo-2-furaldehyde (4g) in MeOH (75ml) was added trimethyl- orthoformate (3.8ml). A catalytic amount of *p*-toluene sulfonic acid (195mg) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 3.5hr. The reaction was cooled down and potassium carbonate was added. The mixture was filtered through a silica gel pad. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*, dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and filtered. The filtrate was again concentrated *in vacuo* to give 4.03g of product (80%).

Step B

To a solution of the product from Step A (2.02g) in THF (80ml) at -78°C was added dropwise a solution of n-BuLi (2.5M in hexanes, 4.4ml) and stirred for 1.5hr. A solution of iodomethane (1.7ml) was added and let stir for 2.5hrs at -60°C. The cooling bath was removed and saturated ammonium chloride was added and let stir for 10min. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 1.34g of crude product.

Step C

The product from Step B (1.43g) was dissolved in acetone (50ml) and treated with a catalytic amount of *p*-toluene sulfonic acid (80mg). The mixture was heated to reflux for 2hr. The reaction was cooled down and solid potassium carbonate was added. The mixture was filtered through a silica gel pad and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1.246g of crude product.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.8Step A

To a stirred solution of potassium t-butoxide (2.5g) in HMPA (20ml) was added 2-nitropropane (2ml) dropwise. After 5min, a solution of methyl-5-nitro-2-furoate (3.2g) in HMPA (8ml) was added to the mixture and stirred for 16hr. Water was added and the aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc layer was washed with water, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc, 6:1) to yield 3.6g of product (90%).

Step B

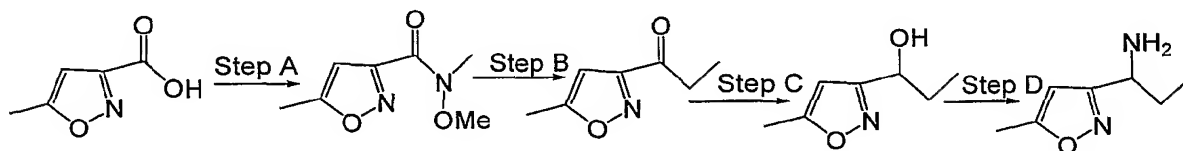
To a solution of the product from Step A (3.6g) in toluene (16ml) was added tributyltin hydride (5.4ml) followed by AIBN (555mg). The mixture was heated to 85°C for 3.5hr. After cooling, the mixture was separated by flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc, 7:1) to afford 2.06g of product (73%).

Step C

To a solution of product from Step B (2.05g) in THF (60ml) at 0°C was added a solution of LAH (1M in ether, 12.8ml). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 30min. Water and 1M NaOH was added until a precipitate formed, diluted with EtOAc, stirred for 30min and then filtered through a celite pad. The organic filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1.56g of product (93%).

Step D

To a solution of product from Step C (2.15g) in CH_2Cl_2 (100ml) was added Dess-Martin oxidant (7.26g) in CH_2Cl_2 (45ml) and stirred for 30min. The mixture was diluted with ether (200ml). The organic layer was washed with 1N NaOH, water and brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give oil and solid. The material was extracted with ether and filtered. Some solid crystallized out from the filtrate, filtered again, and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to give 2.19g of product.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.9Step A

To a solution of carboxylic acid (5g) in CH_2Cl_2 (400ml) at 0°C was added $\text{N}(\text{OCH}_3)\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{HCl}$ (11.5g), DEC (15.1g), HOBT (5.3g) and NMM (43ml) and stirred for 14hr. The mixture was diluted with CH_2Cl_2 (100ml) and the organic layer was washed with 10% HCl, saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 5.74g of crude product (85%).

Step B

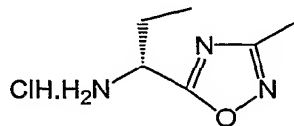
To a solution of iodoethane (0.56ml) in ether (5ml) at -78°C was added a solution of *t*-BuLi (1.7M in pentane, 8.3ml) dropwise. The mixture was warmed to room temperature for 1hr and transferred to a 100ml round bottom charged with the product from Step A (1g) in THF (12ml) at -78°C . The mixture was stirred at -78°C for 1hr and at 0°C for an additional 2hr. 1M HCl was added dropwise followed by CH_2Cl_2 . The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 620mg of product (76%).

Step C

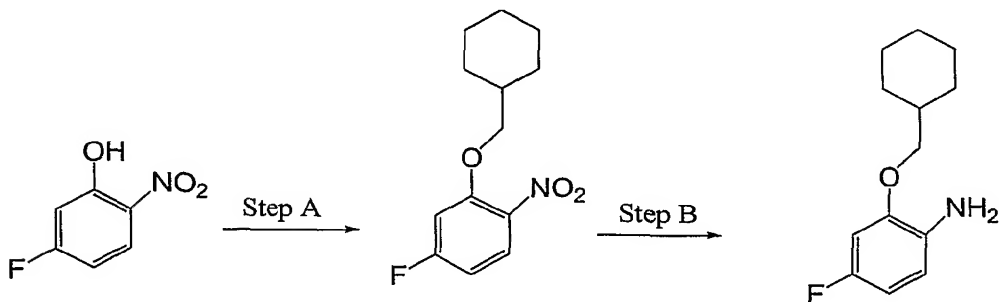
To a solution of the product from Step B (620mg) in THF/MeOH (10:1) at 0°C was added NaBH₄ (250mg) in one portion. The mixture was stirred overnight at 0°C, concentrated *in vacuo* and the crude material was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and washed with 1N NaOH and brine, dried with Na₂SO₄, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 510mg of product.

Step D

The above material was reacted in the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 75.75 Steps B and C to yield 170mg of amine product (28%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.10

The above amine was made analogous to the procedures set forth in Patent WO96/22997 p.56, but using ethylglycine instead of benzylglycine in the DCC coupling.

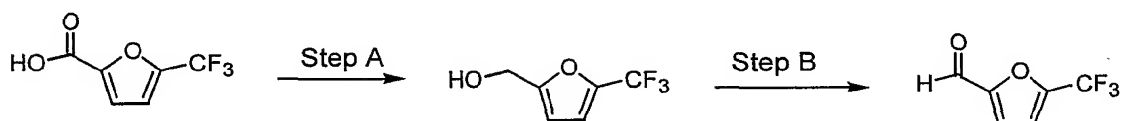
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.11

Step A

To the nitro compound (3.14g) and cyclohexylmethanol (1.14g) in THF (50ml) was added PPH_3 (4.72g) and cooled to 0°C . Diisopropylazodicarboxylate (3.15ml) was added dropwise and let stir overnight. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc, 30:1) to give product (3.3g), which was carried on directly to the next step.

Step B

To the product from step A (3.3g) in EtOH (50ml) was added 10% Pd/C (1.7g) under a hydrogen atmosphere at 55psi and let stir overnight. The reaction was filtered through celite and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 3.2g of product.

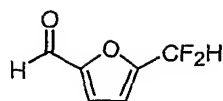
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.12Step A

A solution of acid (2g) in ether (20ml) was added dropwise to a suspension of LiAlH_4 (350mg) in ether (15ml) at 0°C . The solution was refluxed for 3hr and stirred at room temperature overnight. 5% KOH was added and reaction was filtered, extracted with ether, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product (1.46g, 79%, $\text{MH}^+=166$).

Step B

To a solution of alcohol from above (1.46g) in CH_2Cl_2 at room temperature was added Dess-Martin reagent (5.6g) portionwise and one drop of water and let stir over the weekend at room temperature. 10% $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ was added and stirred for 20min, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, dried with Na_2SO_4 , and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 1.1g of product (76%).

163

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.13

The above compound was prepared in the procedure set forth in EP Patent 0 555 153 A1.

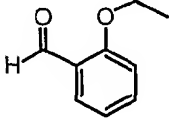
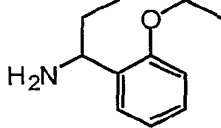
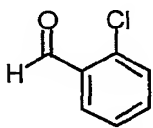
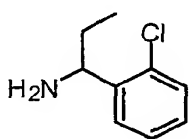
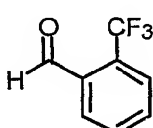
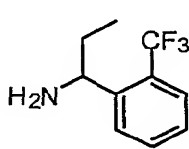
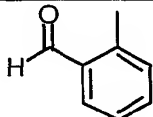
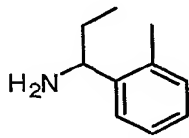
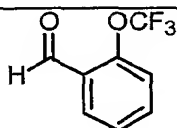
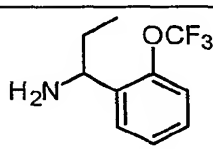
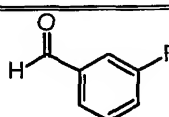
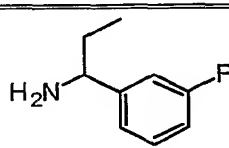
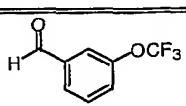
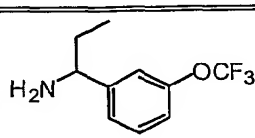
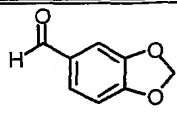
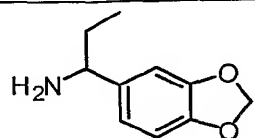
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 34.14

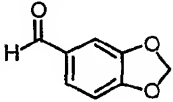
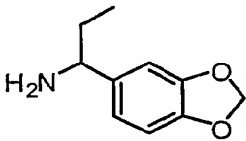
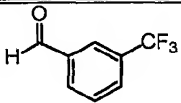
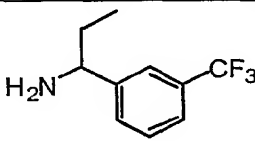
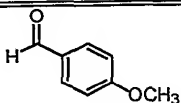
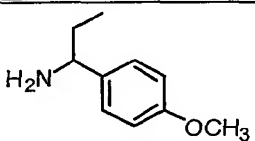
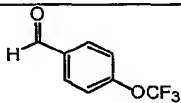
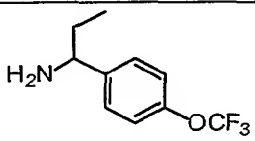
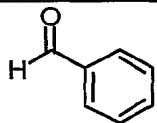
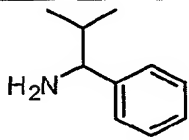
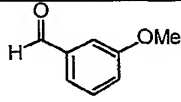
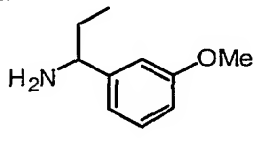
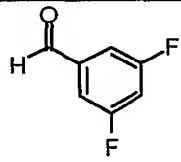
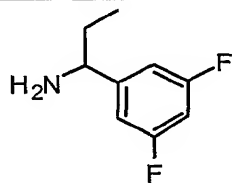
The aldehyde (500mg) from above was reacted following the procedure set forth in the Preparative Example 13.4, Step A to yield 372mg of product (76%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 35-51.20

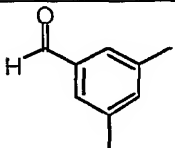
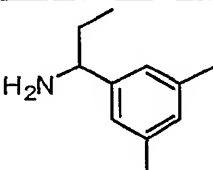
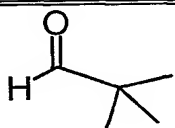
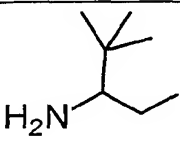
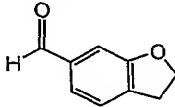
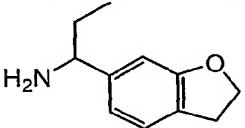
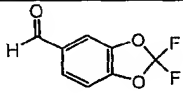
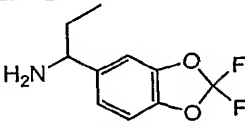
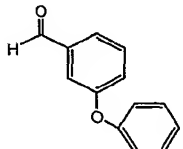
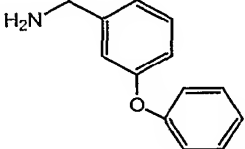
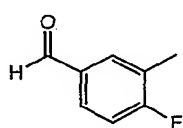
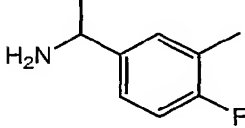
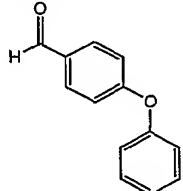
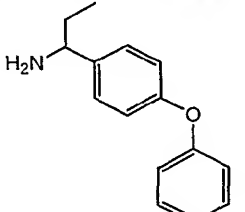
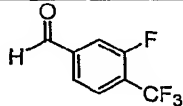
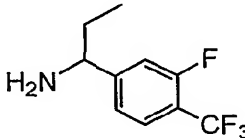
Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 34 but using the commercially available aldehydes and Grignard reagents listed in the Table below, the amine products below were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Grignard Reagent	Amine	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
35		EtMgBr		1. 65% 2. 154

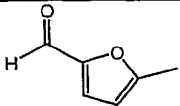

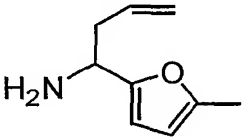
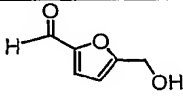
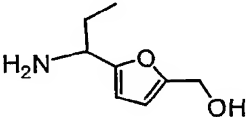
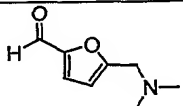
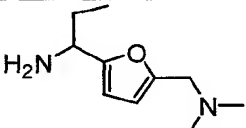
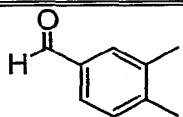
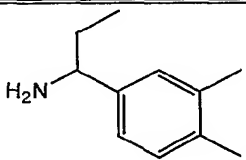
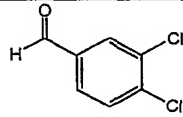
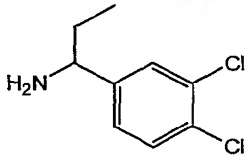
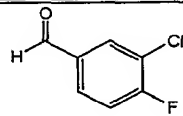
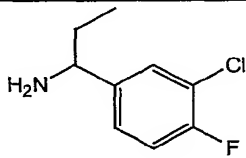
36		EtMgBr		1. 75% 2. 180
37		EtMgBr		1. 78% 2. 170
38		EtMgBr		1. 34% 2. 204
39		EtMgBr		1. 68% 2. 150
40		EtMgBr		1. 40% 2. 220
41		EtMgBr		1. 73% 2. 154
42		EtMgBr		1. 52% 2. 220
43		EtMgBr		1. 55% 2. 180

43		EtMgBr		1. 55% 2. 180
44		EtMgBr		1. 20% 2. 204
45		EtMgBr		1. 80% 2. 166
46		EtMgBr		1. 35% 2. 220
47		<i>i</i> -PrMgBr		1. 20% 2. 150
48		EtMgBr		1. 77% 2. [M-NH ₂] ⁺ = 149
49		EtMgBr		1. 77% 2. 172

166

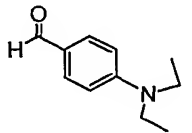
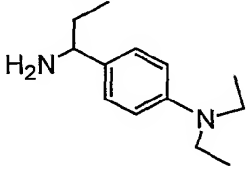
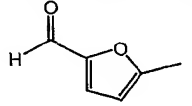
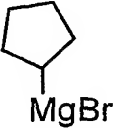
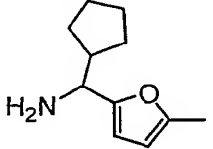
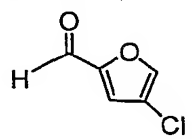
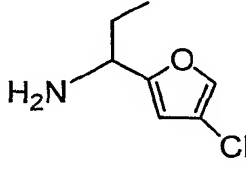
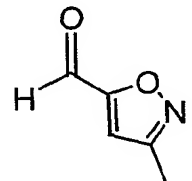
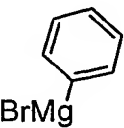
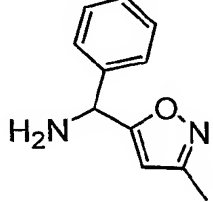
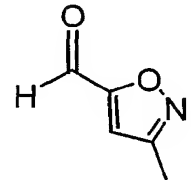
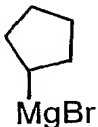
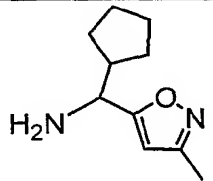
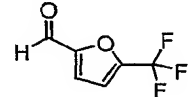
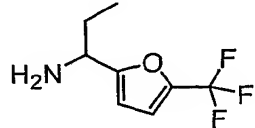
50		EtMgBr		1. 78% 2. $[M-NH_2]^+ = 147$
51		EtLi		1. 10% 2. 116
51.2		EtMgBr		1. 37% 2. 161
51.3		EtMgBr		1. 63% 2. 216
51.4		EtMgBr		1. 71% 2. 228
51.5		EtMgBr		1. 89% 2. 168
51.6		EtMgBr		1. 20% 2. 228
51.8		EtMgBr		1. 36% 2. 222

167

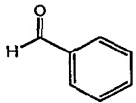
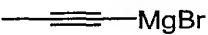
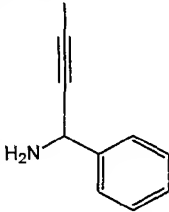
51.10		 MgBr		1. 95% 2. 152.1
51.11		EtMgBr		1. 61% 2. 138.1 MH ⁺ - H ₂ O
51.12		EtMgBr		1. 70% 2. 184.1
51.18		EtMgBr		1. 42% 2. 147 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
51.19		EtMgBr		1. 67% 2. 204
51.20		EtMgBr		1. 33% 2. 188

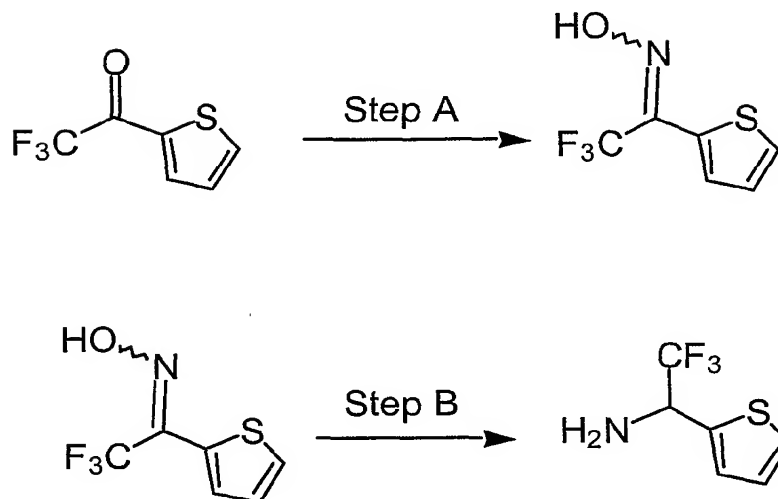
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 51.25 - 51.31

Following the procedure set forth in Example 34 but using the commercially
 5 available aldehydes and Grignard reagents listed in the Table below, the amine
 products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Grignard Reagent	Amine	Yield (%)
51.25		EtMgBr		20%
51.26				77%
51.27	(34.2) 	EtMgBr		51%
51.28	(78.1) 			56%
51.29	(78.1) 			54%
51.30	(34.12) 	EtMgBr		80%

169

51.31				10%
-------	---	---	--	-----

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 52

5

Step A

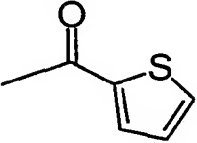
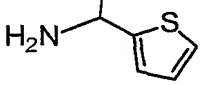
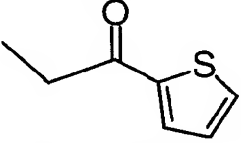
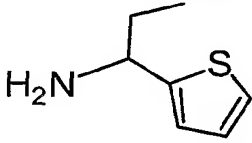
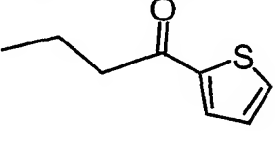
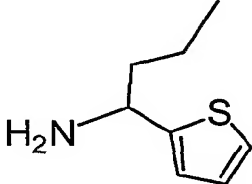
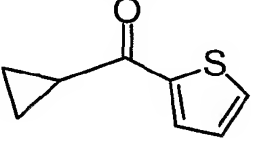
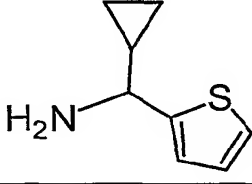
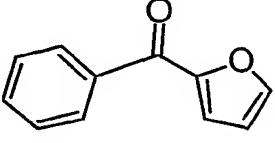
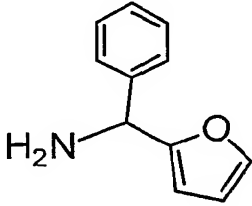
A mixture of 2-(trifluoroacetyl)thiophene (2 mL, 15.6 mmol), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (2.2 g, 2 eq), diisopropylethylamine (5.5 mL, 2 eq) and MeOH (50 mL) was stirred at reflux for 48-72 hrs, then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was diluted with EtOAc, washed with 10% KH₂PO₄ and dried over Na₂SO₄ (anhydrous). Filtration and concentration afforded the desired oxime (2.9 g, 96%) which was used directly in Step B without further purification.

15 Step B

To a mixture of the product from Step A above in TFA (20 mL) was added Zn powder (3 g, 3 eq) portionwise over 30 min and stirred at room temperature overnight. The solid was filtered and the mixture reduced *in vacuo*. Aqueous NaOH (2 M) was added and the mixture was extracted several times with CH₂Cl₂. The organic phase was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to afford the desired product (1.4 g, 50%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 53-61

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 52 but using the commercially available ketones listed in the Table below, the following amines were obtained.

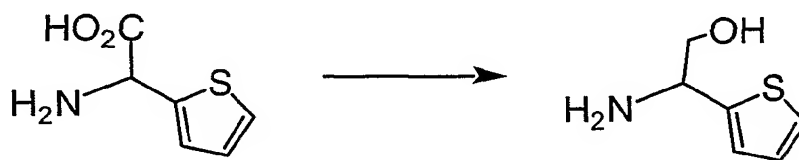
Prep Example	Ketone	Amine	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
53			1. 11% 2. 128
54			1. 33% 2. 142
55			1. 49% 2. 156
56			1. 5% 2. 154
57			1. 47% 2. 174

172

58			1. 71% 2. 190
59			1. 78% 2. 191
60			1. 80% 2. 190
61			1. 9% 2. 156

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 62

5



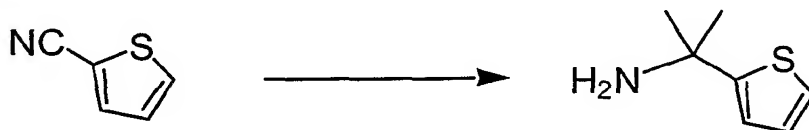
10

To a cooled (0-5°C) suspension of L- α -(2-thienyl)glycine (0.5 g) and LiBH₄ (2M in THF, 3.8 mL) in anhydrous THF (10 mL) was slowly added a THF (5 mL) solution of iodine (0.8 g). After stirring at room temperature for 15 min, the mixture was stirred at
 10 relax overnight. After cooling to room temperature, MeOH was added dropwise until gas evolution ceased and after 30 min, the mixture was evaporated. The oily residue was stirred in 20 mL KOH for 4 hrs, diluted with brine and extracted with EtOAc.

The organic phase was dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford a crude mixture. Purification by flash column chromatography (50% EtOAc/ CH_2Cl_2 , silica) afforded the product (0.3 g, 63%, $\text{MH}^+ = 144$).

5

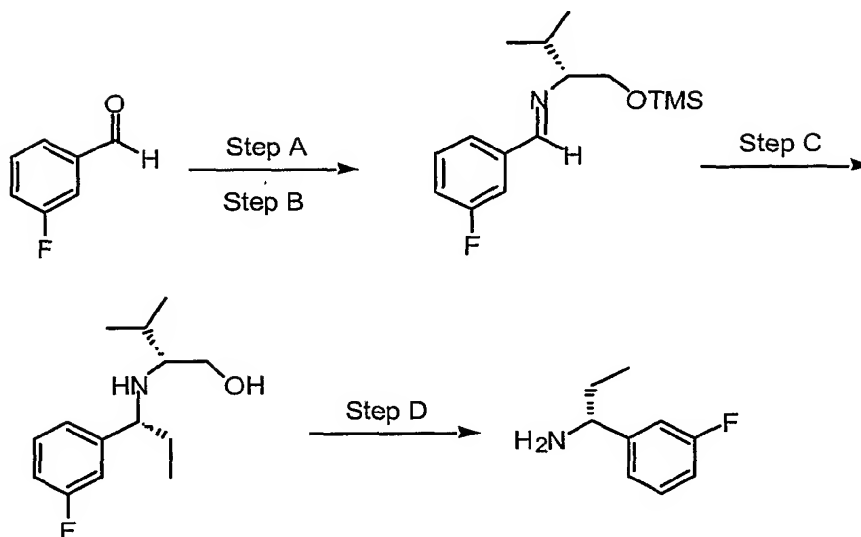
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 63



10

$\text{CeCl}_3 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ was dried at $140\text{--}150^\circ\text{C}$ for 22 hr. To this solid was added THF (80 mL, anhydrous) and after stirring for 2 hr, the suspension was cooled to -78°C and to it was added methyl lithium over 30 min. After stirring for an additional 30 min 2-thiophenecarbonitrile dissolved in anhydrous THF (4.5 mL) was added and the resulting mixture stirred for an additional 4.5 hr at -78°C . Concentrated aqueous NH_3 (25 mL) was added and the mixture was warmed to room temperature and filtered through celite. The filtrate was extracted with dichloromethane, dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford a crude mixture. Purification by flash column chromatography (5% MeOH, CH_2Cl_2 , silica) afforded the desired product (1.2 g, 62%).

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 64

5

Step A

To a solution of (D)-valinol (4.16 g, 40.3 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (60 mL) at 0 °C was added MgSO_4 (20 g) followed by dropwise addition of 3-fluorobenzaldehyde (5.0 g, 40.3 mmol). The heterogeneous solution was stirred at 0°C for 2h and was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir overnight (14h). The mixture was filtered and the drying agent was washed with CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 10 mL). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 8.4 g (100%) of an oil which was taken onto the next step without further purification.

15 Step B

To a solution of the imine (8.4 g, 40.2 mmol) from Step A in CH_2Cl_2 (60 mL) at room temperature was added Et_3N (6.2 mL, 44.5 mmol) followed by dropwise addition of TMSCl (5.7 mL, 44.5 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 6h at room temperature whereupon the ppt that had formed was filtered off and washed with CH_2Cl_2 (2 x 10 mL). The combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure and was taken up in Et_2O /hexane (1:1/150 mL). The precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 10.1 g (89%) of the protected imine as an oil. This material was taken onto the next step without further purification.

Step C

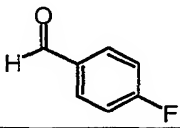
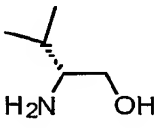
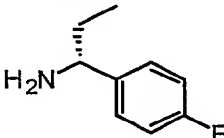
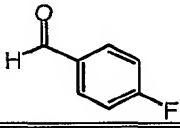
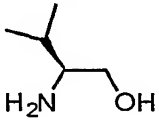
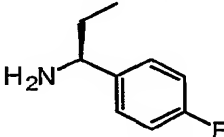
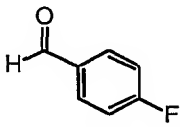
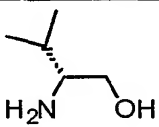

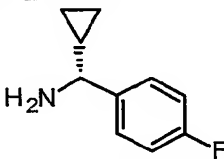
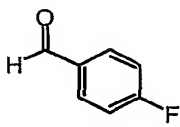
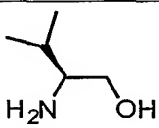

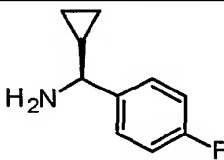
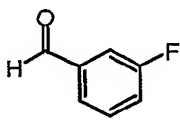
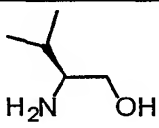
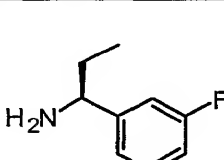
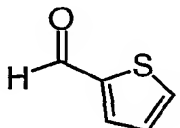
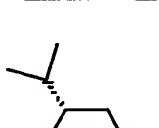
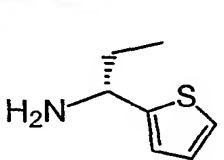
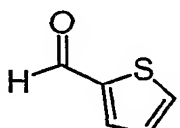
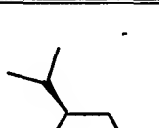
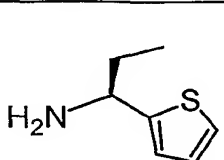
To a solution of EtI (4.0 g, 25.6 mmol) in Et₂O (40 mL) at -78 °C was added t-BuLi (30.1 mL, 51.2 mmol, 1.7 M in pentane) and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. The mixture was warmed to room temperature, stirred for 1 h, and was recooled to -40 °C. A solution of the imine (6.0 g, 21.4 mmol) from Step B in Et₂O (30 mL) was added dropwise via addition funnel to afford a bright orange mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 h at -40 °C then 3M HCl (50 mL) was added and the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. Water (50 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (2 x 30 mL) and the organic layers were combined and discarded. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0 °C and carefully treated with solid NaOH pellets until pH = 12 was attained. The aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 30 mL) and the combined layers were washed with brine (1 x 30 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 4.8 g (94% yield) of the amine as an oil. This material was taken on crude to the next step without further purification.

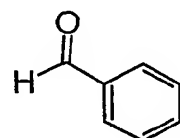
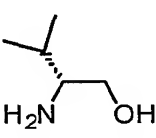
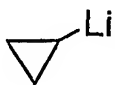
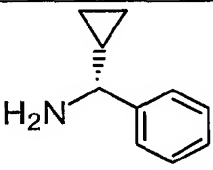
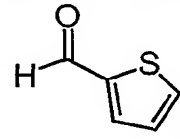
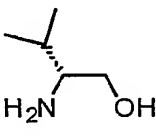
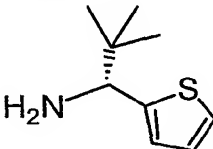
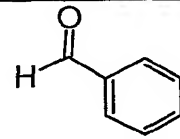
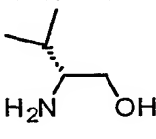
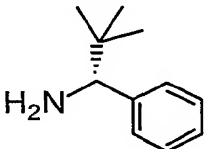
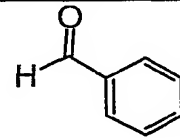
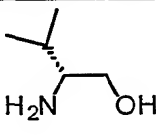
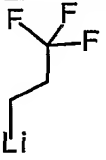
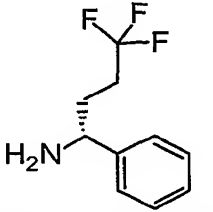
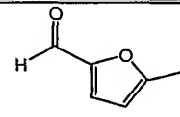
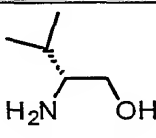
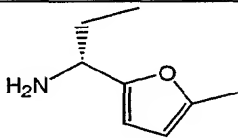
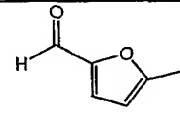
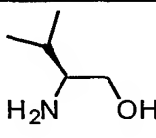
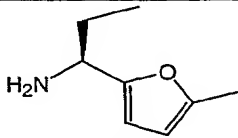
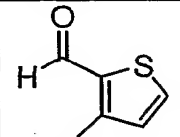
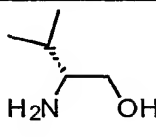
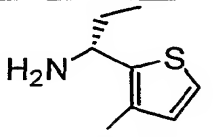
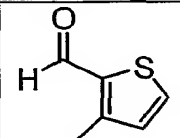
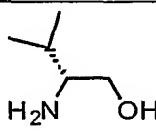
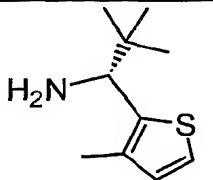
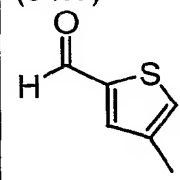
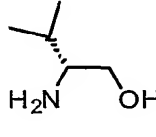
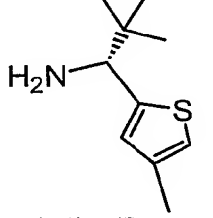
Step D

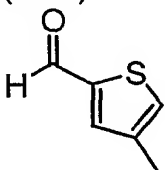
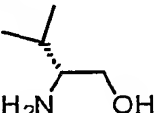
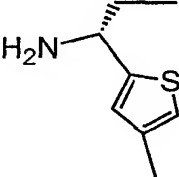
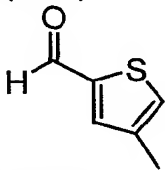
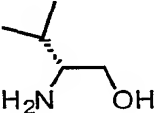
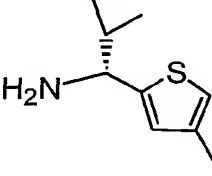
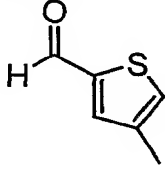
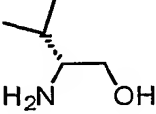
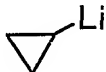
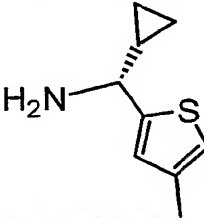
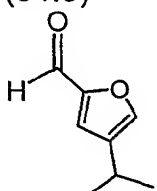
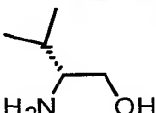
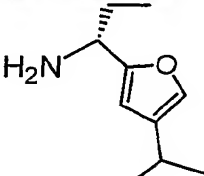
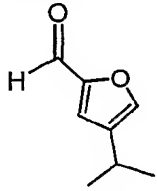
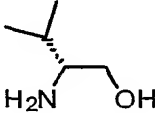
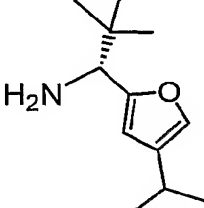
To a solution of amine (4.5 g, 18.8 mmol) from Step C in MeOH (80 mL) at room temperature was added MeNH₂ (25 mL, 40% in water) followed by addition of a solution of H₅IO₆ (14.0 g, 61.4 mmol) in H₂O (25 mL). The heterogenous mixture was stirred for 1.5 h (until the reaction was complete by TLC) and the precipitate was filtered off. The resulting filtrate was diluted with water (50 mL) and the mixture was extracted with Et₂O (4 x 60 mL). The combined organic layers were concentrated to a volume of ~30 mL whereupon 3M HCl (75 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred overnight (12h at room temperature) after which the mixture was concentrated to remove the volatiles. The aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 40 mL) and the organic layers were discarded. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0 °C and was carefully treated with solid NaOH pellets until pH ~12 was reached. The aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 60 mL) and the combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄). The organic layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2.8 g (97% yield) of the desired amine as an oil [MH⁺ 154]. This compound was proven to be >85% pure by ¹H NMR and was used crude in the subsequent coupling step.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 65-75.10

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 64 but using the
 5 commercially available aldehydes, amino alcohols, and organolithium reagents in the
 Table below, the optically pure amine products in the Table below were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Amino Alcohol	Organo lithium	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
65			EtLi		1. 62% 2. 154
66			EtLi		1. 70% 2. 154
67					1. 54% 2. 166
68					1. 67% 2. 166
69			EtLi		1. 67% 2. 154
70			EtLi		1. 42% 2. 142
71			EtLi		1. 36% 2. 142

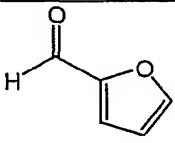
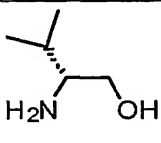

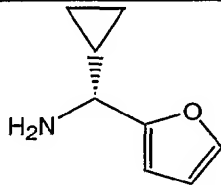
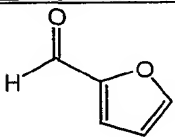
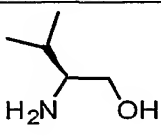

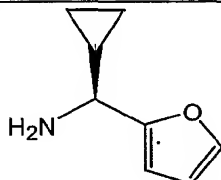
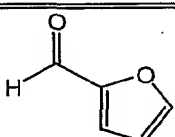
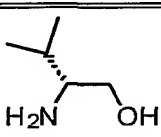
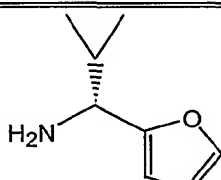
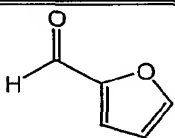
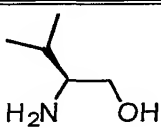
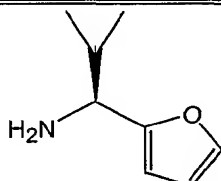
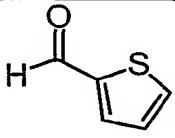
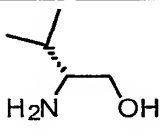
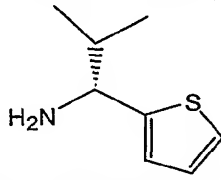
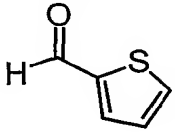
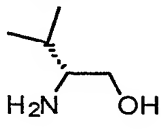

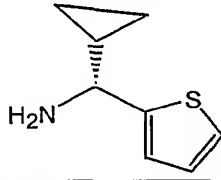
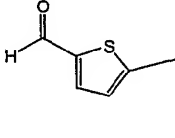
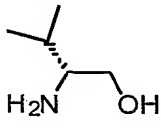
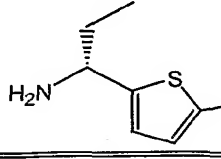
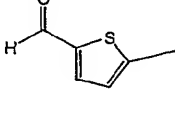
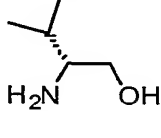

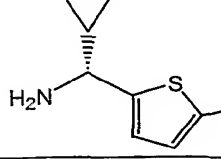
72					1. 62% 2. 148
73			t-BuLi		1. 27% 2. 256
74			t-BuLi		1. 15% 2. 164
75					1. 7% 2. 204
75.1			EtLi		1. 65% 2. 123 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.2			EtLi		1. 62% 2. 123 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.3			EtLi		1. 93% 2. 139 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.4			tBuLi		1. 50% 2. 167 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.5	(34.6) 		tBuLi		1. 48% 2. 167 [M-NH ₂] ⁺

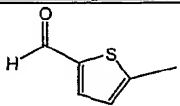
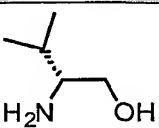
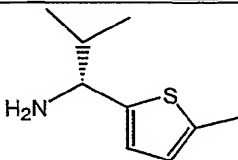
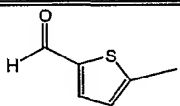
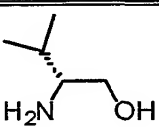
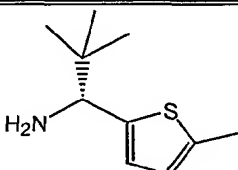
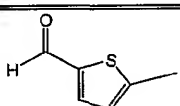
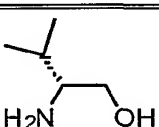
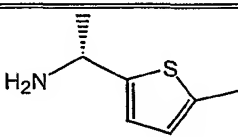
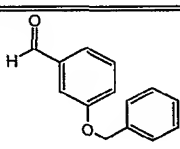
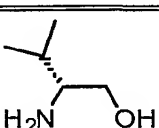
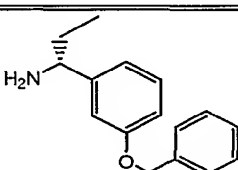
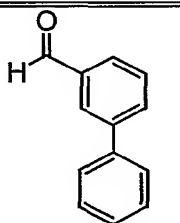
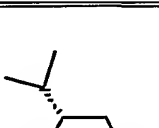
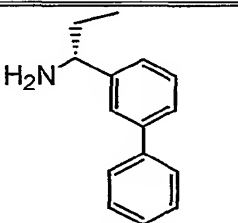
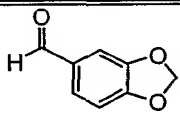
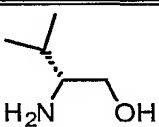
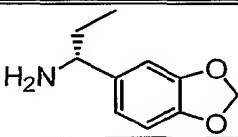
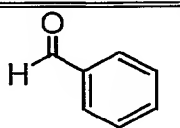
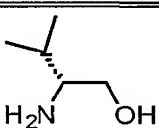
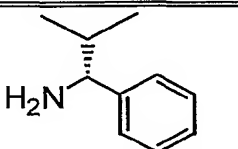
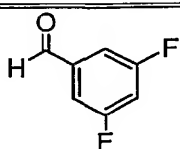
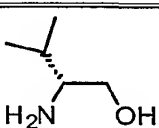
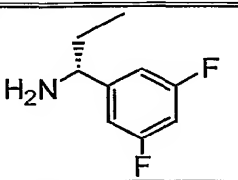
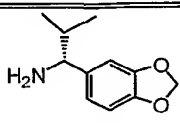
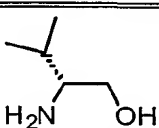
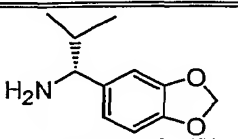
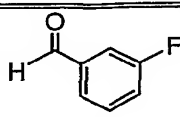
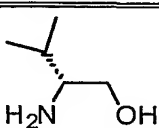
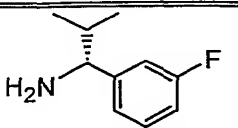
75.6	(34.6) 		EtLi		1. 97% 2. 139 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.7	(34.6) 		iPrLi		1. 87% 2. 153 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.8	(34.6) 				1. 94% 2. 151 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.9	(34.8) 		EtLi		1. 75% 2. 151 [M-NH ₂] ⁺
75.10	(34.8) 		tBuLi		1. 30% 2. 179 [M-NH ₂] ⁺

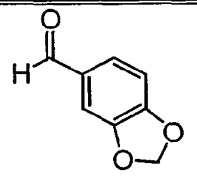
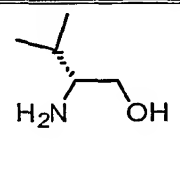

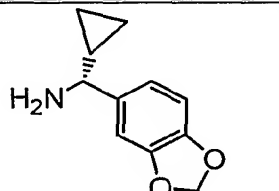
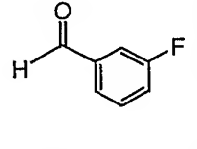
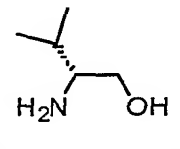

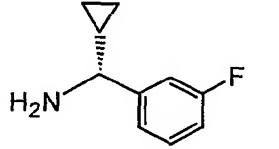
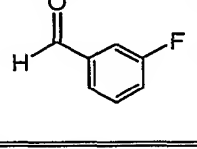
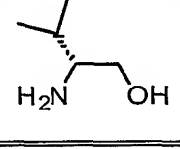
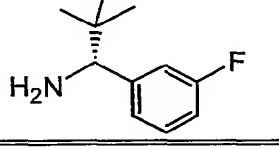
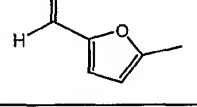
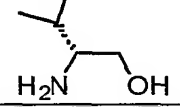
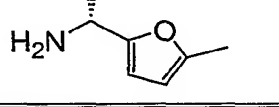
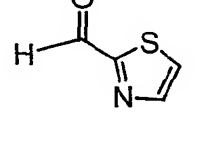
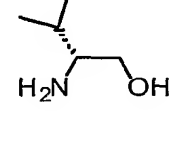
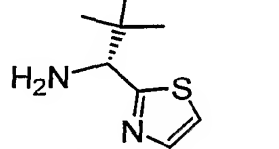
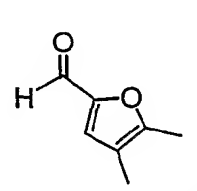
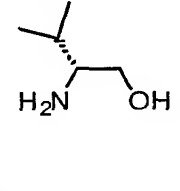
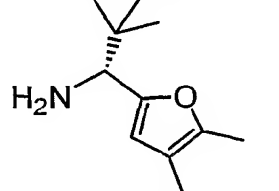
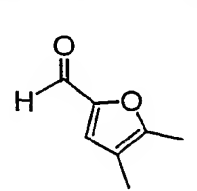
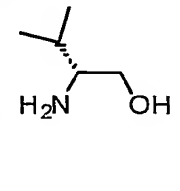
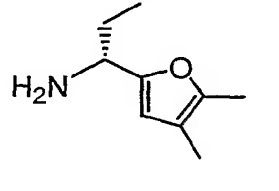
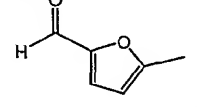
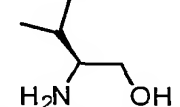
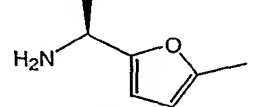
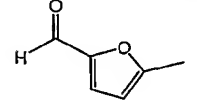
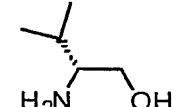

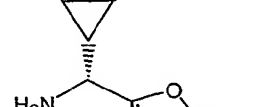
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 75.11-75.59

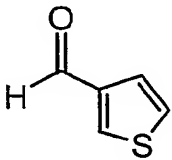
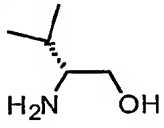
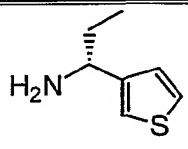
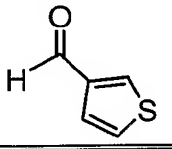
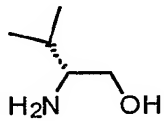
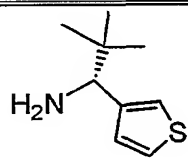
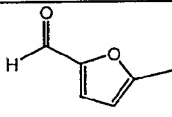
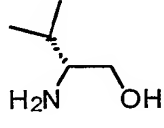
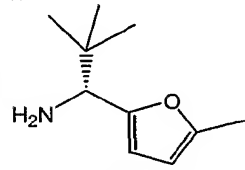
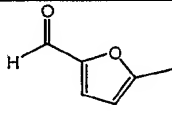
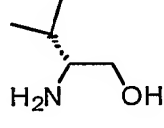
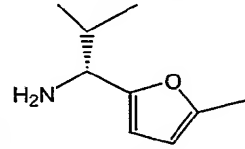
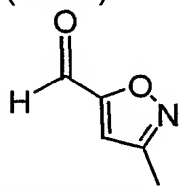
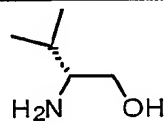
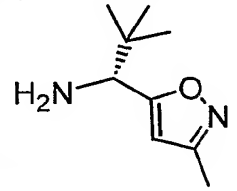
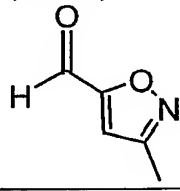
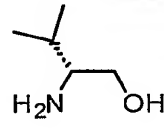
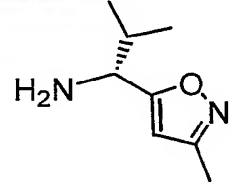
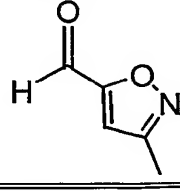
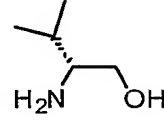
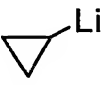
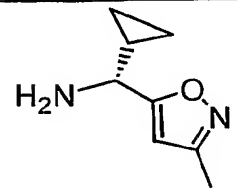
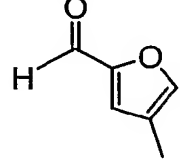
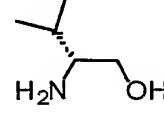
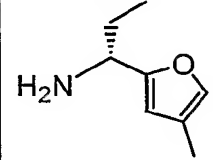
5

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 64 but using the prepared or commercially available aldehydes, amino alcohols, and organolithium reagents in the Table below and carrying the amine on crude, the optically pure amine products in the Table below were obtained.

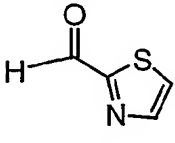
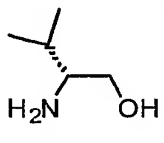
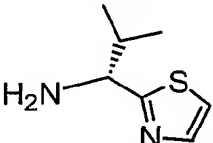
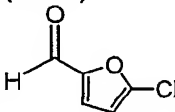
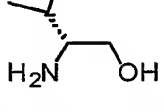
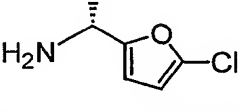
Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Amino Alcohol	Organo lithium	Product	Yield (%)
75.11					52%
75.12					50%
75.13			iPrLi		57%
75.14			iPrLi		54%
75.15			iPrLi		58%
75.16					61%
75.17			EtLi		72%
75.18					68%

75.19			iPrLi		77%
75.20			t-BuLi		15%
75.21			MeLi		50%
75.22			EtLi		23%
75.24			EtLi		20%
75.27			EtLi		65%
75.28			iPrLi		61%
75.29			EtLi		90%
75.30			iPrLi		62%
75.31			iPrLi		43%

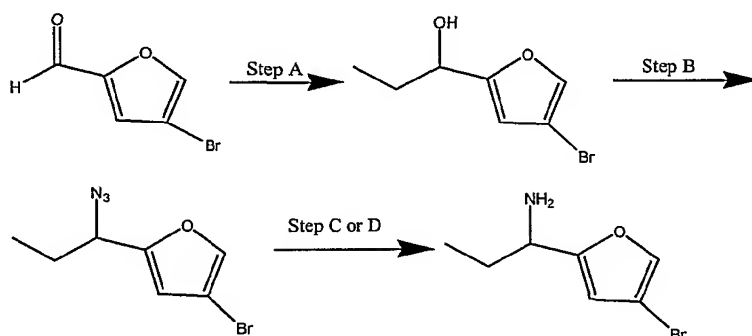
75.32					50%
75.33					50%
75.34			tBuLi		51%
75.35			MeLi		51%
75.36			tBuLi		57%
75.37			tBuLi		60%
75.38			EtLi		73%
75.39			MeLi		48%
75.41					52%

75.42			EtLi		40%
75.43			tBuLi		20%
75.44			t-BuLi		79%
75.45			iPrLi		55%
75.46	(75.57) 		tBuLi		39%
75.47	(75.57) 		iPrLi		55%
75.48	(75.57) 				34%
75.49	(34.7) 		EtLi		61%

75.50	(34.7) 		tBuLi		25%
75.51	(34.2) 		iPrLi		33%
75.52	(34.2) 		tBuLi		30%
75.53	(34.2) 		EtLi		39%
75.54	(34.2) 				38%
75.55			EtLi		64%
75.56			EtLi		46%
75.57	(75.57) 		EtLi		62%

75.58			iPrLi		24%
75.59	(34.1) 		EtLi		70%

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 75.75

Step A

To a solution of aldehyde (2.5g) in ether (50ml) at 0°C was added EtMgBr (4.56ml) dropwise. The heterogenous mixture was stirred for 2hr at 0°C and then poured into a beaker of saturated ammonium chloride (25ml), ice and CH₂Cl₂ (30ml). After the biphasic mixture stirred for 10min, the organic layer was separated, washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the product (2.41g, 95%)

Step B

To a solution of alcohol from Step A above (1g) in toluene at room temperature was added DPPA. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and DBU was added and let stir for 12hr at room temperature. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with water, 1N HCl and dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purified by preparative plate chromatography (hexane/EtOAc 20/1) to give the product (840mg, 75%).

Step C

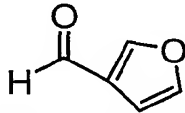
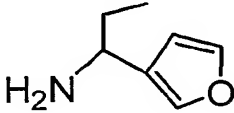
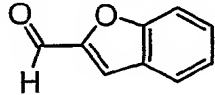
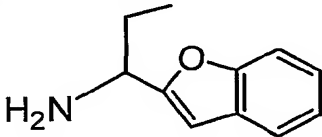
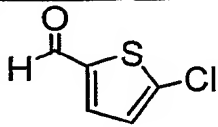
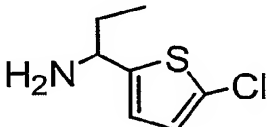
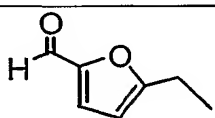
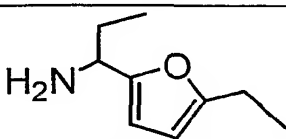
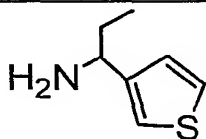
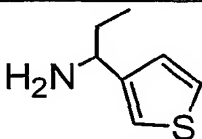
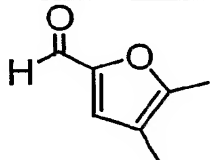
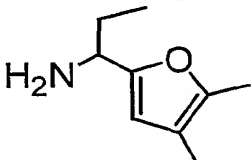
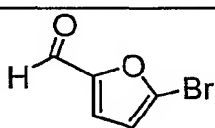
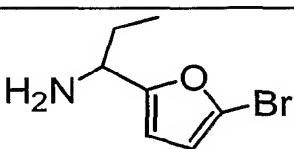
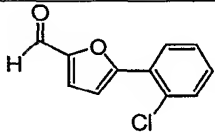
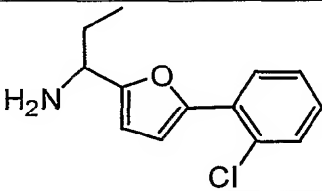
To a solution of azide (730mg) from Step B above in THF (7ml) was added PPh₃ (1g). The heterogenous solution was stirred for 12hr, whereupon water (1.5ml) was added. The mixture was refluxed overnight, cooled to room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. Ether and 1N HCl were added to the residue. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0°C, basified with NaOH pellets and extracted with ether. The ether layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the product (405mg, 62%).

Step D

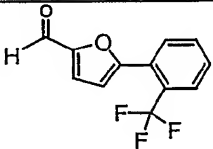
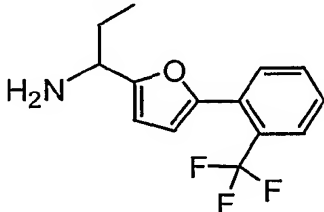
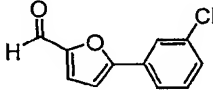
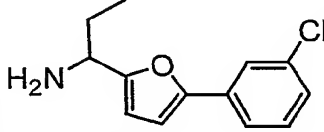
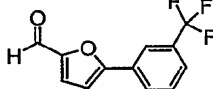
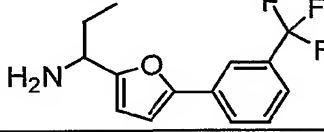
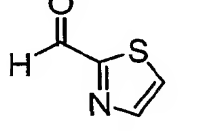
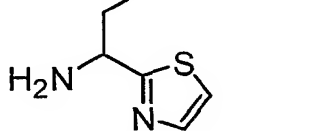
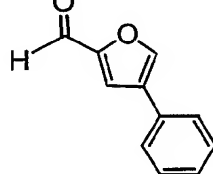
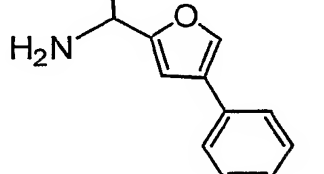
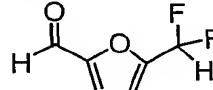
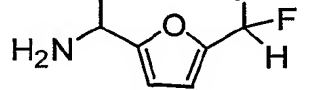
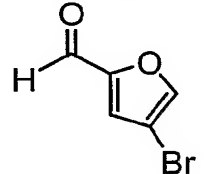
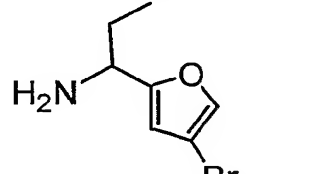
To a solution of azide in THF at -10°C was added LiAlH₄ portionwise. The heterogenous solution was stirred at room temperature for 1hr and then refluxed for 4hr. The solution was cooled to 0°C and water, 2M NaOH and ether were added to the reaction. The mixture was filtered through a celite pad. The filtrate was treated with 3N HCl. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0°C, basified with NaOH pellets and extracted with ether. The ether layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the product.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 75.76-75.90

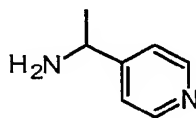
Following a similar procedure set forth in Preparative Example 75.75, and using the reduction procedure indicated, the following amines were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Aldehyde	Reducing Step	Product	% Yield
75.76		D		43%
75.77		C		36%
75.78		D		32%
75.79		C		42%
75.80		D		56%
75.81		D		35%
75.82		C		13%
75.83		C		42%

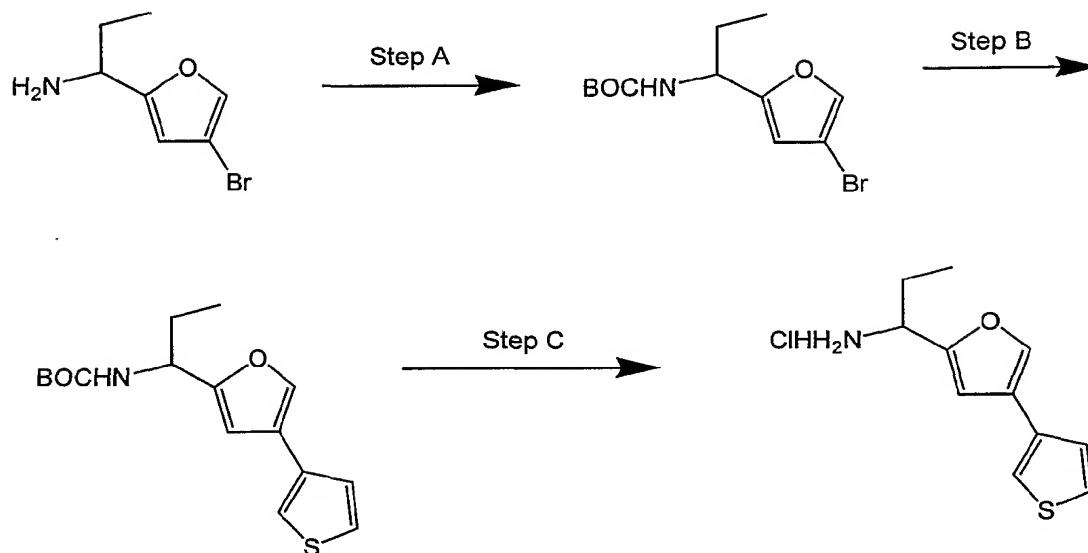
187

75.84		C		39%
75.85		C		26%
75.86		C		25%
75.87		C		14%
75.88	(34.14) 	C		49%
75.89	(34.13) 	C		34%
75.90		C		44%

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 76

The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously
 10 described in *J. Med. Chem.* 1996, 39, 3319-3323.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 76.1

5

Step A

To a solution of amine from Preparative Example 75.90 (2.22g) in CH₂Cl₂ (50ml) at 0°C was added TEA (3.03ml) followed by BOC₂O (2.85g). The heterogenous mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature overnight. 10% Citric acid was added to the reaction and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine and dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by flash column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc 10:1) to afford 2.7g of an oil (81%).

10

Step B

Following the procedure from Preparative Example 13.4, Step A, but using the product from Step A above (450mg) and 3-thiophene boronic acid (284mg), the product was prepared (325mg, 71%).

15

Step C

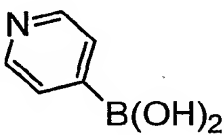
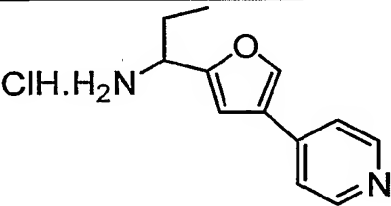
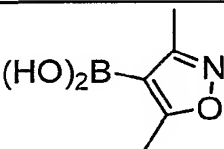
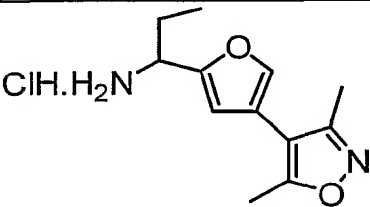
To the product from Step B (325g) was added 4M HCl in dioxane (1.31ml) and let stir for 1hr. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and taken up in CH₂Cl₂ and concentrated *in vacuo* again. This procedure was repeated 5 times to afford a semisolid (89%).

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 76.2-76.3

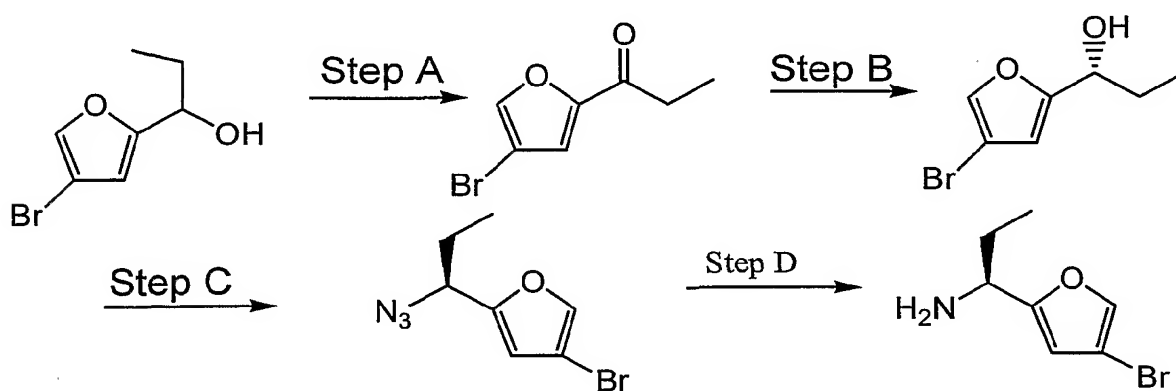
Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 76.1, but using the commercially available boronic acids, the indicated amines were prepared.

5

Prep Ex.	Boronic Acid	Product	Yield (%)
76.2			70%
76.3			35%

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 76.10

10

Step A

The product from Preparative Example 75.75, Step A (2.5g) was reacted via the Preparative Example 13.11, Step B to give the ketone (1.93g, 78%).

Step B

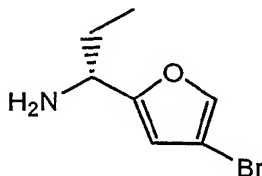
To a solution of ketone from Step A above (500mg) in THF (5ml) at 0°C was added S-2-methyl-CBS-oxazaborolidine (0.98ml) dropwise followed by BH₃.Me₂S (1.48ml). The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2hr and was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir overnight. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated with MeOH (10ml). After stirring for 20min, the reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ and washed with 1M HCl, saturated sodium bicarbonate, water and brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative plate chromatography (Hex/EtOAc 4:1) to afford 650mg of an oil (89%).

Step C

The chiral alcohol from Step B above was reacted via the Preparative Example 75.75 Step B to give the azide.

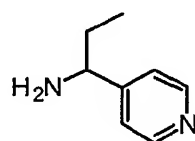
Step D

The azide from Step C above was reacted via the Preparative Example 75.75 Step C to give the amine product.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 76.11

The desired compound was prepared as in Preparative Example 76.10, but using the R-2-methyl-CBS-oxazaborolidine in step B.

191

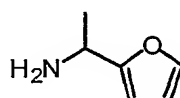
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 77

5

The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *J. Med. Chem.* 1996, 39, 3319-3323.

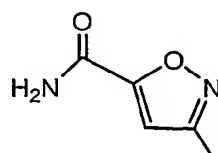
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 78

10



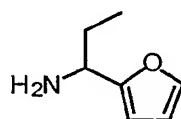
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1991, 39, 181-183.

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 78.1

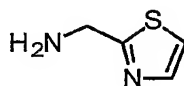
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *J. Organometallic Chem.* 1998, 567, 31-37.

20

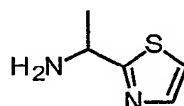
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 79

25

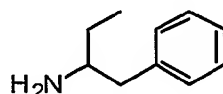
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 1991, 39, 181-183.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 80

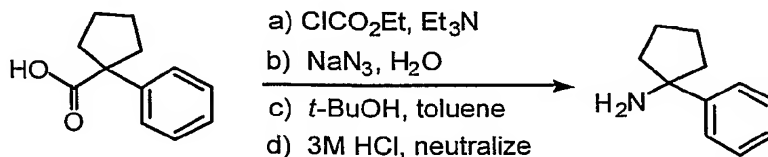
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in a) *Synthesis* **1987**, 998-1001, b) *Synthesis* **1996**, 641-646 and c) *J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, 34, 2176-2186.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 81

The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in a) *Synthesis* **1987**, 998-1001, b) *Synthesis* **1996**, 641-646 and c) *J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, 34, 2176-2186.

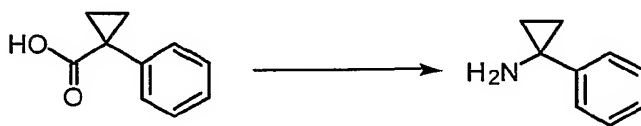
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 82

The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *J. Med. Chem.* **1988**, 31, 2176-2186.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 83

To a solution of carboxylic acid (1.5 g, 7.89 mmol) in H₂O/acetone (1:10/12 mL total) at 0°C was added Et₃N (1.43 mL, 10.3 mmol) followed by addition of ethyl chloroformate (0.83 mL, 8.68 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for 30 min after which a solution of NaN₃ (0.77g, 11.8 mmol) in H₂O (2 mL) was added dropwise. The resultant heterogenous mixture was stirred for 1 h at 0°C, then cold water (5 mL) and Et₂O (10 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (2 x 10 mL). The organic layers were combined, toluene (20 mL) was added, and the organic layers were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to a volume of 20 mL. *t*-BuOH (5 mL) was added and the mixture was refluxed for 12h. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the crude residue was taken up in 3M HCl (30 mL) and was heated at reflux for 12h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and extracted with Et₂O (3 x 15 mL). The aqueous layer was cooled to 0 °C and solid NaOH pellets were added until pH ~12 was reached. The aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 30 mL) and the combined organic layers were dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 0.78 g (61% yield) of an oil [MH⁺ 162]. This material was used without further purification.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 84



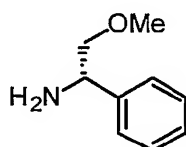
The corresponding cyclopropyl analog was prepared according to the procedure outlined in Preparative Example 83.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 85



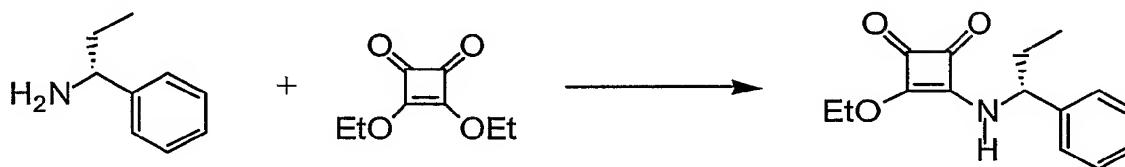
The corresponding cyclohexyl analog was prepared according to the procedure outlined in Preparative Example 83.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 86



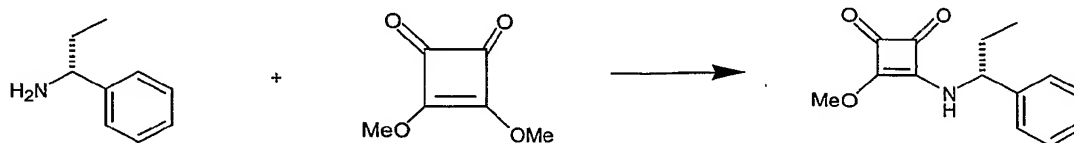
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *J. Org. Chem.* **1978**, 43, 892-898.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 87



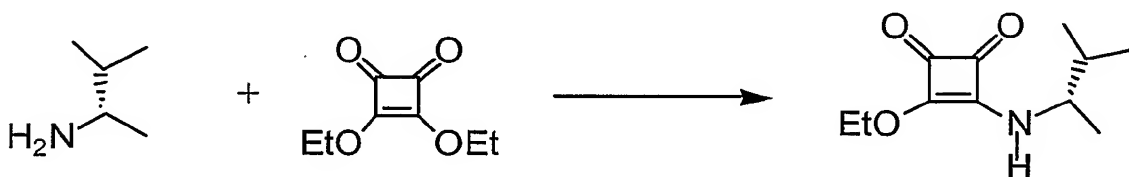
A mixture of (R)-(+)-phenylpropanolamine (8.2 g), 3,4-diethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (10 g) and absolute EtOH (75 mL) was stirred at 0-25°C for 12 hrs. Filtration and concentration of the filtrate gave a syrup which was chilled in the freezer to give a solid. Trituration of the solid with diethyl ether gave the desired product (10.5 g, 71%, MH⁺ = 260).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 87.1



(R)-1-phenyl propylamine (4.82ml) and 3,4-dimethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (5.03g) were combined in MeOH (40ml) and stirred overnight. Reaction concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, 1:40) to yield
5 2.75g of product (31%, MH⁺=246).

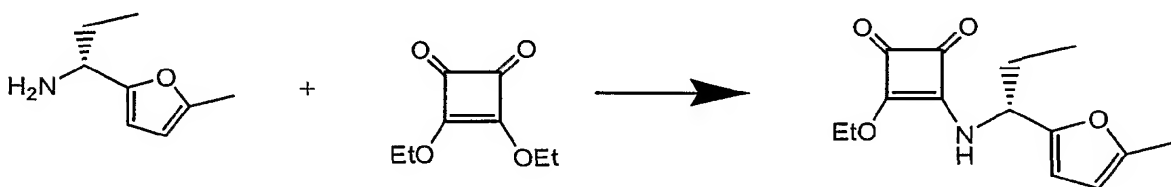
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88



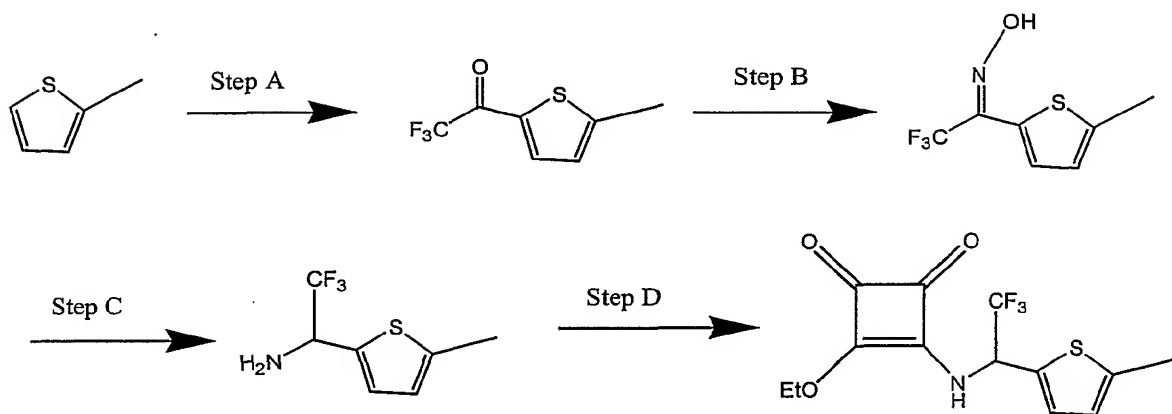
A mixture of (S)-(+)-3-methyl-2-butylamine (3.0 g), 3,4-diethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (5 g) and absolute EtOH (100 mL) was stirred at 0-25°C for 12 hrs.

15 Filtration and concentration of the filtrate gave a syrup which solidified upon dilution with Et₂O. Trituration of the solid with diethyl ether gave the desired product as a solid (4.4 g, 72%, MH⁺ = 212).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88.1



A mixture of amine from Preparative Example 75.1 (370mg), 3,4-diethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (0.39ml) and absolute EtOH (5ml) was stirred at room
25 temperature overnight. Purification by preparative plate chromatography (3% EtOH/CH₂Cl₂) afforded the desired product (263mg, 37%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88.2Step A

2-Methylthiophene (3g) was dissolved in THF and cooled to -40°C . N-butyllithium (2.5M in hexane, 12.24ml) added dropwise and let stir at -40°C for 30min. $\text{CuBr} \cdot (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{S}$ (6.29g) added and let warm to -25°C where the trifluoroacetic anhydride (4.32ml) was added. The reaction was stirred at -15°C over the weekend. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer washed with brine, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 4.59g of an oil (78%).

Step B

The product from Step A (4.58g), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (3g), sodium acetate (4.4g), EtOH (75ml) and H_2O (7.5ml) were combined and heated to 75°C overnight. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, taken up 1N HCl, extracted with ether, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 4.58g of the product (93%, $\text{MH}^+ = 210$).

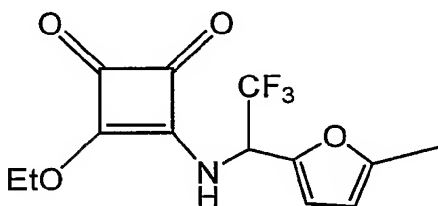
Step C

The product from Step B above (4.5g) was dissolved in TFA (40ml) and cooled to 0°C . Zn powder (4.2g) was added portionwise and let reaction warm to room temperature and stir overnight. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, taken up in 1N NaOH, extracted with ether, dried with MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 3.43g of the product (80%).

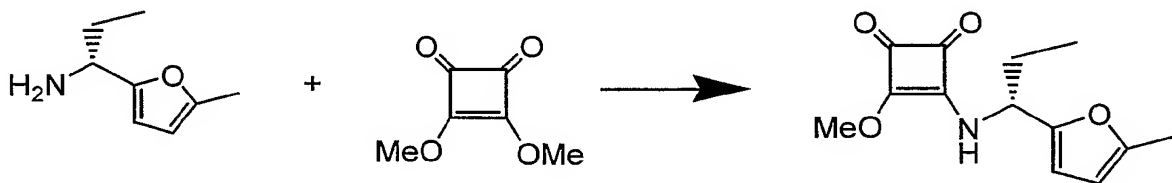
Step D

The product from Step C (526mg), 3,4-diethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (0.4ml) and absolute EtOH (10ml) was stirred at room temperature overnight.

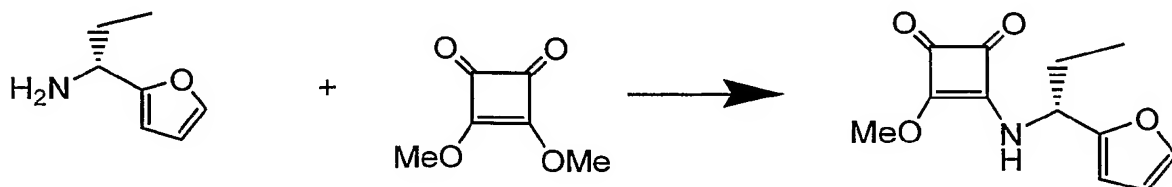
- 5 Purification by preparative plate chromatography (10% EtOAc/Hex) to give 178mg of product (21%, MH+=320).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88.3

Following a similar procedure as described in Preparative Example 88.2, but instead using 2-methylfuran, the above cyclobutenedione intermediate was prepared.

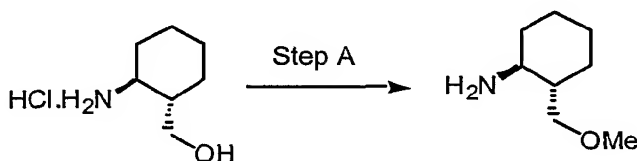
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88.4

20 The amine from Preparative Example 75.1 (973mg) and the dimethoxysquarate (870mg) were dissolved in MeOH (20ml) and stirred for 3 days. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, 1%) to yield 325mg of product (19%, MH+=249.8).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 88.5

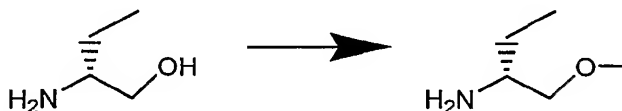
The amine from Preparative Example 75.9 (323mg) and the dimethoxysquarate (426mg) were dissolved in MeOH (10ml) and stirred over the weekend. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified via flash column chromatography (MeOH/CH₂Cl₂, 1:20) to yield 407mg of product (57%, MH⁺=235.8).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 89

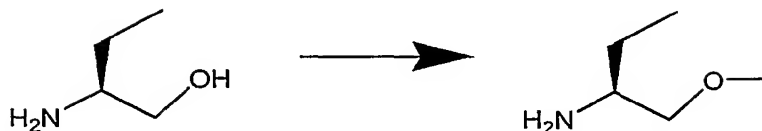


To a solution of KH (0.45 g, 11.3 mmol) in THF (15 mL) at room temperature was added amine hydrochloride (0.85 g, 5.1 mmol) portionwise to afford a heterogenous reaction mixture. The mixture was allowed to stand overnight (12h) and MeI (0.32 mL, 5.1 mmol) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 6h after which the mixture was carefully poured into cold brine (125 mL). The mixture was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 25 mL) and the organic layers were combined. The organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the crude product as an oil. This material was carried on crude to the coupling step without further purification or characterization.

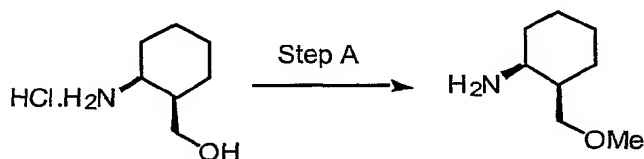
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 89.1



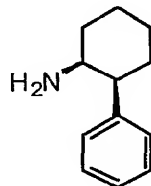
To a solution of KH (1.1g) in THF (20ml) at room temperature was added (R)-2-amino-1-butanol (48ml) dropwise to afford a heterogenous mixture. The mixture was allowed to stand overnight (18hr) and then MeI (1.59ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 4hr after which brine was added. Extracted with ether, dried with K₂CO₃, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 1.75g of an oil.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 89.2

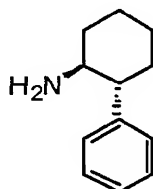
To a solution of KH (1.1g) in THF (20ml) at room temperature was added (S)-2-amino-1-butanol 48ml) dropwise to afford a heterogenous mixture. The mixture was allowed to stand overnight (18hr) and then MeI (1.59ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 4hr after which brine was added. Extracted with ether, dried with K₂CO₃, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford 1.75g of an oil.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 90

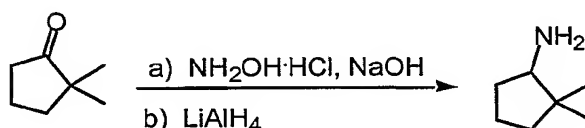
The corresponding *cis* analog was prepared in an analogous fashion utilizing the procedure described in Preparative Example 89. This material was also used without further purification.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 91

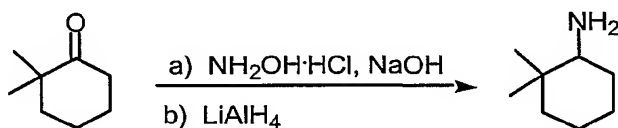
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *J. Org. Chem.* **1987**, 52, 4437-4444.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 92

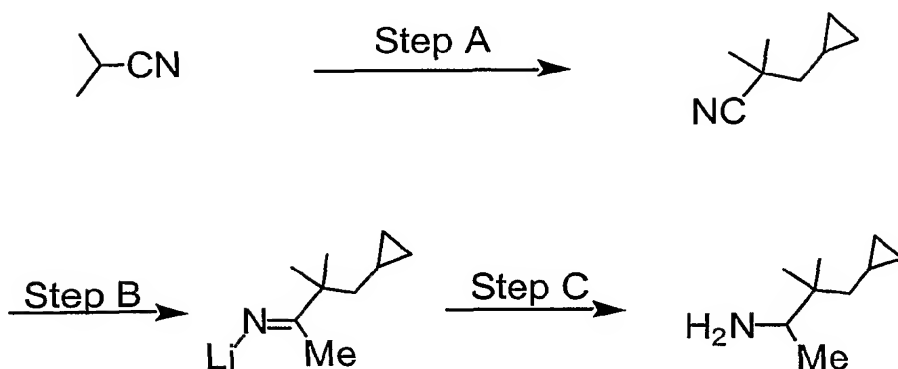
The desired compound was prepared according to methods previously described in *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **1962**, 35, 11-16.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 93

The desired amine was prepared from the corresponding ketone according to standard methods previously described in a) *Synthesis* **1987**, 998-1001, b) *Synthesis* **1996**, 641-646 and c) *J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, 34, 2176-2186.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 94

The desired amine was prepared from the corresponding ketone according to standard methods previously described in a) *Synthesis* **1987**, 998-1001, b) *Synthesis* **1996**, 641-646 and c) *J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, 34, 2176-2186.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 95

5

Step A

Lithium hexamethyldisilylazide (34 mL, 1M in THF) was added dropwise to a – 78°C THF (20 mL) solution of isobutyronitrile (2.8 mL). After 40 min, cyclopropylmethylbromide (5 g) was added and the mixture warmed to and stirred at 25°C overnight. After cooling to 0°C, 1M HCl (aq) was added and the mixture was extracted with diethyl ether, dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* at 0°C to give the desired product (4.5 g).

15 Step B

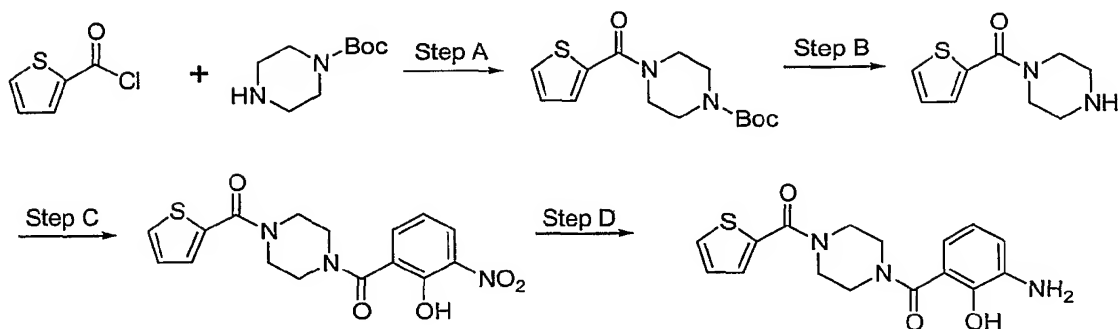
Methyl Lithium (17 mL, 1.4 M in Et_2O) was added to the product from Step A above (1.5 g) in Et_2O (anhydrous) at 0°C. The mixture was stirred at 0-25°C overnight, then diluted with 3M HCl (aq), extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered, concentrated *in vacuo* at 0°C and used directly in Step C.

20

Step C

The product from Step B above was added to a slurry of NaBH_4 (1.4 g) in isopropanol (50 mL) at 0°C, then the mixture was stirred at reflux for 8 hr and at room temperature for 48 hrs. Water was added and the mixture was stirred for 30 min, then extracted with diethyl ether, dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was diluted with CH_2Cl_2 and extracted with 3M HCl. The organic phase was discarded and the aqueous phase was basified with NaOH (aq) and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . Drying over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtering, and concentration *in vacuo* gave the desired compound (0.5 g).

25

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 96

5

Step A

2-Thiophenecarbonyl chloride (2.0mL, 18.7mmol) was dissolved in 100mL dichloromethane. After addition of diisopropylethylamine (4.1mL, 23.4mmol) and Boc-piperazine (3.66g, 19.7mmol), the mixture was stirred for 4h at room temperature. The resulting mixture was put into water (500mL) and acidified with 3N HCl to pH~1. Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) and drying over sodium sulfate resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in the next step without any further purification. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 1.60 (s, 9H), 3.29 (dd, 4H), 3.69 (dd, 4H), 7.23 (dd, 1H), 7.49 (d, 1H), 7.79 (d, 1H).

15

Step B

The crude material from Step A was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (75mL, 4/1). After stirring for 2h, the reaction mixture was put into 1N sodium hydroxide (400mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) and drying over sodium sulfate resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in Step C without any further purification. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 2.81 (dd, 4H), 3.63 (dd, 4H), 7.21 (dd, 1H), 7.46 (d, 1H), 7.82 (d, 1H).

20

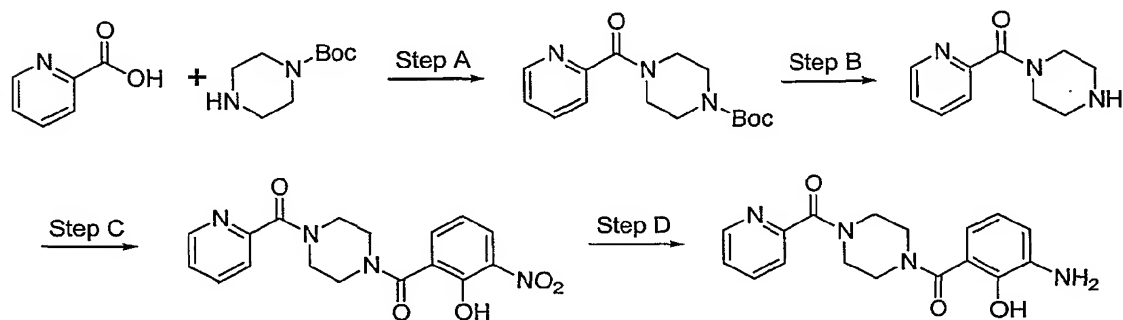
Step C

The crude material (3.50g, 17.8mmol) from Step B was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL). After addition of diisopropylethylamine (18.7mL, 107mmol), 3-nitrosalicylic acid (3.3g, 18.0mmol), and PyBrOP (10.4g, 22.3mmol), the resulting mixture was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium hydroxide (200mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x200mL) removed all PyBrOP by-products. The aqueous phase was acidified with 3N HCl and subsequently extracted with dichloromethane (3x 100mL). The combined organic phases of the acidic extraction were dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated, and finally purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 10/1) to yield the desired product (2.31g, 34 % over 3 steps). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.30-3.90 (m, 8H), 7.10-8.20 (m, double signals due to E/Z-isomers, 6H), 10.82 (s, 1H).

Step D

The nitro-compound (2.3g, 6.4mmol) from Step C was dissolved in methanol (50mL) and stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere over night. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and washed thoroughly with methanol. Finally, the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 10/1) to yield the desired product (1.78g, 84%). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.30-3.90 (m, 8H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.55 (d, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H), 8.15 (d, 1H), 10.85 (bs, 1H).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 97



Step A

Picolinic acid (3.0g, 24.3mmol) was suspended in SOCl_2 (15mL). After addition of dimethylformamide (5 drops), the reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours.

- 5 Evaporation of the solvent yielded the corresponding acid chloride as HCl-salt. Without any further purification, the solid was suspended in 120mL dichloromethane. After addition of diisopropylethylamine (12.7mL, 73mmol) and Boc-piparazine (4.8g, 25.5mmol), the reaction was stirred over night at room temperature. The resulting mixture was put into water (500mL) and extracted with dichloromethane (2x100mL).
- 10 Drying over sodium sulfate resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in Step B without any further purification. ^1H NMR (300MHz, d_6 -DMSO) 1.63 (s, 9H), 3.21 (dd, 4H), 3.61 (dd, 4H), 7.57 (dd, 1H), 7.63 (d, 1H), 7.98 (dd, 1H), 8.70 (d, 1H).

Step B

- 15 The crude material from Step A was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (75mL, 4/1). After stirring for 2days, the reaction mixture was put into 1N sodium hydroxide (400mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) and drying over sodium sulfate resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in Step C without any further purification. ^1H NMR (300MHz, d_6 -DMSO) 2.77 (dd, 2H),
- 20 2.83 (dd, 1H), 3.38 (dd, 2H), 3.64 (dd, 1H), 7.58 (dd, 1H), 7.62 (d, 1H), 8.00 (dd, 1H), 8.67 (d, 1H).

Step C

- The crude material (1.35g, 7.06mmol) from Step B was dissolved in
- 25 dichloromethane (50mL). After addition of diisopropylethylamine (3.7mL, 21.2mmol), 3-nitrosalicylic acid (1.36g, 7.41mmol), and PyBrOP (3.62g, 7.77mmol), the resulting mixture was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium hydroxide (300mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) removed any PyBrOP products. The aqueous phase was acidified with 3N HCl. Adjustment of the
- 30 pH with saturated sodium carbonate solution to almost neutral crushed the desired compound out of solution. The aqueous phase was subsequently extracted with dichloromethane (3x 100mL).

The combined organic layers of the neutral extraction were dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated, and finally purified by column chromatography

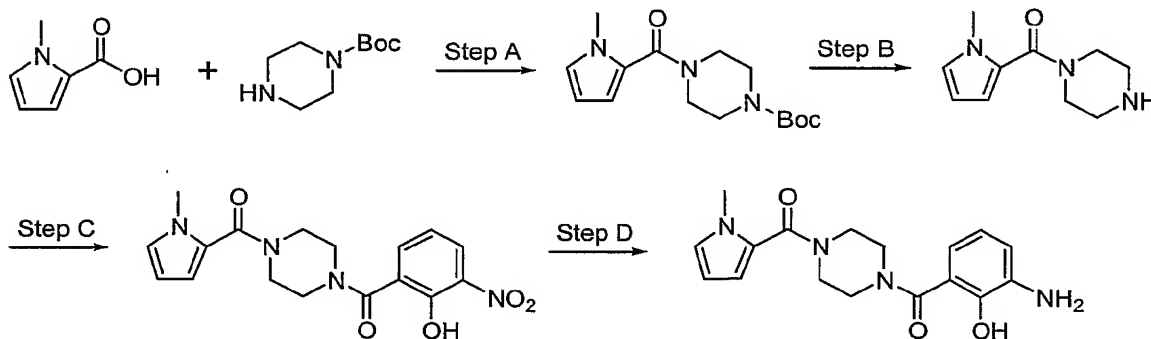
(dichloromethane/methanol = 20/1) to yield the desired product (1.35g, 16% over 3 steps). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.30-3.95 (m, 8H), 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.61 (m, 1H), 7.73 (d, 2H), 8.03 (m, 1H), 8.17 (m, 1H), 8.69 (m, 1H), 10.82 (s, 1H).

Step D

The nitro-compound (1.35g, 3.79mmol) from Step C was dissolved in methanol (60mL) and stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere over night. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and washed thoroughly with methanol.

Finally, the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 20/1) to yield the desired product (1.10g, 89 %). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.50-3.85 (m, 8H), 6.47 (dd 1H), 6.74 (m, 2H), 7.59 (dd, 1H), 7.71 (d, 1H), 8.04 (dd, 1H), 8.68 (d, 1H).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 98



Step A

1-Methyl-2-pyrrolicarboxylic acid (2.5g, 20.0mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (50mL). After addition of PyBrOP (16.3g, 35.0mmol),
5 diisopropylethylamine (14.0mL, 73.0mmol) and Boc-piparazine (5.5g, 30.0mmol), the reaction was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium hydroxide (200mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) removed all PyBrOP by-products. The aqueous phase was acidified with 3N HCl. Adjustment of the pH with saturated sodium carbonate solution to almost neutral precipitated the desired
10 compound. The aqueous phase was subsequently extracted with dichloromethane (3x 100mL). The combined organic phases of the neutral extraction were dried over sodium sulfate. Removal of the solvent resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in Step B without any further purification. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 1.59 (s, 9H) 3.21 (dd, 4H), 3.61 (dd, 4H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 6.11 (dd, 1H), 6.33 (d, 1H), 7.01 (d,
15 1H).

Step B

The crude material from Step A was dissolved in trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (75mL, 4/1). After stirring for 3h, the reaction mixture was put
20 into 1N sodium hydroxide (400mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (3x100mL) and drying over sodium sulfate resulted in sufficiently pure product that was used in Step C without any further purification. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 2.79 (dd, 4H), 3.62 (dd, 4H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 6.11 (dd, 1H), 6.37 (d, 1H), 6.96 (d, 1H).

Step C

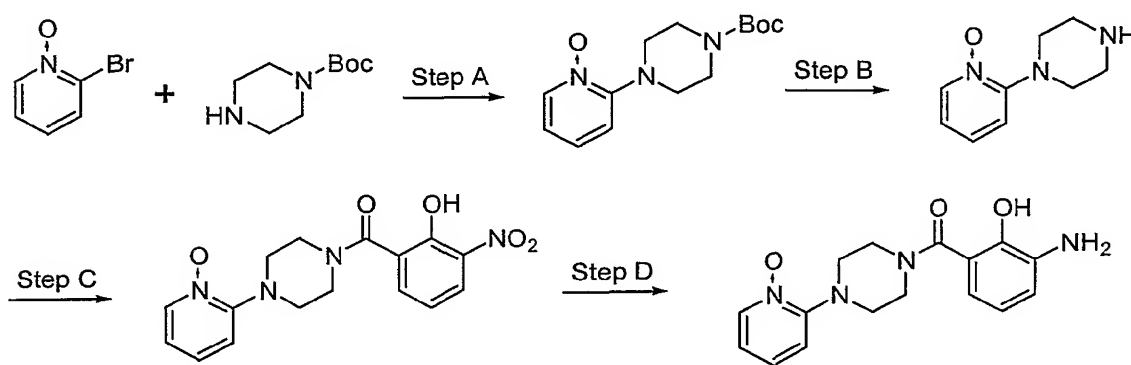
The crude material (3.15g, 16.3mmol) from Step B was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL). After addition of diisopropylethylamine (8.5mL, 49.0mmol), 3-nitrosalicylic acid (3.13g, 17.1mmol), and PyBrOP (9.11g, 19.6mmol), the resulting mixture was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium
30 hydroxide (400mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) removed all PyBrOP products. The aqueous phase was then carefully acidified with 3N HCl until the color of the solution changes from orange to yellow and the desired compound crashed out of solution.

The aqueous phase was subsequently extracted with dichloromethane (3x 100mL). The combined organic layers of the acidic extraction were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to yield the desired product. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.35-3.85 (m, 8H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 6.13 (dd, 1H), 6.45 (d, 1H), 7.01 (s, 1H), 7.22 (dd, 1H), 7.70 (d, 1H), 8.16 (d, 1H), 10.83 (s, 2H).

Step D

The crude nitro-compound from Step C was suspended in methanol (60mL) and stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere over night. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and washed thoroughly with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 10/1) to yield the desired product (2.61g, 40 % for 4 steps). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.45-4.80 (m, 8H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 6.17 (dd, 1H), 6.45 (m, 2H), 6.78 (m, 2H), 7.01 (d, 1H).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 99



Step A

2-Bromopyridine N-oxide hydrochloride (1.13g, 5.37mmol) and Boc-piperazine (1.50g, 8.06mmol) were heated to 80° C in pyridine (10mL) over night. The reaction mixture was put into water (300mL) and then extracted with dichloromethane (2x100mL). The combined organic phases were dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated, and finally purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 10/1) to yield the desired product (500mg, 33 %).

¹H NMR (300MHz, d-CDCl₃) 1.60 (s, 9H), 3.46 (dd, 4H), 3.78 (dd, 4H), 6.99 (m, 2H), 7.37 (dd, 1H), 8.33 (d, 1H).

Step B

The purified product (500mg, 1.79mmol) was stirred for 30 min with 4N HCl/dioxane (15mL). Evaporation of the solvent yielded the crude amine (465mg) as multiple HCl-salt which was used in Step C without any further purification.

¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.38 (m, 4H), 4.81 (m, 4H), 7.34 (dd, 1H), 7.55 (d, 1H), 7.86 (dd, 1H), 8.55 (d, 1H).

Step C

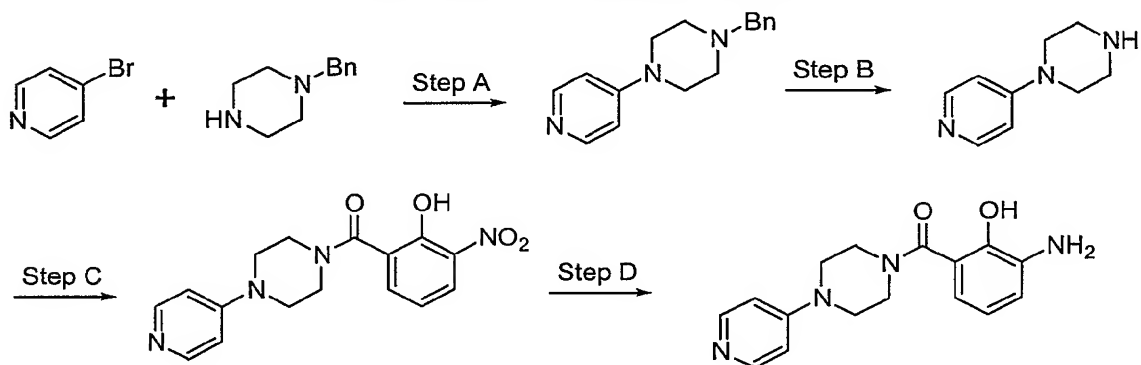
The crude material (370mg, 1.48mmol) from Step B was suspended in dichloromethane (20mL). After addition of diisopropylethylamine (2.6mL, 14.8mmol), 3-nitrosalicylic acid (406mg, 2.22mmol), and PyBrOP (1.21g, 2.59mmol), the mixture was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium hydroxide (50mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x50mL) removed all PyBrOP products. The aqueous phase was then carefully acidified (pH ~ 4-5) with 3N HCl and extracted with dichloromethane (3x 50mL). The combined organic layers of the acidic extraction were dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 10/1) to yield the desired product (330mg, 65%).

LCMS calculated: 344.1, found: (M+1)⁺ 345.1

Step D

Sodium hydrosulfite (1.05g) was dissolved in water (3.0mL) to yield a 1.5N solution. Addition of dioxane (3.0mL) was followed by injection of conc. ammonium hydroxide (0.60mL, yields a 1.0N concentration). After addition of the nitro-compound (100mg, 0.29mmol), the reaction mixture was stirred for 0.5h. Subsequently, the solvent was removed and the residue suspended in dichloromethane/methanol (10/1). Filtration through Celite removed most of the salts. Final purification by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol = 5/1) yielded the desired product (68mg, 75%).

LCMS calculated: 314.14, found: (M+1)⁺ 315.1

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 100Step A

4-Bromopyridine hydrochloride (3.0g, 15.4mmol) was dissolved in water (15mL). After addition of N-benzylpiperazine (14.8mL, 85.0mmol) and 500mg copper sulfate, the reaction mixture was heated overnight to 140° C. The resulting product was extracted with ether (5x75mL), dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. Final purification by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/NH₄OH = 10/1/0.1) yielded the desired product (2.16g, 55%). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d-CDCl₃) 2.68 (dd, 4H), 3.45 (dd, 4H), 6.76 (d, 2H), 7.40 (m, 5H), 8.38 (d, 2H).

Step B

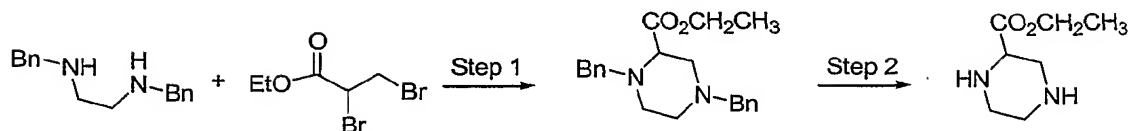
The benzylamine (2.16g, 8.54mmol) from Step A, ammonium formate (2.71g, 43.0mmol) and Pd(C) (10%, 1.0g) was suspended in methanol (50mL) and refluxed for 3h. The palladium was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated. The sufficiently pure product was used in Step C without any further purification. ¹H NMR (300MHz, d-CDCl₃) 2.48 (bs, 1H), 3.13 (dd, 4H), 3.41 (dd, 4H), 7.78 (d, 2H), 8.39 (d, 2H).

Step C

The crude material (1.15g, 7.06mmol) from Step B was dissolved in dichloromethane (50mL). After addition of diisopropylethylamine (4.7mL, 42.4mmol), 3-nitrosalicylic acid (1.94g, 10.6mmol), and PyBrOP (5.78g, 12.3mmol), the resulting mixture was stirred over night at room temperature before being put into 1N sodium hydroxide (300mL). Extraction with dichloromethane (2x100mL) removed all PyBrOP products. The aqueous phase was carefully acidified to pH ~ 5-6 with 3N HCl and extracted with dichloromethane (3x 100mL). The combined organic layers of the neutral extraction were dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated, and finally purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/NH₄OH = 10/1/0.1) to yield the desired product (850mg, 37% for 2 steps).

Step D

The nitro-compound (850mg, 2.59mmol) from Step C was dissolved in methanol (40mL) and stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere over night. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and washed thoroughly with methanol. Finally, the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by column chromatography (dichloromethane/methanol/NH₄OH = 10/1/0.1) to yield the desired product (650g, 84 %). ¹H NMR (300MHz, d₆-DMSO) 3.40-3.75 (bm, 8H), 6.49 (dd, 1H), 6.76 (m, 2H), 6.93 (d, 2H), 8.28 (d, 2H).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 101Step 1

N,N'-Dibenzyl-ethane-1,2-diamine (20mL, 0.0813mol), triethylamine (22.66mL, 0.1626mol) and benzene (100mL) were combined in a round bottom flask. A solution of 2,3-dibromo-propionic acid ethyl ester (11.82mL, 0.0813mol) in benzene (50mL) was added dropwise. The solution was refluxed over night and monitored by TLC (20% ethyl acetate/hexane). The reaction was cooled to room temperature, then filtered and washed with benzene. The filtrate was concentrated then purified by column chromatography (15% ethyl acetate/hexane). The product was isolated as an oil (25.42g, 0.0752mol, 92%). MS: calculated: 338.20, found: 339.2

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) 1.23 (t, 3H), 2.48 (m, 3H), 2.62 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 3.07 (m, 1H), 3.30 (m, 1H), 3.42 (d, 1H), 3.56 (m, 2H), 3.91 (d, 1H), 4.17 (m, 2H), 7.27 (m, 10H).

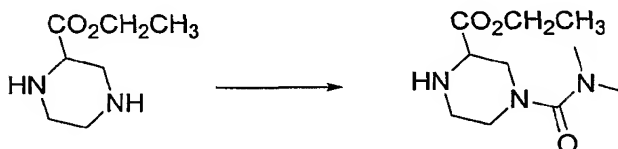
Step 2

In a Parr shaker vessel, the ester (25.43g, 0.075mol) and methanol (125mL) were combined. The vessel was purged with argon and palladium catalyst (5% on carbon, 2.5g) was added. The system was shaken under an atmosphere of hydrogen overnight. TLC (20% ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated that reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and washed with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated and the product isolated as a solid (11.7g, 0.074mol, 98%).

MS: calculated: 158.11, found:159.2 ^1H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl_3) 1.27 (t, 3H), 2.70 (m, 4H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 3.13 (dd, 1H), 3.43 (dd, 1H), 4.18 (m, 2H).

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 102



Piperazine-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (3.11g, 0.0197mol),
10 diisopropylethylamine (5.15mL, 0.0296mol) and methylene chloride (200mL) were
combined in a round bottom flask. While stirring at room temperature, a solution of
N,N-dimethylcarbamoyl chloride (1.81mL, 0.0197mol) in methylene chloride (20mL)
was added dropwise. The reaction was stirred for one hour. After this time the
reaction was concentrated and carried on to the next step without further purification.
15 (99% yield).


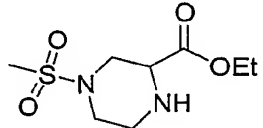
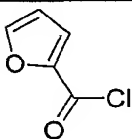
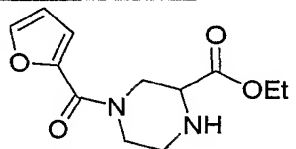
MS: calculated: 229.14, found:230.1

^1H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl_3) 1.30 (t, 3H), 2.85 (s, 6H), 3.10 (m, 3H), 3.31 (m, 2H), 3.60
(m, 2H), 4.21 (q, 2H).

20

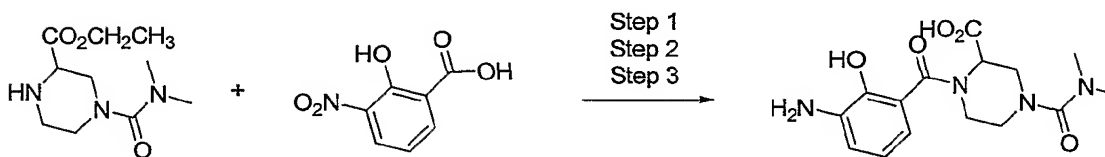
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 103-104

Following the procedure described for Example 102, the Products listed in the
table below were prepared using the commercially available chloride shown and
piperazine-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester from Preparative Example 101.

Example	Chloride	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. (M+1) ⁺
103			1. 99% 2. 237.1
104			1. 62% 2. 253.1

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 105

5

Step 1

3-Nitrosalicylic acid (3.61g, 0.0197g), DCC (2.03g, 0.0099mol) and ethyl acetate (130mL) were combined in a round bottom flask and stirred for 15min. 4-Dimethylcarbamoyl-piperazine-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (4.51g, 0.0197g) was added, and the reaction was stirred for 72 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated then dissolved in dichloromethane. The organic phase was washed once with 0.1N sodium hydroxide. The aqueous phase was back extracted once with dichloromethane. The aqueous phase was acidified and wash three times with ethyl acetate. The aqueous phase was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (5% methanol/DCM).

MS: calculated: 394.15, found: 395.0

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) 1.32 (t, 3H), 2.86 (m, 7H), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.51 (m, 4H), 4.24 (m, 3H), 7.15 (m, 1H), 7.66 (m, 1H), 8.20 (m, 1H), 10.86 (bs, 1H).

Step 2

4-Dimethylcarbamoyl-1-(2-hydroxy-3-nitro-benzoyl)-piperazine-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (0.80g, 0.002mol) and methanol (50mL) were combined in a round bottom flask. The system was purged with argon. To the solution was added 5% palladium on carbon (~100mg). The flask was purged with hydrogen and stirred overnight. The reaction was filtered through a pad of celite and washed with methanol. The material was concentrated then purified by column chromatography (6% methanol/DCM). Isolated product (0.74g, 0.002mol, 100%).

MS: calculated: 364.17, found:365.1

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) 1.27 (t, 3H), 2.85 (m, 8H), 3.18 (1H), 3.45 (m, 3H), 4.19 (m, 3H), 3.90 (m, 3H)

Step 3

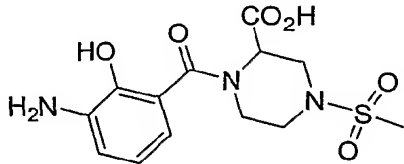
1-(3-Amino-2-hydroxy-benzoyl)-4-dimethylcarbamoyl-piperazine-2-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (0.74g, 0.002mol) was suspended in a solution of dioxane (10mL) and water (10mL). Lithium hydroxide (0.26g, 0.0061mol) was added and the mixture stirred for two hours. The solution was acidified to pH=6 with 3N HCl then extracted with butanol. The extracts were combined, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated.

MS: calculated: 336.14, found:337.1

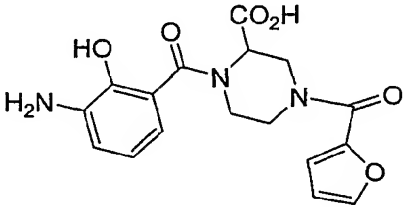
¹H NMR (300 MHz, CD₃OD) 2.86 (m, 7H), 3.23 (m, 3H), 3.54 (m, 3H), 6.92 (m, 2H), 7.23 (m, 1H).

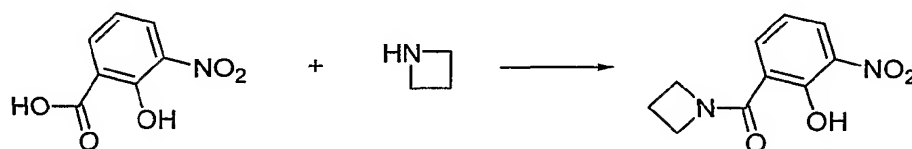
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 106-107

Following the procedure described for Example 105, the Products listed in the table below were prepared using the amine from the Preparative Example indicated and 3-nitrosalicylic acid.

Example	Aniline	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. (M+1) ⁺ 3. Note
106	103		1. 91% 2. Not observed 3. Rainey nickel used in Step 2

216

107	104		1. 24% 2. 360.0 3. For Step 1 used PyBrop/ DIEA in DCM
-----	-----	--	---

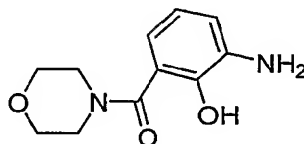
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 108Step A

3-Nitrosalicylic acid (1.0g, 5.5mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20mL). 1,3-Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.568g, 2.8mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred for approximately 10 minutes and cooled to 0°C. During this time a precipitate formed. Azetidine (0.39mL, 5.8mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred overnight and allowed to warm to room temperature. After this time the reaction was cooled to 0°C and filtered. The collected solid was washed with chilled ethyl acetate. The filtrate was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (80% EtOAc/Hex) to give the product (476mg, 39.0%).

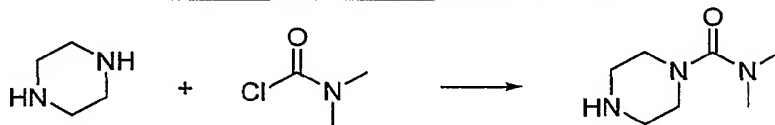
¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ2.40(m, 2H), 4.38(m, 4H), 6.97(m, 1H), 7.62(d, 1H), 8.12(d, 1H), 12.88(m, 1H) ppm.

Step B

The nitro compound (0.48g, 2.1mmol) from Preparative Example 32 Step A was dissolved in methanol (25ml) and stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo* to give the product (344mg, 90%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ2.52(m, 2H), 4.57(bs, 4H), 6.75(m, 1H), 6.90(m, 2H), 12.71(bs, 1H) ppm.

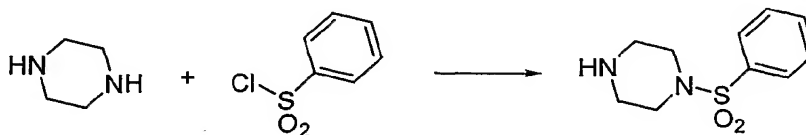
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 109

In essentially the same manner as described in Preparative Example 108
5 above, the morpholino-amine product was obtained.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 110

Piperazine (4.9g, 0.057mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL). N,N'-
Dimethylcarbamoyl chloride (1.0mL, 0.011mol) was added dropwise to the solution at
10 room temperature. The reaction was stirred for one hour. After this time 1N
potassium hydroxide (200mL) was added. The layers were separated and the
aqueous layer was extracted three times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions
were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided
the product, without further purification, as an oil (1.16g, 13%).

15 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 300 MHz) 1.95 (s, 1H), 2.83 (s, 6H), 2.86 (m, 4H), 3.20 (m, 4H).
MS: calculated: 157.12, found: 158.1.

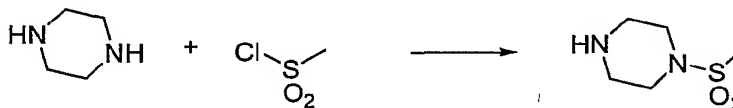
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 111

Piperazine (4.9g, 0.057mol) was dissolved in 1N HCl (100mL). A solution of phenylsulfonylchloride (1.45mL, 0.011mol) in acetonitrile (25mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for 30 minutes. After this time the reaction was extracted two times with ethyl acetate. The solution was then made basic with 1N potassium hydroxide and extracted three times with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane fractions were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product, without further purification, as a solid (1.22g, 9.4%).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 2.94 (m, 8H), 7.56 (m, 3H), 7.76 (m, 2H).

MS: calculated: 226.08, found: 227.1.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 112

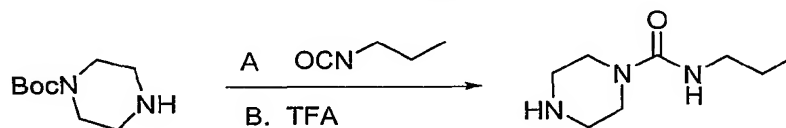


Piperazine (4.9g, 0.057mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.85mL, 0.011mol) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for 30 minutes. After this time 1N potassium hydroxide (200mL) was added. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted three times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product, without further purification, as a solid (1.07g, 11%).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 1.75 (s, 1H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 2.97 (m, 4H), 3.20 (m, 4H).

MS: calculated: 164.06, found: 165.1.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 113



Step A

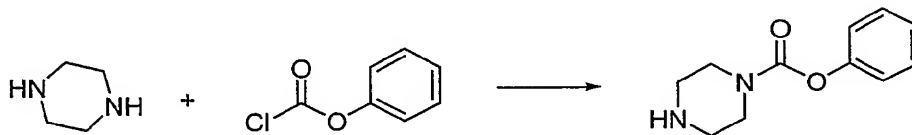
Boc-Piperazine (3.0g, 0.0161mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL). Propylisocyanate (1.51mL, 0.0161mol) was added to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for over night. After this time the reaction was diluted with 1N potassium hydroxide (200mL) and extracted six times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product as a solid.

Step B

The product of Step A above, was dissolved in a 30% trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane solution and stirred overnight. After this time a 1N potassium hydroxide solution (200 mL) was added to the reaction. The aqueous layer was extracted a total of six times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product (1.37g, 50%).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 0.92 (t, 3H), 1.52 (m, 2H), 2.89 (m, 4H), 3.01 (s, 1H), 3.18 (m, 2H), 3.37 (m, 4H), 4.61 (bs, 1H).

MS: calculated: 171.14, found: 172.0.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 114

Piperazine (4.9g, 0.0569mol) was dissolved in 1N HCl (70mL). A solution of phenylchloroformate (1.43mL, 0.0114mol) in acetonitrile (25mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for 30 minutes. After this time the reaction was extracted two times with ethyl acetate. The solution was then made basic with 1N potassium hydroxide and extracted three times with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane fractions were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product, without further purification, as a solid (2.12g, 18%).

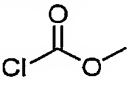
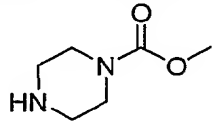
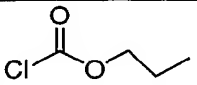
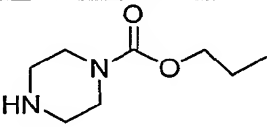
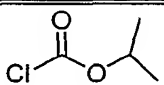
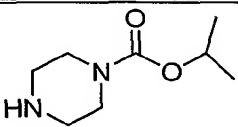
^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 1.78 (s, 1H), 2.91 (m, 4H), 3.59 (m, 4H), 7.11 (2H), 7.19 (m, 1H), 7.36 (m, 2H).

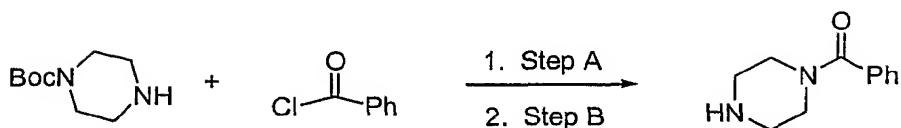
MS: calculated: 206.24, found: 207.1.

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 115-117

Following the procedure described for Example 112, the Products listed in the table below were prepared using the commercially available chloroformate shown and piperazine.

Example	Chloroformate	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. $(\text{M}+1)^+$
115			1. 54% 2. 144.9
116			1. 17% 2. 173.0
117			1. 69% 2. 173.0

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 118Step A

5 Boc-Piperazine (3.01g, 0.0161mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL) along with diisopropylethylamine (5.61mL, 0.0322mol). Benzoylchloride (1.87mL, 0.0161mol) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for several hours. After this time the reaction was concentrated and the product was purified by column chromatography (10% MeOH/DCM). Boc-Protected

10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 300 MHz) 1.47 (s, 9H), 3.45 (m, 8H), 7.41 (m, 5H).

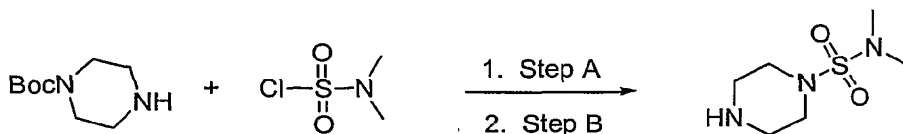
MS: calculated: 290.16, found: 290.8.

Step B

15 The product from Step A above, was dissolved in a 50% trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane solution and stirred overnight. After this time the reaction was diluted with 1N potassium hydroxide (200mL) and the organic layer was separated. The aqueous phase was then extracted six times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and

20 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 300 MHz) 1.92 (s, 1H), 2.87 (m, 4H), 3.52 (m, 4H), 7.39 (s, 5H).

MS: calculated: 190.11, found: 191.1.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 119

Step A

Boc-Piperazine (3.0g, 0.0161mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100mL) along with diisopropylethylamine (3.1mL, 0.0177mol). N,N'-dimethylsulfamoyl chloride (1.73mL, 0.0161mol) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for several hours. After this time the reaction was diluted with water (100mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted six times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product, without further purification, as a solid (4.53g).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 1.47 (s, 9H), 2.84 (s, 6H), 3.21 (m, 4H), 3.48 (m, 4H).

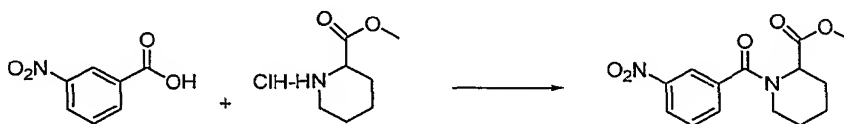
MS: calculated: 293.14, found: 194.1 (M-Boc) $^+$.

Step B

The product from Step A above, was dissolved in a 30% trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane solution and stirred overnight. After this time the reaction was diluted with water and 1N potassium hydroxide was used to make the aqueous layer slightly basic. The aqueous layer was extracted a total of seven times with dichloromethane. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. Filtration and concentration provided the product (2.96g).

^1H NMR (CDCl_3 , 300 MHz) 2.03 (s, 1H), 2.83 (s, 6H), 2.92 (m, 4H), 3.23 (m, 4H).

MS: calculated: 193.09, found: 194.1.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 120Step A

In essentially the same manner as that described in Preparative Example 105, Step 1, using 3-nitrobenzoic acid instead of 3-nitrosalicylic acid, the methyl ester product was prepared.

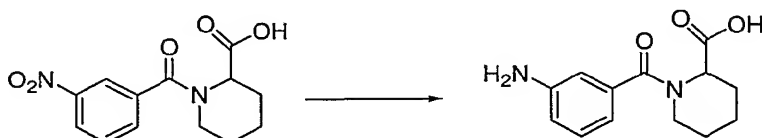
Step B

5 The methyl ester (1.79g, 6.1mmol) from Step A above, was dissolved in dioxane/water (20mL/15mL) at room temperature. Lithium hydroxide (0.258g, 6.2mmol) was added to the solution. After a few hours more lithium hydroxide was added (0.128g, 3.0mmol) and the reaction was stirred for another hour. After this time the reaction was concentrated and then taken up in water. The solution was extracted

10 two times with ether. The aqueous phase was then acidified and extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The organic fractions were then dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. Product was isolated by column chromatography (95% EtOAc/Hex, 0.05% HOAc) to give the product (1.66 g, 98%)

¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) 1.49(m, 2H), 1.68(m, 1H), 1.82(m, 2H), 2.44(m, 1H)

15 3.32(m, 1H), 3.58(m, 1H), 5.57(m, 1H), 7.65(m, 1H), 7.80(m, 1H), 8.32(m, 2H), 10.04(bs, 1Hppm).

Step C

20 The nitro compound was dissolved in an excess of methanol (20mL) and covered by a blanket of argon. 5% Palladium on carbon was added (catalytic) and a hydrogen balloon was attached to the flask. The atmosphere of the system was purged under vacuum and replaced with hydrogen. This step was repeated for a total of three times. The reaction was then stirred under hydrogen overnight. After this

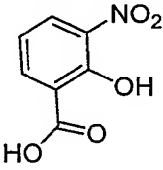
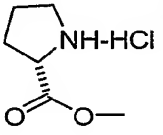
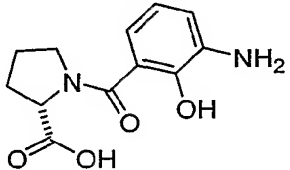
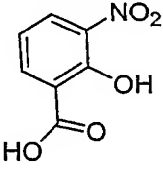
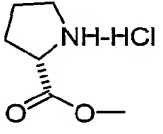
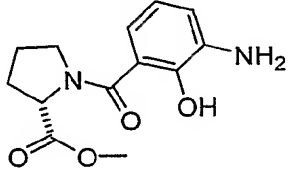
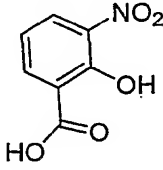
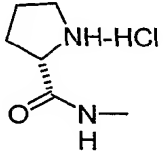
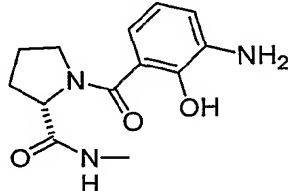
25 time the balloon was removed and the solution was filtered through celite followed by several rinses with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated and dried on the vacuum line to provide the desired aniline product (1.33 g, 90%).

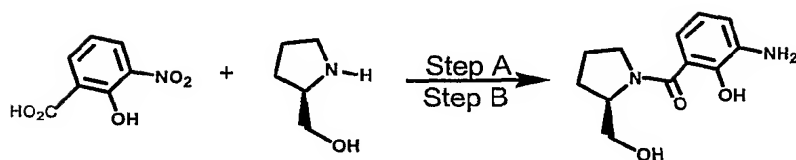
^1H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl_3) 1.40(m, 2H), 1.50(m, 1H), 1.68(m, 2H), 2.33(m, 1H)
 3.18(m, 1H), 3.62(m, 1H), 5.39(m, 1H), 6.12(bs, 2H), 6.75(m, 2H), 7.12(m, 1H)ppm.
 Mass Spectra, calculated: 248, found: 249.1 ($\text{M}+1$) $^+$

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 121-123

Following the procedure described in Preparative Example 120, but using the
 10 commercially available amine and benzoic acid indicated, the intermediate products in
 the table below were obtained.

Ex.	Carboxylic Acid	Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. ($\text{M}+1$) $^+$ 3. Note
121				1. 21% 2. 251.0
122				1. 21% 2. 265.0 3. Skipped step B
123				1. 15% 2. 264.0 3. Skipped step B

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 124Step A

5 3-Nitrosalicylic acid (500 mg, 2.7 mmol), 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC) (563 mg) and ethyl acetate (10 mL) were combined and stirred for 10 min. (R)-(-)-2-pyrrolidinemethanol (0.27 mL) was added and the resulting suspension was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solid was filtered off and the filtrate was either concentrated down and directly purified or washed with 1N NaOH. The aqueous
10 phase was acidified and extracted with EtOAc. The resulting organic phase was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo*. Purification of the residue by preparative plate chromatography (silica gel, 5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ saturated with AcOH) gave the desired compound (338 mg, 46%, MH⁺ = 267).

Step B

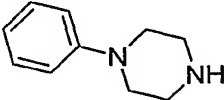
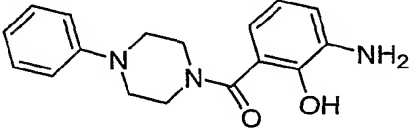
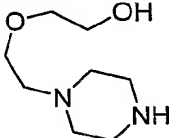
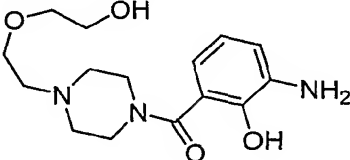
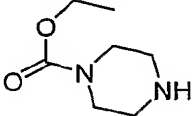
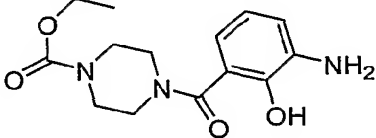
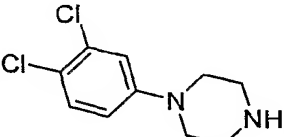
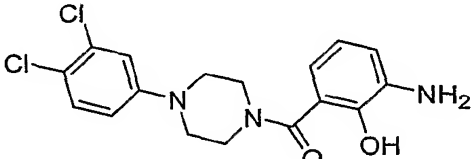
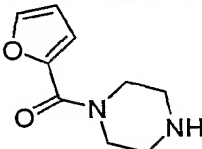
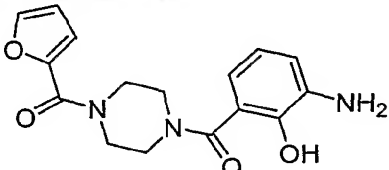
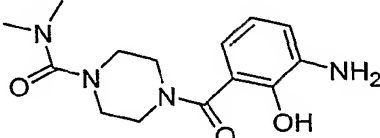
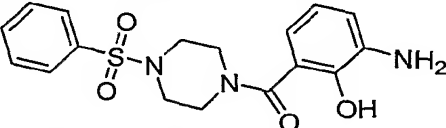
15 The product from Step A above was stirred with 10% Pd/C under a hydrogen gas atmosphere overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, the filtrate concentrated *in vacuo*, and the resulting residue purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 4% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂ saturated with NH₄OH) to give the product (129mg, 43%, MH⁺=237).

20

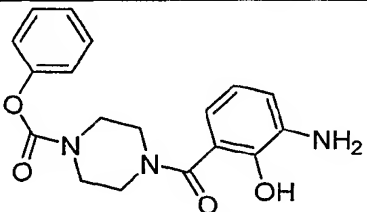
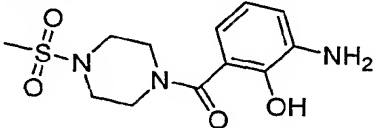
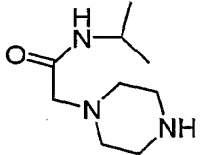
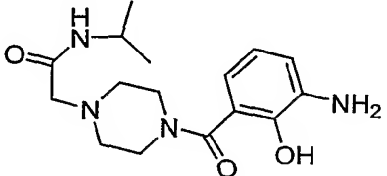
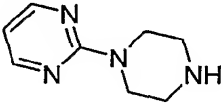
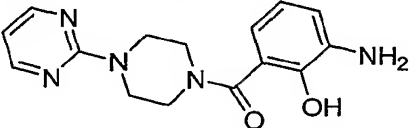
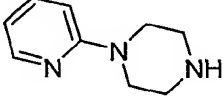
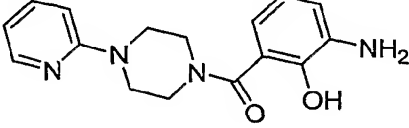
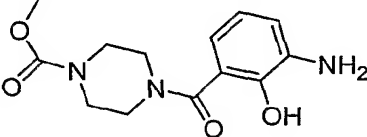
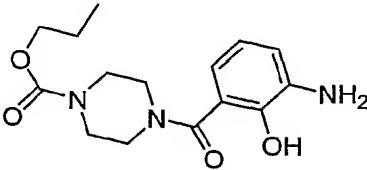
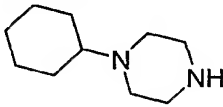
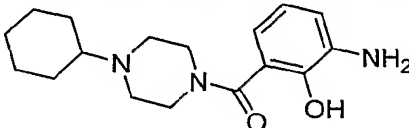
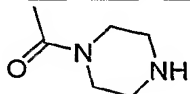
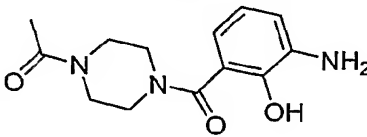
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 125-145

Following the procedure described for Preparative Example 124, but using the commercially available amine or the amine from the Preparative Example indicated and 3-nitrosalicylic acid, the products in the table below were obtained.

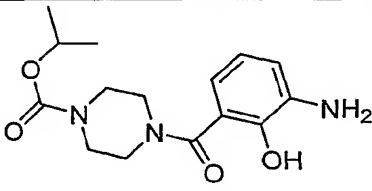
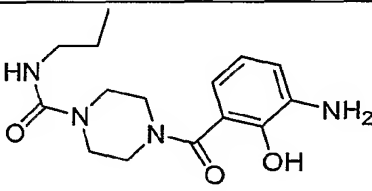
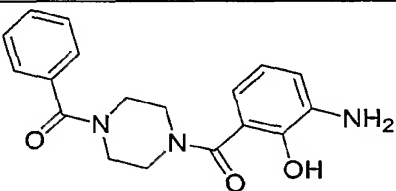
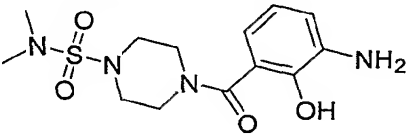
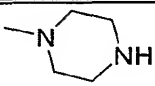
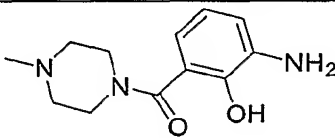
25

Ex.	Amine Comm. Avail./ From Prep.Ex.	Product	1.Yield (%) 2. (M+1) ⁺
125			1. 37% 2. 298.1
126			1. 31% 2. 310.1
127			1. 68% 2. 294.1
128			1. 54% 2. 365.9
129			1. 45% 2. 316.1
130	110		1. 59% 2. 293.1
131	111		1. 32% 2. 362.0

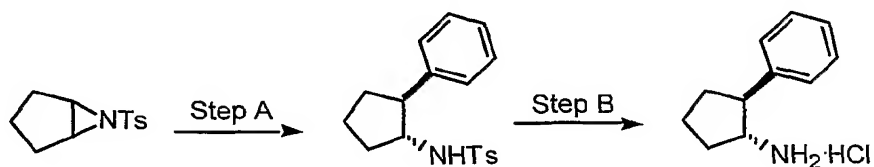
227

132	114		1. 36% 2. 342.0
133	112		1. 65% 2. 300.0
134			1. 48% 2. 321.1
135			1. 50% 2. 300.1
136			1. 56% 2. 299.2
137	115		1. 79% 2. 280.1
138	116		1. 64% 2. 307.1
139			1. 73% 2. 304.2
140			1. 34% 2. 264.0

228

141	117		1. 40% 2. 307.1
142	113		1. 91% 2. 307.1
143	118		1. 9.0% 2. 326.0
144	119		1. 42% 2. 329.0
145			1. 6.5% 2. 236.1

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 146

Step A


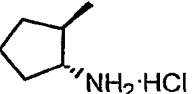

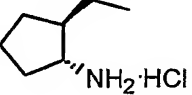

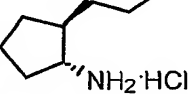

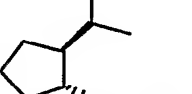

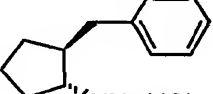

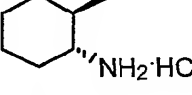
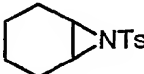
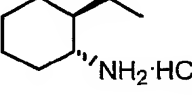
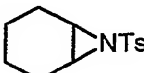
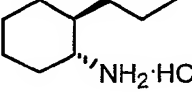
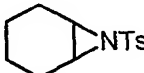
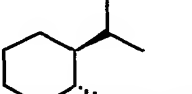
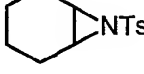
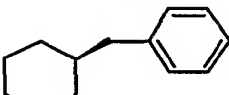
To a solution of tosylaziridine [*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1998**, 120, 6844-6845) (0.5 g, 2.1 mmol) and Cu(acac)₂ (55 mg, 0.21 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at 0 °C was added
5 PhMgBr (3.5 ml, 3.0 M in THF) diluted with THF (8 mL) dropwise over 20 min. The resulting solution was allowed to gradually warm to rt and was stirred for 12h. Sat. aq. NH₄Cl (5 mL), was added and the mixture was extracted with Et₂O (3 x 15 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with brine (1 x 10 mL), dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was purified by preparative
10 TLC eluting with hexane/EtOAc (4:1) to afford 0.57 g (86% yield) of a solid. The purified tosylamine was taken on directly to the next step.

Step B

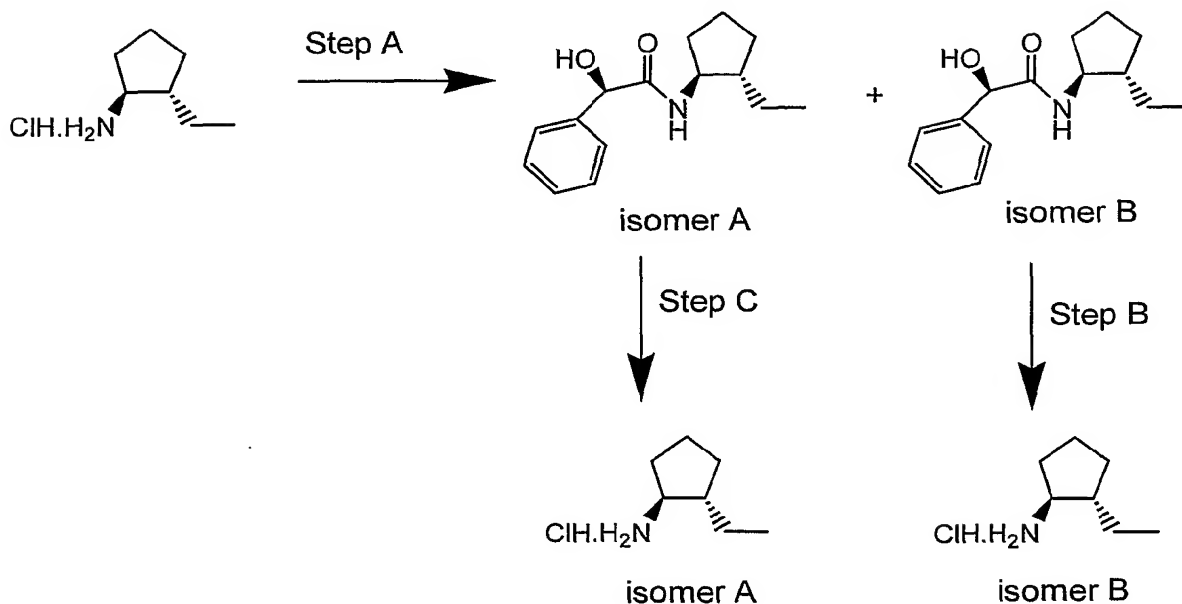
To a solution of tosylamine (0.55 g, 1.75 mmol) in NH₃ (20 mL) at -78 °C was
15 added sodium (0.40 g, 17.4 mmol). The resulting solution was stirred at -78 °C for 2 h whereupon the mixture was treated with solid NH₄Cl and allowed to warm to rt. Once the NH₃ had boiled off, the mixture was partitioned between water (10 mL) and CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x10 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried (NaSO₄), and
20 concentrated under reduced pressure to a volume of ~20 mL. 4N HCl in dioxane (5 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred for 5 min. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the resultant crude residue was recrystallized from EtOH/Et₂O to afford 0.30 g (87% yield) of a solid.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLES 147-156.10

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 146 but using the requisite tosylaziridines and Grignard reagents listed in the Table below, the following racemic amine hydrochloride products were obtained.

Prep Ex.	Tosyl aziridine	Grignard Reagent	Amine hydrochloride	1. Yield (%)
147		MeMgBr		1. 19%
148		EtMgBr		1. 56%
149		<i>n</i> -PrMgBr		1. 70%
150		<i>i</i> -PrMgCl		1. 41%
151		BnMgCl		1. 61%
152		MeMgBr		1. 61%
153		EtMgBr		1. 66%
154		<i>n</i> -PrMgBr		1. 80%
155		<i>i</i> -PrMgBr		1. 27%
156		BnMgCl		1. 79%

156.1				52%
156.2				49%
156.3				61%
156.4				57%
156.5				64%
156.6				64%
156.7				45%
156.8				23%
156.9				40%
156.10				15%

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.11Step A

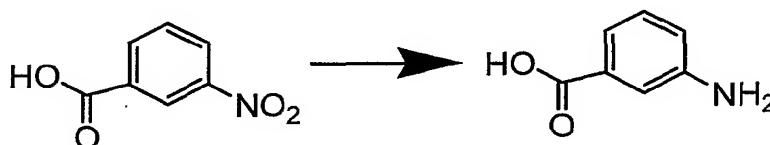
To a solution of the amine (118mg) from Preparative Example 148 in CH_2Cl_2 (10ml) was added triethylamine (120ul), R-Mandelic Acid (164mg), DCC (213mg) and DMAP (8.8mg) and let stir for 40hr. The mixture was diluted with CH_2Cl_2 and washed with saturated ammonium chloride, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude material was purified by preparative plate chromatography (Hex/EtOAc 4:1) to afford both isomers (A, 86mg, 45%) (B, 90mg, 48%).

Step B

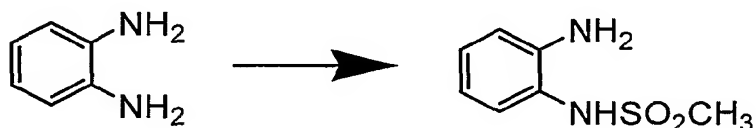
To isomer B (90mg) from above in dioxane (5ml) was added 6M H_2SO_4 (5ml). The reaction was heated to 80°C over the weekend. 2M NaOH added to basify the reaction and extracted with ether. Ether layer washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was stirred in 4N HCl in dioxane for 30min, concentrated *in vacuo* and recrystallized in EtOH/ether to afford 55mg of product (98%).

Step C

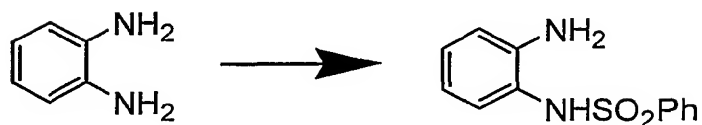
Isomer A (86mg) was reacted following the procedure set forth in Step B above to give the amine salt.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.12

The above nitro compound was reduced following the Preparative Example 2, Step B.

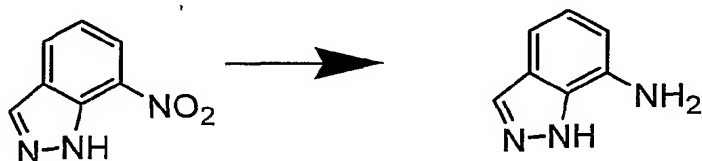
PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.13

To a solution of 1,2-phenylenediamine (1.5g) in CH_2Cl_2 (30ml) at 0°C was added TEA (2.91ml), followed by dropwise addition of MeSO_2Cl (1.07ml). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stir overnight. 1M HCl added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was adjusted to pH=11 with solid NaOH, extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The basified aqueous layer was then neutralized using 3N HCl and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1.8g of product (71%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.14

5

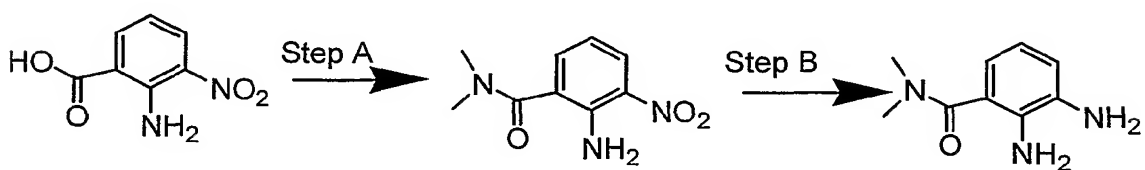
The above compound was prepared using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 156.13, but using PhSO₂Cl.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.15

10

The nitro compound was reduced following a similar procedure as in Preparative Example 2, Step B.

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.16

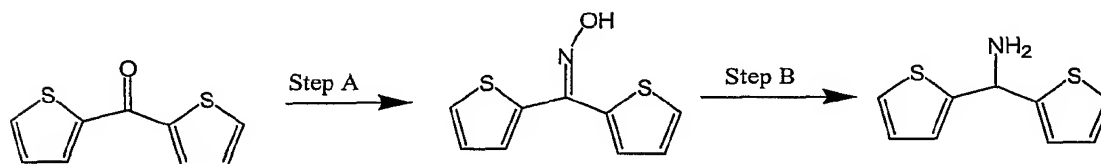
20

Step A

The known acid (410mg) above (*J.Med.Chem.* **1996**, 34,4654.) was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step A to yield 380mg of an oil (80%).

Step B

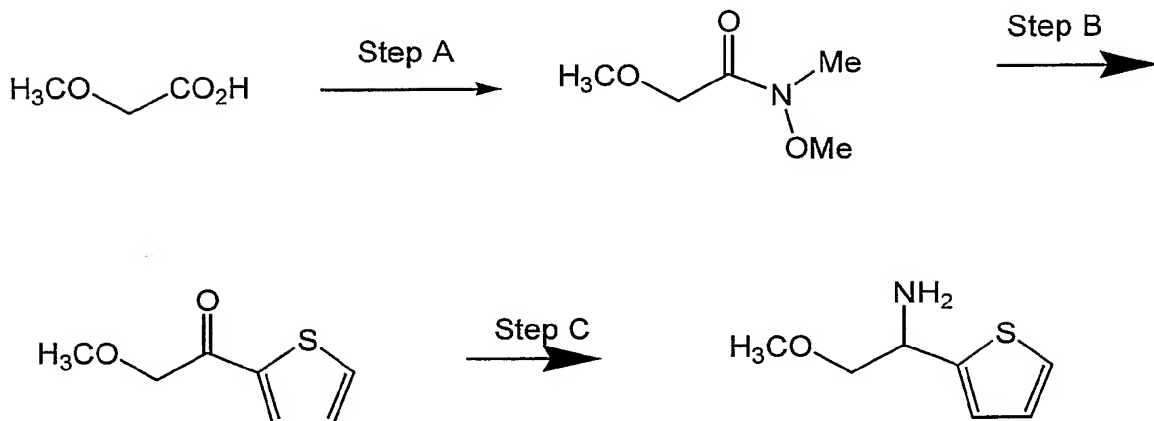
The amide (200mg) from above was reacted following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step B to yield 170mg of an oil (100%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.17Step A

To a solution of ketone (500mg) in EtOH/water (3:1, 4ml) at room temperature was added hydroxylamine hydrochloride (214mg) followed by NaOH to afford a heterogenous mixture. The reaction was not complete so another equivalent of hydroxylamine hydrochloride was added and refluxed overnight. The reaction was cooled to 0°C and treated with 3N HCl and extracted with CH₂Cl₂, washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 500mg of product (92%).

Step B

To a solution of oxime (300mg) in THF (5ml) at 0°C was added LiAlH₄ (266mg) portionwise. The heterogenous solution was stirred at room temperature for 14hr and then refluxed for 8hr. The solution was cooled to 0°C and water, 2M NaOH, water and ether were added to the reaction. The mixture was filtered through a celite pad. The filtrate was treated with 3N HCl. The aqueous layer was cooled to 0°C, basified with NaOH pellets and extracted with ether. The ether layer was dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to afford the product (143mg, 69%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.18

5

Step A

Methoxyacetic acid (14 mL) in CH_2Cl_2 (120 mL) and cooled in an ice-water bath was treated with DMF (0.9 mL) and oxalyl chloride (21 mL). After stirring at RT overnight, the mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and redissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (120 mL). N-methyl-N-methoxylamine (20 g) was added and the mixture stirred at RT overnight. Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* afforded the desired amide (21 g, 89%).

10

Step B

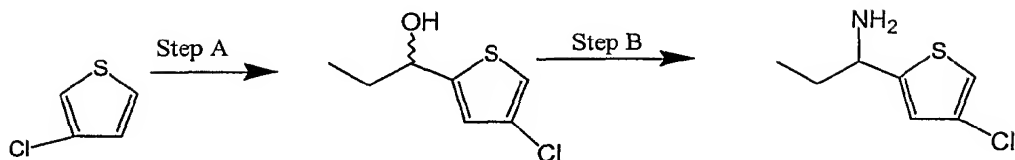
To a solution of the above amide (260mg) in THF (5ml) at -78°C was added a solution of 2-thienyllithium (1M in THF, 2.15ml). The solution was stirred for 2hr at -78°C and warmed to -20°C for an additional 2hr. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 250mg of product (82%).

15

Step C

The ketone from above (250mg) was reacted via the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 156.17 Steps A and B to yield 176 mg of the amine (79%).

20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.19

5

Step A

To a solution of 3-chlorothiophene (1.16ml) in ether (20ml) at -10°C was added n-BuLi (2.5M in hexane, 5ml). After solution was stirred at -10°C for 20min, propionaldehyde (0.82ml) in ether (20ml) was added dropwise and let warm to room temperature slowly. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , washed with brine, dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1.37g of product (62%).

10

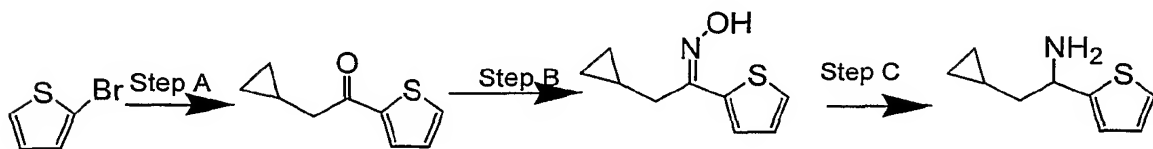
Step B

The alcohol from Step A above was reacted via the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 75.75, Steps B and C to give the amine.

15

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.20

20



Step A

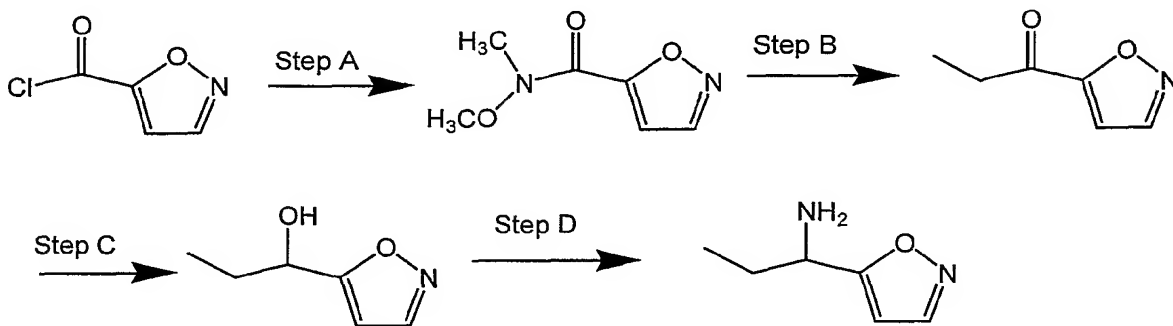
To a solution of magnesium metal (360mg) in THF (15ml) at 0 °C was added 2-bromothiophene (1.45ml) in THF (10ml) dropwise over 20min. The solution was warmed to room temperature for 3hr, recooled to 0 °C whereupon a solution of cyclopropylacetonitrile (1g) in ether (30ml) was added dropwise via a syringe and let warm to room temperature and stir overnight. 3M HCl was added and washed with CH₂Cl₂. The aqueous layer was basified with NaOH pellets and extracted with ether, dried with Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 625mg of product (68%).

Step B

The ketone was reacted via the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 156.17 Step A to give the oxime.

Step C

The oxime from above was reacted via the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 156.17 Step B to give the amine.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.21

Step A

To a solution of $\text{CH}_3\text{ONHCH}_3 \cdot \text{HCl}$ (780mg) and acid chloride (1g) in CH_2Cl_2 at 0 °C was added dry pyridine (1.35ml) to afford a heterogenous mixture. The solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. 1M HCl was added to the reaction and the organic layer was separated, washed with brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 1g of product (85%).

Step B

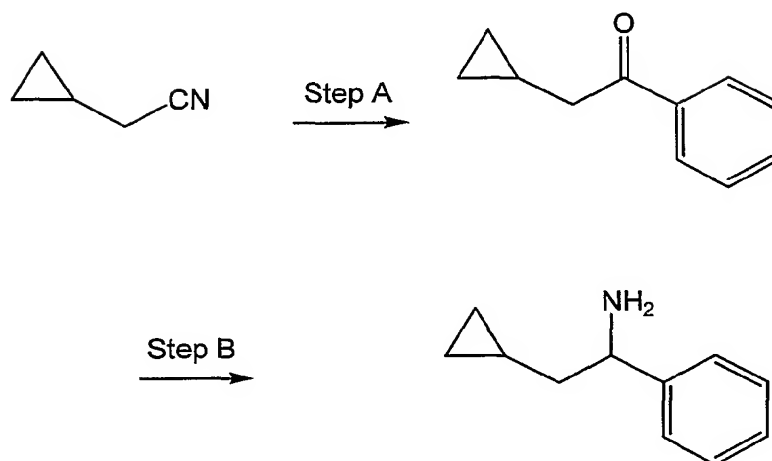
To a solution of EtI (614ul) in ether (5ml) at -78°C was added t-BuLi (1.7M in pentane, 9ml) dropwise. The mixture was warmed to room temperature for 1hr, cooled to -78°C where the amide (1g) from Step A in THF (4ml) was added and allowed to warm to 0 °C for 2hr. 1M HCl was added to the reaction and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 , washed with brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 500mg of product (63%).

Step C

To a solution of ketone (800mg) in THF/water (10:1, 20ml) at 0 °C was added sodium borohydride (363mg) portionwise. The solution was stirred for 2hr at 0 °C. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 , washed with 1N NaOH and brine, dried with Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give 560mg of product (69%).

Step D

The alcohol from above was reacted via the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 75.75, Steps B and C to give the amine (176mg, 59%).

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.22

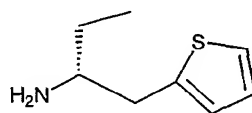
5

Step A

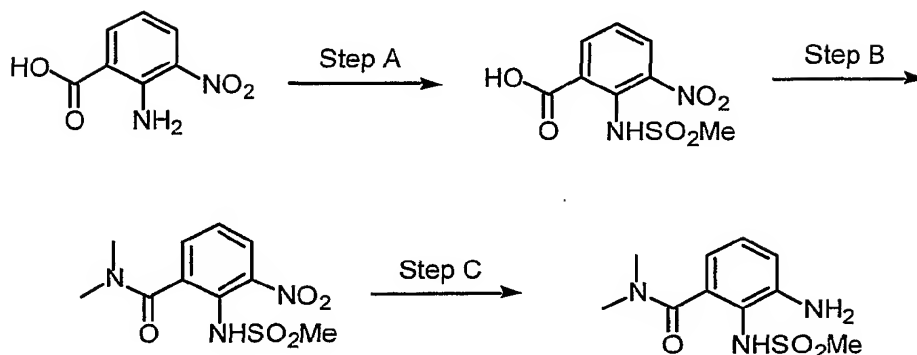
Cyclopropylacetonitrile (12 mmol) in Et₂O (50 mL) at 0°C was treated with PhMgBr (14 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 2 hrs at 0°C, then at RT overnight. Hydrochloric acid (3 M) was added, and after stirring for an additional 12 hrs, the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂, washed with brine, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the desired ketone (1.34 g, 70%).

Step B

Following the procedures set forth in Preparative Example 156.20 Steps B and C, the amine was prepared.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 156.23

The above amine was prepared using the procedures set forth in WO Patent Publication 98/11064.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 157Step A

By taking the known carboxylic acid [*J. Med. Chem.* **1996**, 39, 4654-4666] and
subjecting it to the conditions outlined in Preparative Example 112, the product can be
10 prepared.

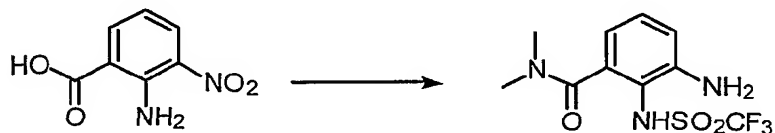
Step B

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 2, Step A, except
using dimethylamine and the compound from Step A above, the product can be
15 prepared.

Step C

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 2, Step B, except
using the compound from Step B above, the product can be prepared.

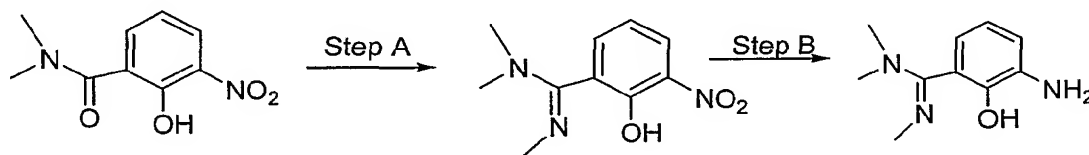
20

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 158

Following a similar procedure used in Preparative Example 157, Steps A-C, except using trifluoromethylsulfonylchloride in Step A above, the product can be prepared.

5

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.1



Step A

10

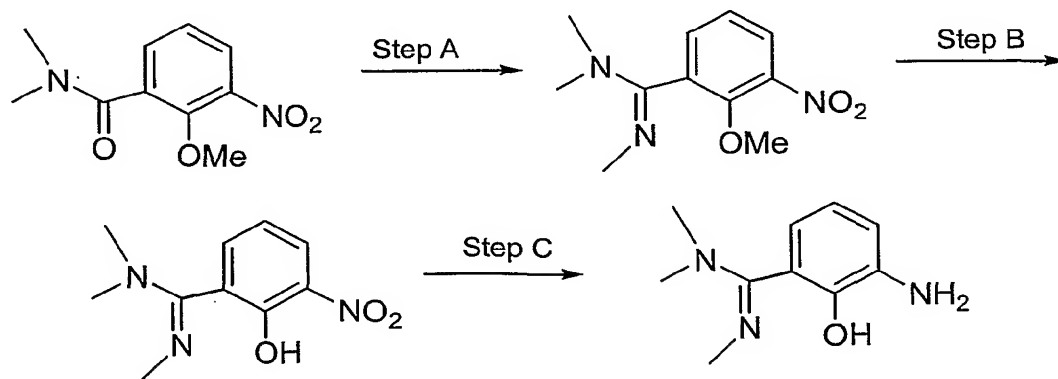
By using the nitro-amide from Preparative Example 13.3, Step A, the amidine structure can be prepared following a similar procedure to that in *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **2000**, 41 (11), 1677-1680.

Step B

15

By using the product from Step A and the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step B, one could obtain the desired amine-amidine.

ALTERNATE PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.2



20

Step A

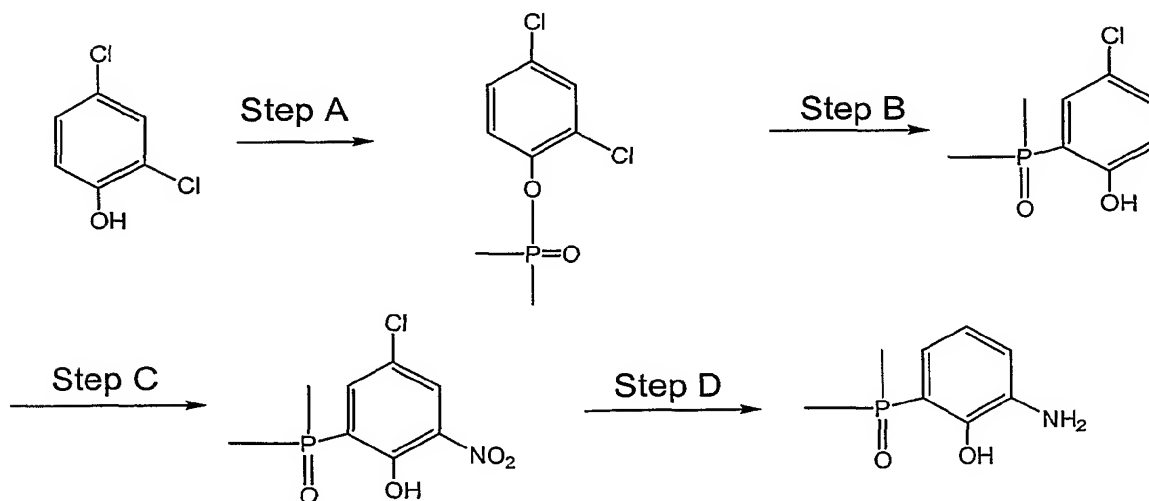
By treating the nitro-amide from Preparative Example 13.3, Step B with POCl_3 and subsequently MeNH_2 , according to procedures known in the art, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step B

By treating the product from Step A according to the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.3, Step E, one could obtain the desired compound.

Step C

By using the product from Step B and the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2 Step B, one would obtain the desired compound.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.3Step A

By following a similar procedure as that described in *Zh. Obshch. Khim.*, 27, 1957, 754, 757., but instead using 2,4-dichlorophenol and dimethylphosphinic chloride, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step B

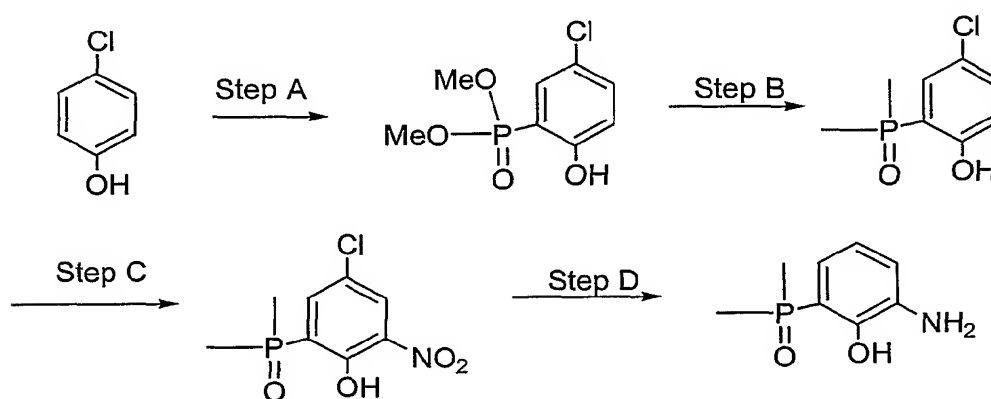
By following a similar procedure as that described in *J. Organomet. Chem.*; 317, **1986**, 11-22, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step C

By following a similar procedure as that described in *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 77, **1955**, 6221, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step D

By following a similar procedure as that described in *J. Med. Chem.*, 27, **1984**, 654-659, one would obtain the desired compound.

ALTERNATE PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.4Step A

By following a similar procedure as that described in *Phosphorous, Sulfur Silicon Relat. Elem.*; EN; 61, 12, **1991**, 119-129, but instead using 4-chlorophenol, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step B

By using a similar procedure as that in *Phosphorous, Sulfur Silicon Relat. Elem.*; EN; 61, 12, **1991**, 119-129, but instead using MeMgBr, the desired compound
5 could be prepared.

Step C

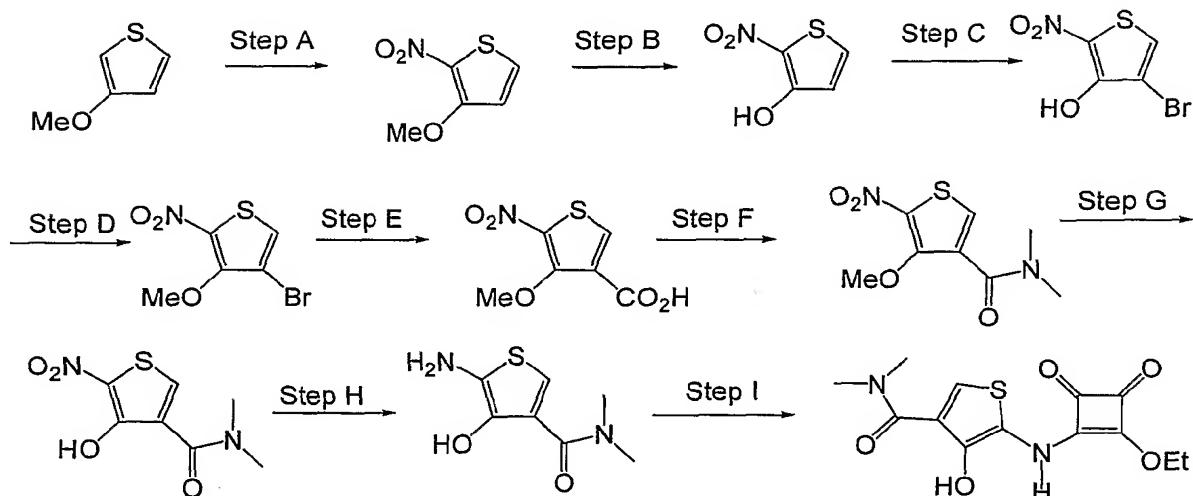
By following a similar procedure as that described in *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 77, **1955**, 6221, one would obtain the desired compound.

Step D

By following a similar procedure as that described in *J. Med. Chem.*, 27, **1984**, 654-659, one would obtain the desired compound.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.5

By following a similar procedure as that set forth in *J. Org. Chem.* **1998**, 63, 2824-2828, but using CH₃CCMgBr, one could obtain the desired compound.

PREPARATIVE EXAMPLE 500.6

5

Step A

By following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.1, Step B using 3-methoxythiophene, one can obtain the desired product.

10

Step B

By using the product from step A and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step E, the desired compound can be obtained.

15 Step C

By using the product from Step B and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.20, Step A, one can obtain the desired compound.

Step D

20 By using the product from Step C and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.3, Step B, the desired compound can be obtained.

Step E

By treating the product from Step D with n-BuLi at -78°C in THF and quenching the resulting anion with CO_2 according to standard literature procedure, one would obtain the desired compound following aqueous acid work up.

Step F

By using the product from Step E and the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step C, one could obtain the desired compound.

Step G

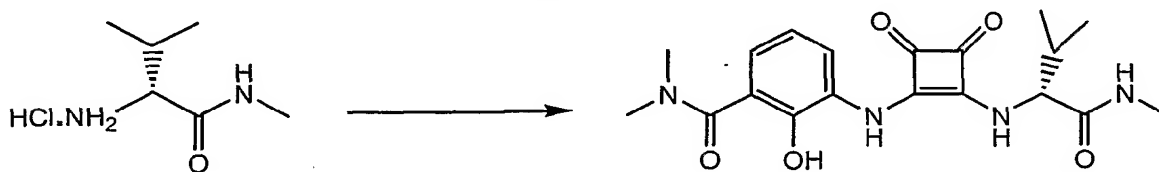
By using the product from step F and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 13.19, Step E, the desired compound can be obtained.

Step H

By using the product from Step G and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step B, the desired compound can be obtained.

Step I

By using the product from Step H and following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 19, the desired compound can be prepared.

EXAMPLE 200

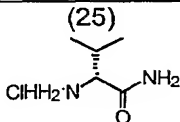
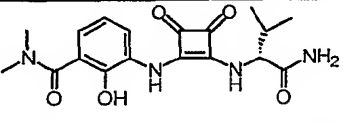
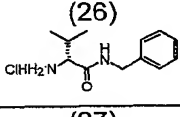
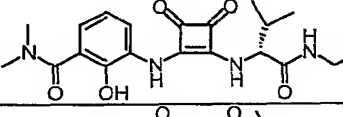
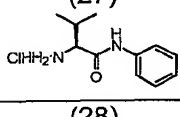
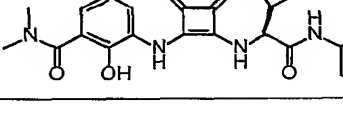
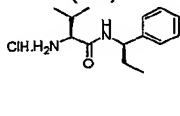
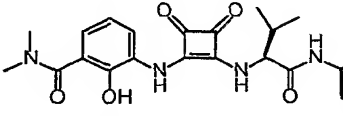
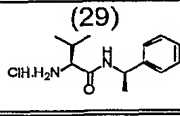
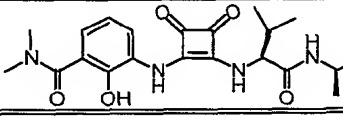
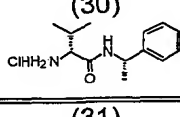
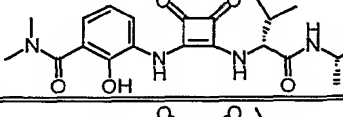
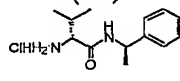
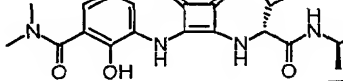
To a solution of the HCl salt product (83 mg, 0.50 mmol) from Preparative Example 24, in EtOH (3 mL) at room temperature was added Et_3N (55 μL , 0.50 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. The cyclobutenedione (100 mg, 0.33 mmol) from Preparative Example 19 in EtOH was then added in a single portion and the mixture was stirred for 12 h at room temperature.

The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and was purified by preparative TLC (4 x 1000 μ M plates) eluting with $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{MeOH}$ (25:1) to afford 116 mg (91 % yield) of the desired product as a solid [MH^+ 389.1, mp 241-243 $^\circ\text{C}$].

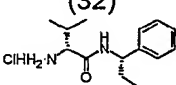
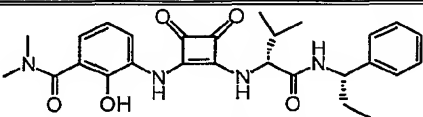
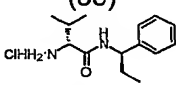
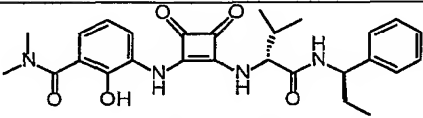
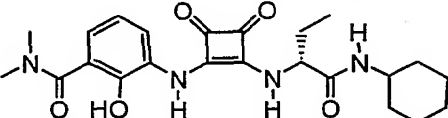
5

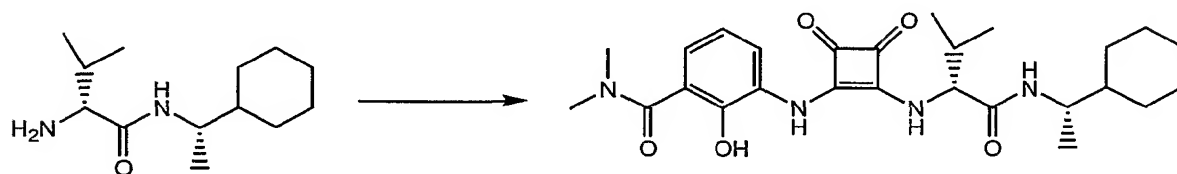
EXAMPLES 201-209

Following the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 200 but using the appropriate amine hydrochlorides from Preparative Examples 25-33 as identified and the cyclobutenedione intermediate from Preparative Example 19, the cyclobutenedione products in the Table below were obtained.

Ex.	(Prep Ex.) Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH^+ 3. mp ($^\circ\text{C}$)
201	(25) 		1. 89% 2. 375.1 3. 255.5-257.3
202	(26) 		1. 92% 2. 465.1 3. 149.0-152.3
203	(27) 		1. 68% 2. 451.1 3. 282-284
204	(28) 		1. 74% 2. 493.1 3. 141
205	(29) 		1. 48% 2. 479.1 3. 142
206	(30) 		1. 41% 2. 479.1 3. 142
207	(31) 		1. 59% 2. 479.1 3. 141

249

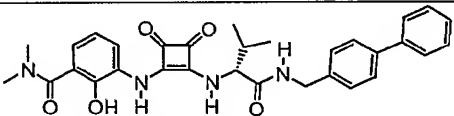
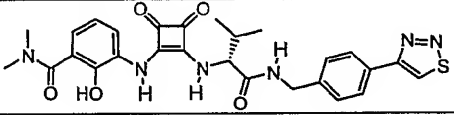
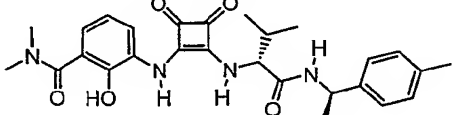
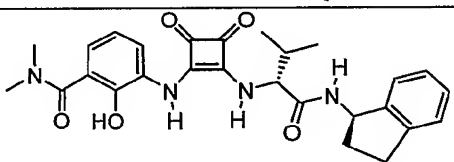
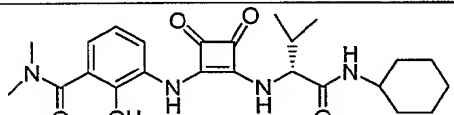
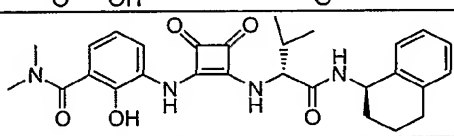
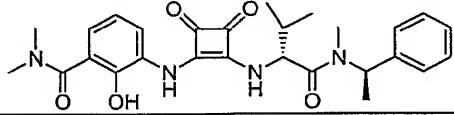
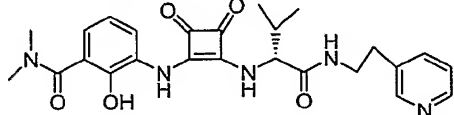
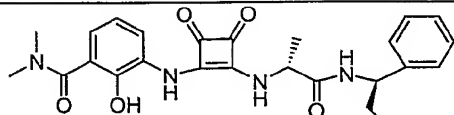
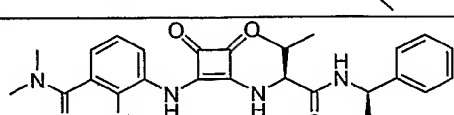
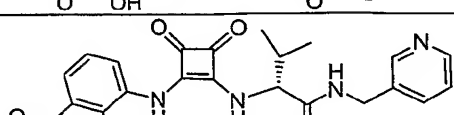
208	(32) 		1. 34% 2. 493.1 3. 140
209	(33) 		1. 40% 2. 493.1 3. 142
209.1	(33.1)		1. 59% 2. 143-145

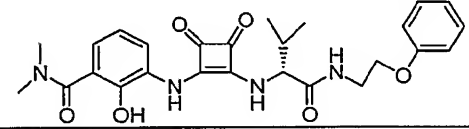
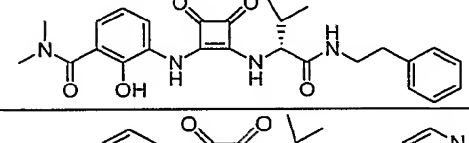
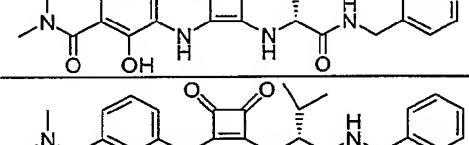
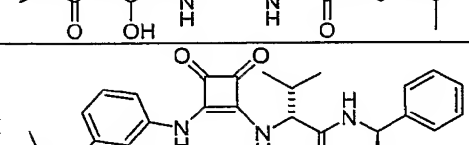
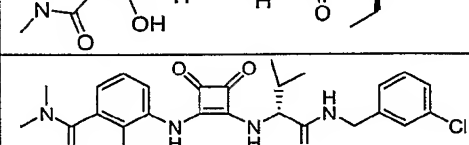
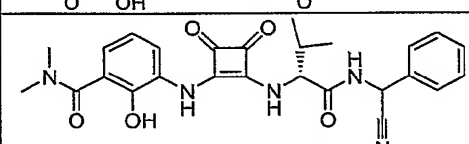
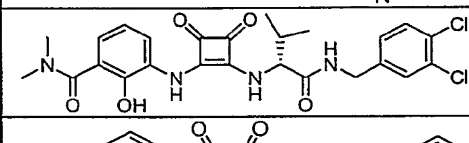
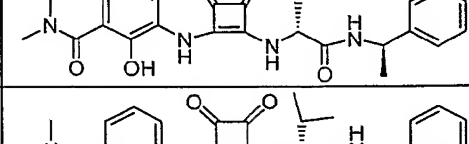
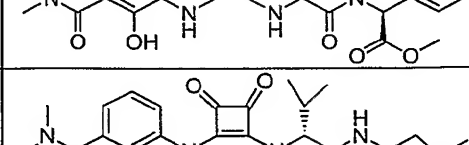
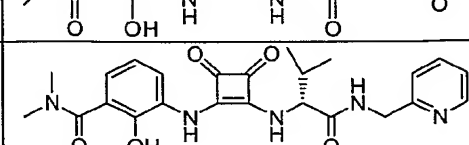
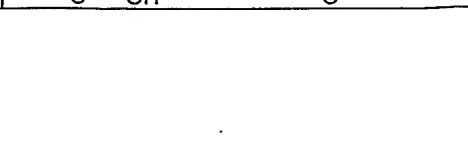

EXAMPLE 209.2

The crude amine product from Preparative Example 33.2 and the cyclobutenedione component from Preparative Example 19.1(36mg) were dissolved in MeOH/ DIEA (2.5ml/5/1) and irradiated via microwave (50W, 1hr). The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by Gilson semi-prep. HPLC to give the final product (68%, MH+=485.2).

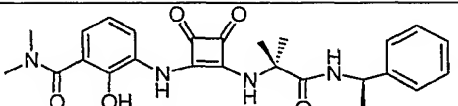
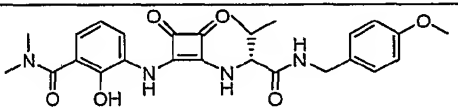
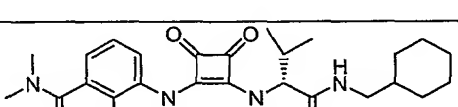
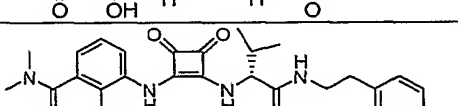
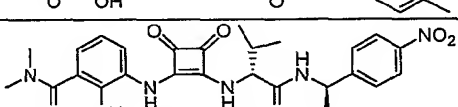
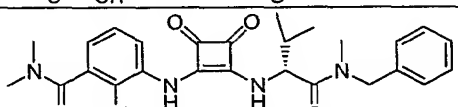
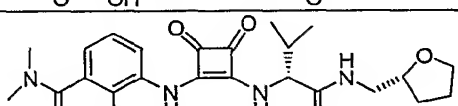
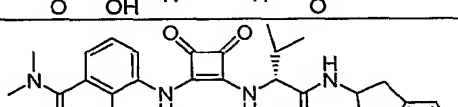
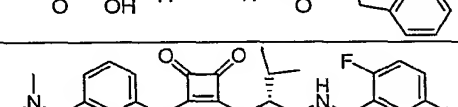
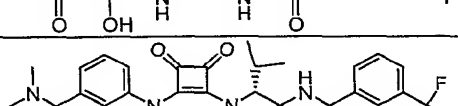
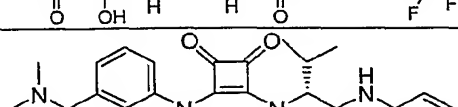
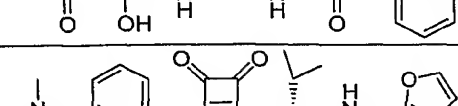
EXAMPLES 209.3-209.50

Following the procedure set forth in Example 209.2, but using the prepared amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

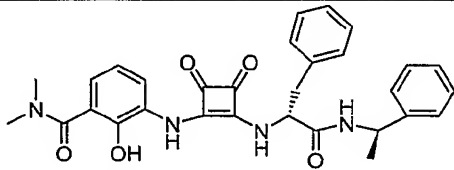
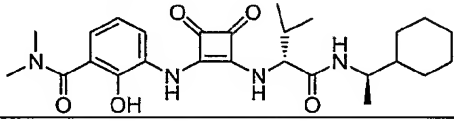
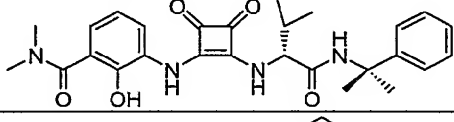
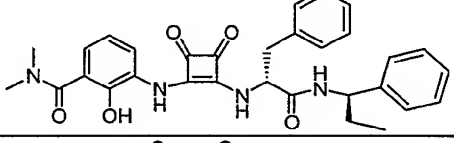
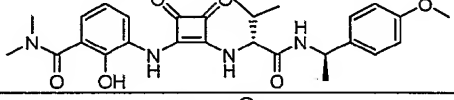
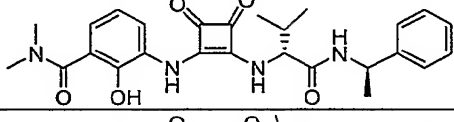
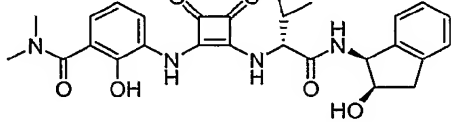
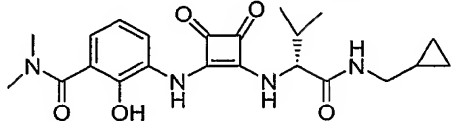
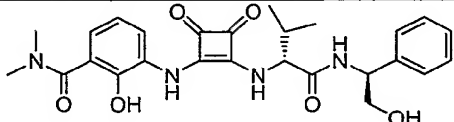
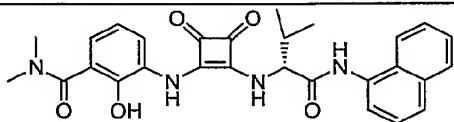
Ex.	(Prep Ex.) Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
209.3	(33.3)		1. 50% 2. 541.2
209.4	(33.4)		1. 32% 2. 549.1
209.5	(33.5)		1. 65% 2. 493.1
209.6	(33.6)		1. 64% 2. 491.1
209.10	(33.7)		1. 90% 2. 457.2
209.11	(33.8)		1. 35% 2. 505.0
209.12	(33.9)		1. 70% 2. 493.1
209.13	(33.10)		1. 75% 2. 480.2
209.14	(33.11)		1. 74% 2. 465.1
209.15	(33.12)		1. 62% 2. 479.1
209.16	(33.13)		1. 31% 2. 466.2

209.17	(33.14)		1. 79% 2. 495.2
209.18	(33.15)		1. 99% 2. 479.2
209.19	(33.16)		1. 47% 2. 466.2
209.20	(33.17)		1. 72% 2. 479.1
209.21	(33.18)		1. 92% 2. 493.1
209.22	(33.19)		1. 47% 2. 499.1
209.23	(33.20)		1. 7% 2. 490.0
209.24	(33.21)		1. 15% 2. 533.1
209.25	(33.22)		1. 88% 2. 451.1
209.26	(33.23)		1. 26% 2. 523.0
209.27	(33.24)		1. 54% 2. 433.1
209.28	(33.25)		1. 59% 2. 466.2

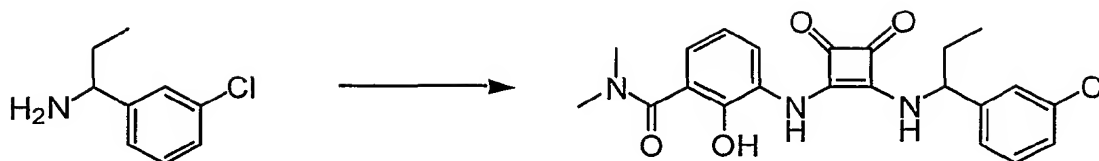
252

209.29	(33.26)		1. 66% 2. 560.2
209.30	(33.27)		1. 98% 2. 495.1
209.31	(33.28)		1. 99% 2. 471.2
209.32	(33.29)		1. 99% 2. 471.2
209.33	(33.30)		1. 18% 2. 524.2
209.34	(33.31)		1. 78% 2. 479.2
209.35	(33.32)		1. 71% 2. 459.2
209.36	(33.33)		1. 5% 2. 491.0
209.37	(33.34)		1. 27% 2. 501.1
209.38	(33.35)		1. 26% 2. 533.1
209.39	(33.36)		1. 48% 2. 451.1
209.40	(33.37)		1. 99% 2. 455.1

253

209.41	(33.38)		1. 88% 2. 527.1
209.42	(33.39)		1. 74% 2. 485.2
209.43	(33.40)		1. 20% 2. 492.5
209.44	(33.41)		1. 68% 2. 541.1
209.45	(33.42)		1. 13% 2. 508.9
209.46	(33.43)		1. 86% 2. 479.1
209.47	(33.44)		1. 34% 2. 507.0
209.48	(33.45)		1. 56% 2. 429.1
209.49	(33.46)		1. 18% 2. 495.0
209.50	(33.47)		1. 22% 2. 501.0

254

EXAMPLE 210

To a solution of amine (0.17 g, 1 mmol) from Preparative Example 34 in EtOH (3 mL) at room temperature was added the cyclobutenedione from Preparative Example 19 (100 mg, 0.33 mmol) in one portion. The resulting mixture was stirred for 5h (until TLC analysis revealed reaction complete) and was concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was redissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (15 mL) and was washed sequentially with 10% KH₂PO₄ (2 x 15 mL) and brine (1 x 15 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the crude adduct. The crude product was purified by prep TLC (4 x 1000 uM plates) eluting with CH₂Cl₂/MeOH (20:1) to afford 83 mg (59% yield) of the desired product as a solid.

10

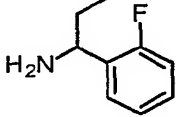
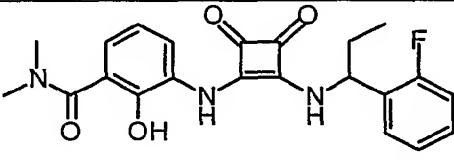
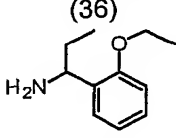
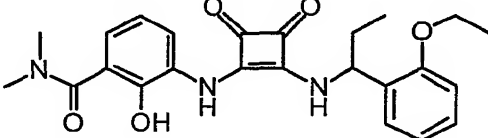
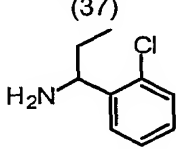
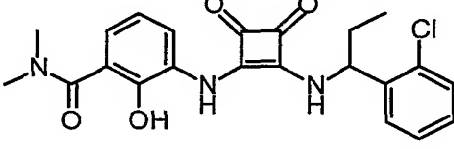
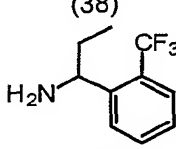
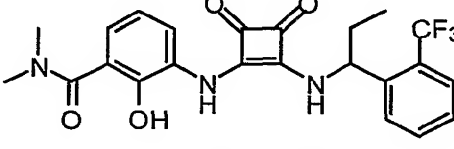
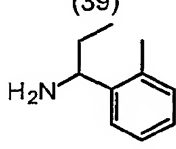
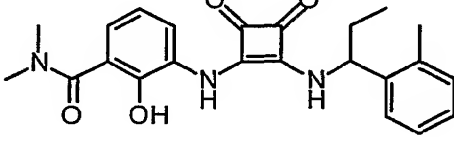
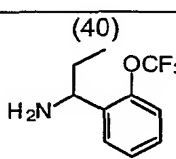
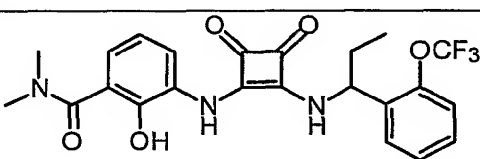
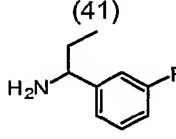
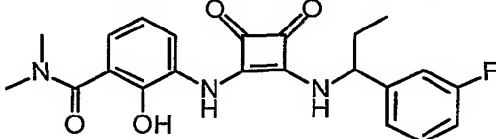
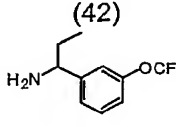
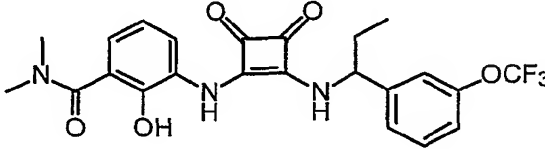
15

EXAMPLES 211-260

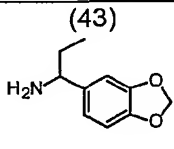
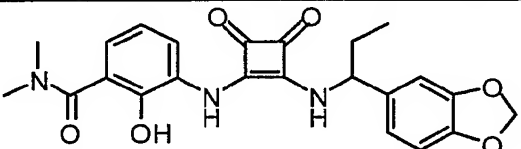
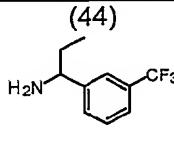
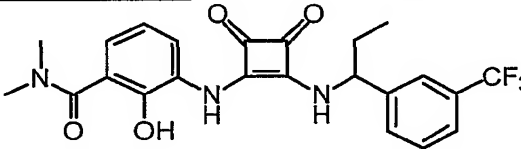
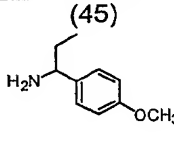
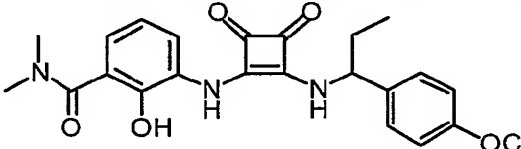
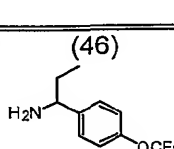
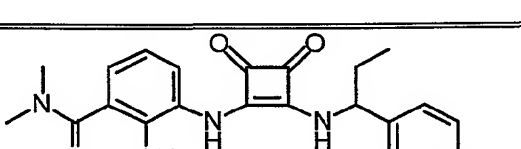
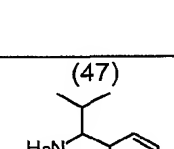
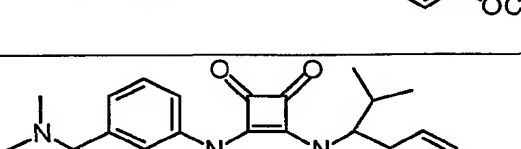
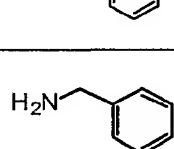
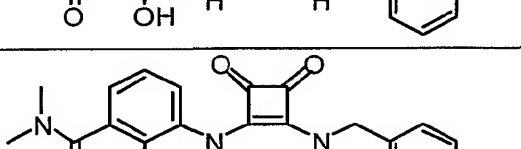
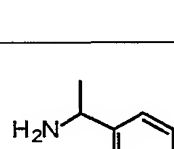
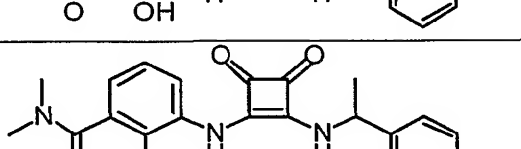
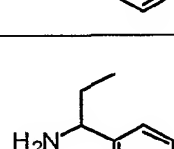
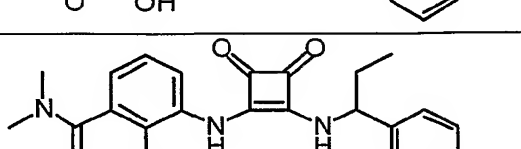
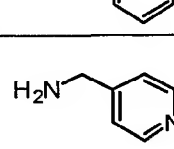
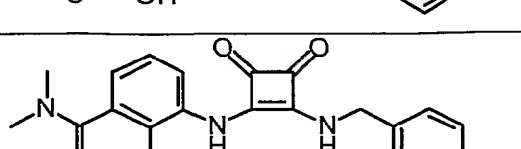
Following the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the commercially available amine or the prepared amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

20

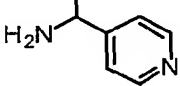
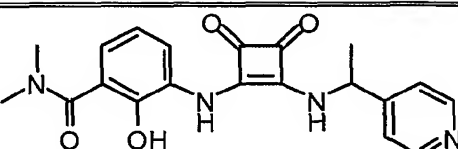
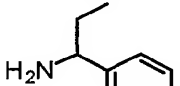
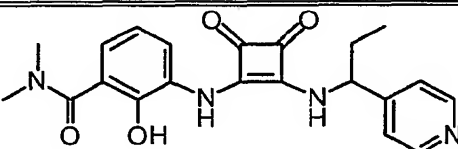
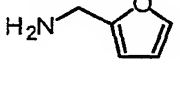
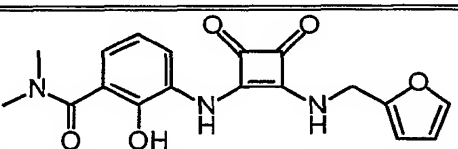
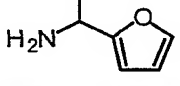
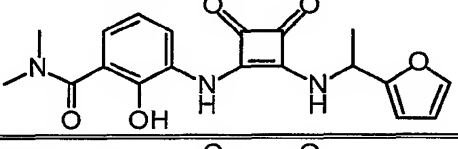
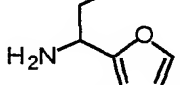
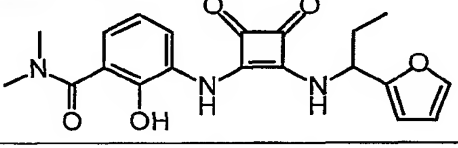
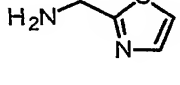
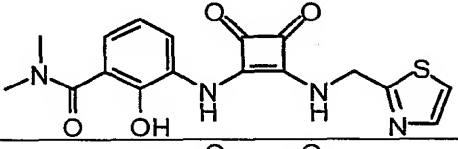
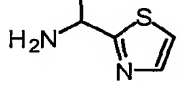
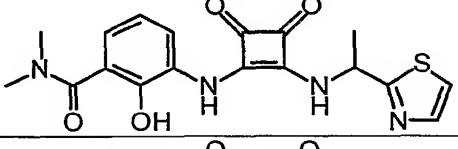
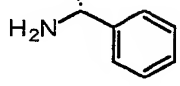
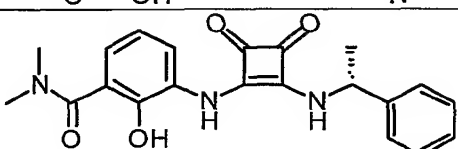
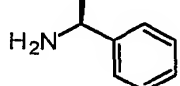
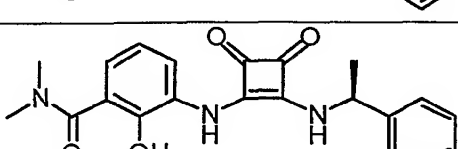
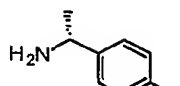
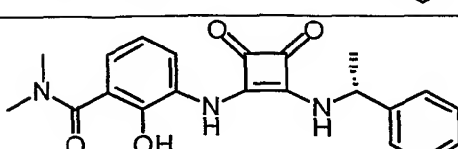
255

Ex.	(Prep Ex) Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺ 3. mp (°C)
211	(35) 		1. 75% 2. 412.1 3. 126
212	(36) 		1. 42% 2. 438.1 3. 106
213	(37) 		1. 73% 2. 428.1 3. 139
214	(38) 		1. 40% 2. 462.1 3. 160
215	(39) 		1. 52% 2. 408.1 3. 126
216	(40) 		1. 32% 2. 478.1 3. 176
217	(41) 		1. 50% 2. 412.1 3. 126
218	(42) 		1. 55% 2. 478.1 3. 110

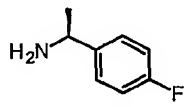
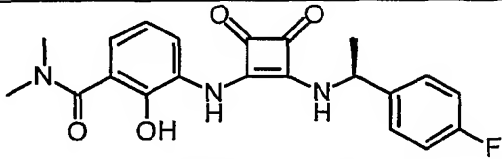
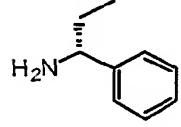
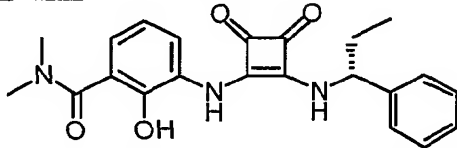
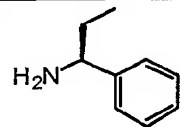
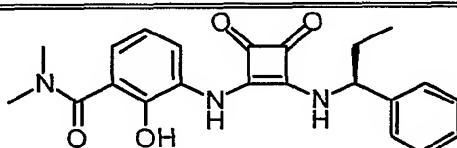
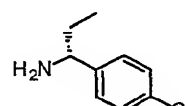
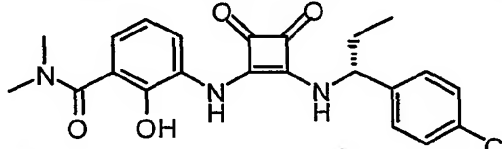
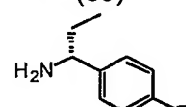
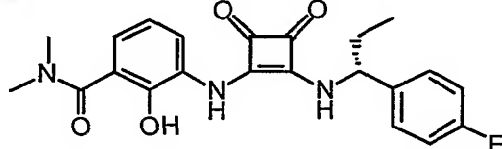
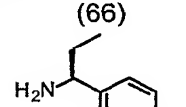
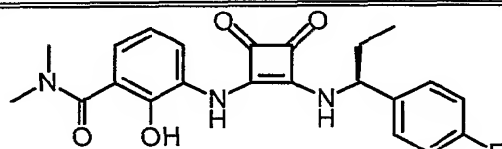
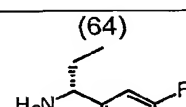
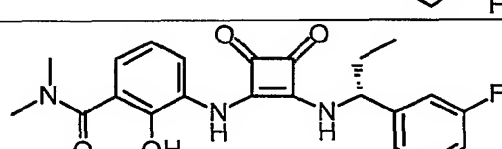
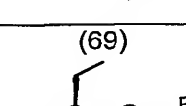
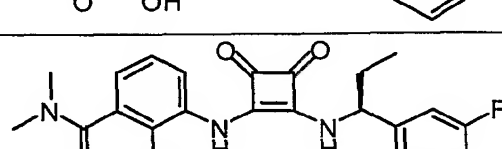
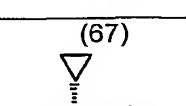
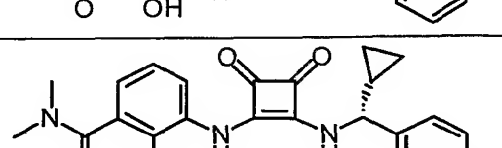
256

219	(43) 		1. 67% 2. 438.1 3. 122
220	(44) 		1. 73% 2. 462.1 3. 118
221	(45) 		1. 67% 2. 424.1 3. 100
222	(46) 		1. 61% 2. 478.1 3. 114
223	(47) 		1. 50% 2. 408.1 3. 157-159
224			1. 75% 2. 366.1 3. 110-112
225			1. 81% 2. 380.1 3. 118-120
226			1. 69% 2. 394.1 3. 123-125
227			1. 80% 2. 367.1 3. 122-125

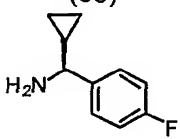
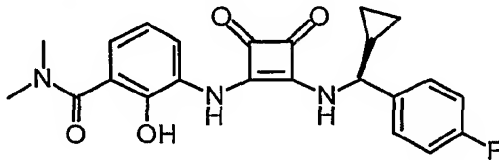
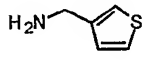
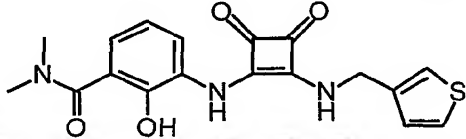
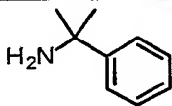
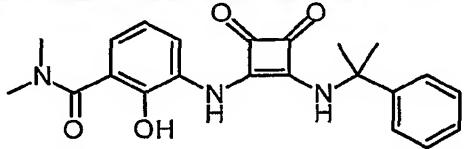
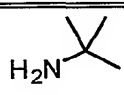
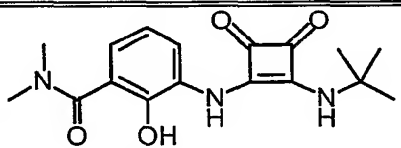
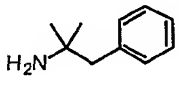
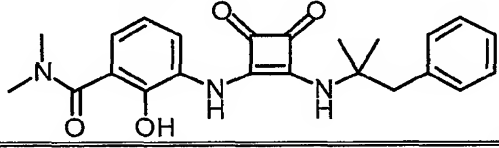
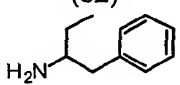
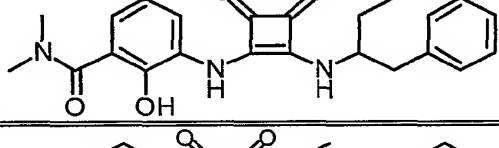
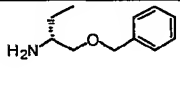
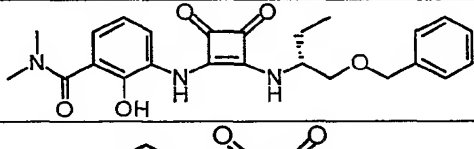
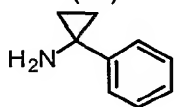
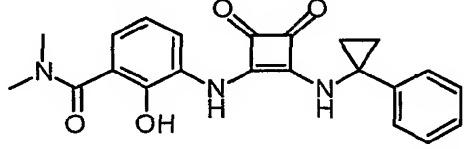
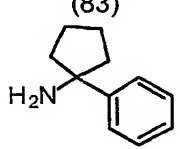
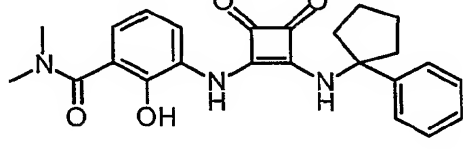
257

228	(76) 		1. 72% 2. 381.1 3. 133-135
229	(77) 		1. 81% 2. 395.1 3. 141-143
230			1. 75% 2. 356.1 3. 103-104
231	(78) 		1. 24% 2. 370.1 3. 101
232	(79) 		1. 16% 2. 384.1 3. 70
233	(80) 		1. 72% 2. 373.4 3. 104-106
234	(81) 		1. 34% 2. 387.1 3. 99
235			1. 48% 2. 380.1 3. 118-120
236			1. 72% 2. 380.1 3. 119-120
237			1. 72% 2. 398.1 3. 121-123

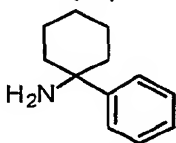
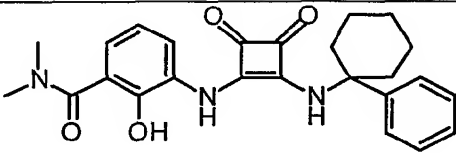
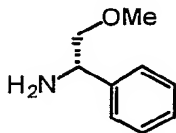
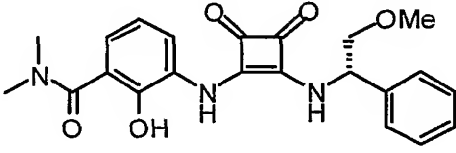
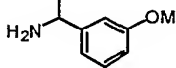
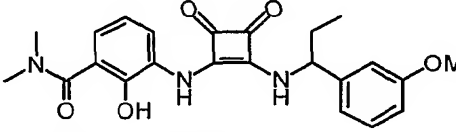
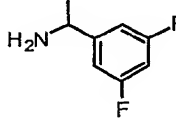
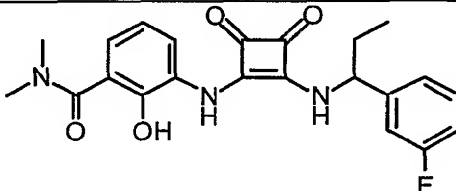
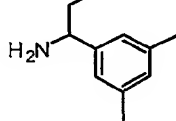
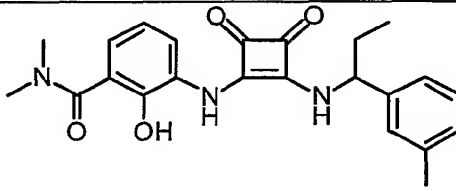
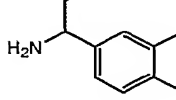
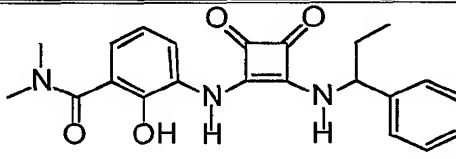
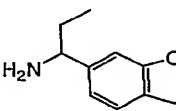
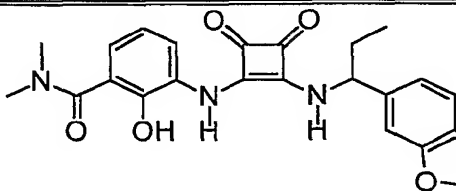
258

238			1. 44% 2. 398.1 3. 121-123
239			1. 60% 2. 394.1 3. 123-124
240			1. 52% 2. 394.1 3. 122-124
241			1. 34% 2. 428.4 3. 157-159
242	(65) 		1. 70% 2. 412.1 3. 109-112
243	(66) 		1. 69% 2. 412.1 3. 110-112
244	(64) 		1. 89% 2. 412.1 3. 126
245	(69) 		1. 81% 2. 412.1 3. 126
246	(67) 		1. 65% 2. 424.1 3. 121-124

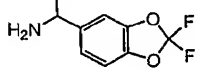
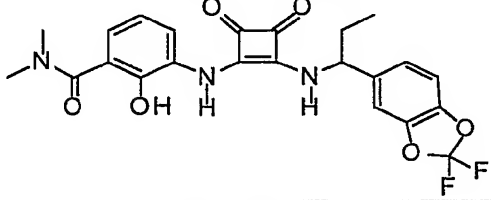
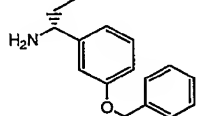
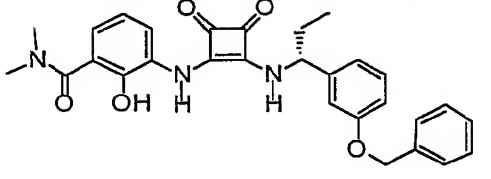
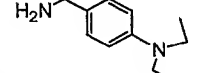
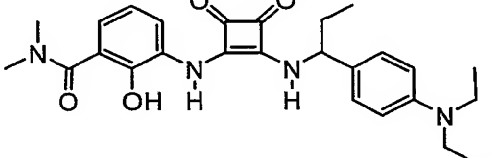
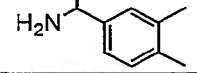
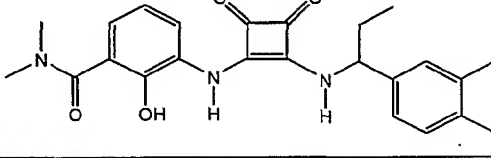
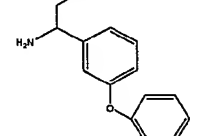
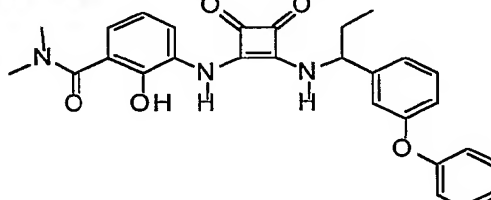
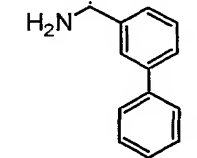
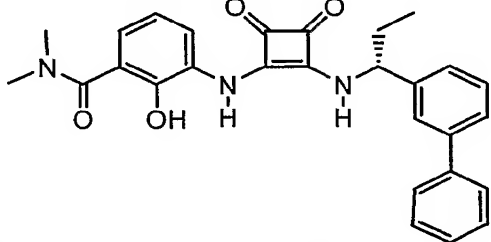
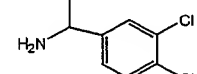
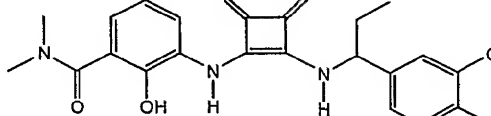
259

247	(68) 		1. 73% 2. 424.1 3. 122-124
248			1. 29% 2. 372.1 3. 219-221
249			1. 66% 2. 394.1 3. 132-135
250			1. 72% 2. 332
251			1. 74% 2. 408.1 3. 121-123
252	(82) 		1. 76% 2. 408.1 3. 102-104
253			1. 72% 2. 438.1 3. 75-77
254	(84) 		1. 80% 2. 392.1 3. 98-101
255	(83) 		1. 72% 2. 420.1 3. 200-205

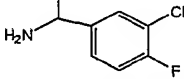
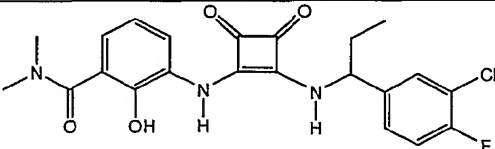
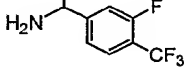
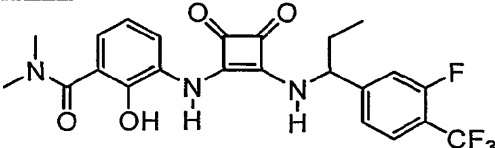
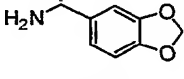
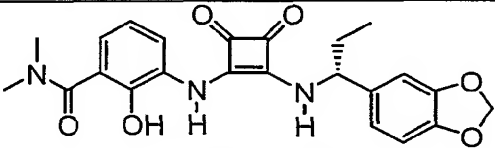
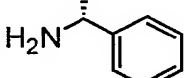
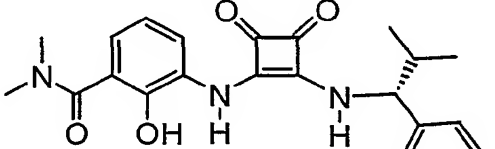
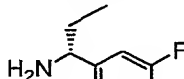
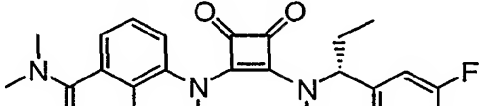
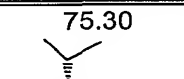
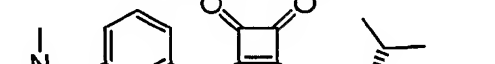

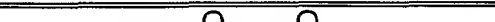
260

256	(85) 		1. 75% 2. 434.1 3. 138-140
257	(86) 		1. 67% 2. 410.1 3. 116-118
258	(48) 		1. 76% 2. 424.1 3. 108-110
259	(49) 		1. 72% 2. 430.1 3. 125
260	(50) 		1. 78% 2. 422.1 3. 127
260.1	51.5 		1. 74% 2. 426.1 3. 114 DEC
260.2	51.2 		1. 85% 2. 436.1 3. 143 DEC

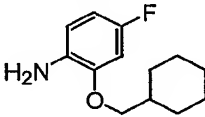
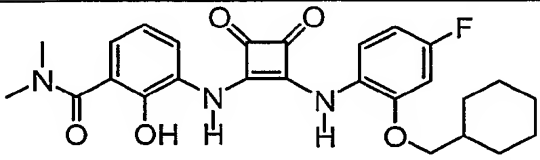
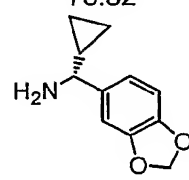
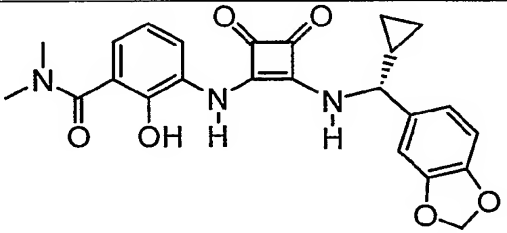
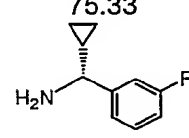
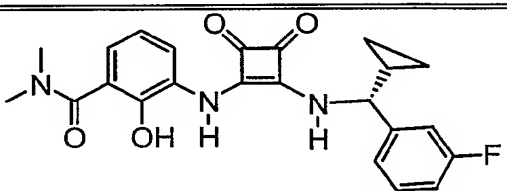

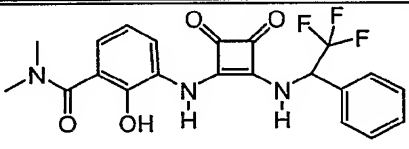
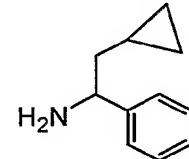
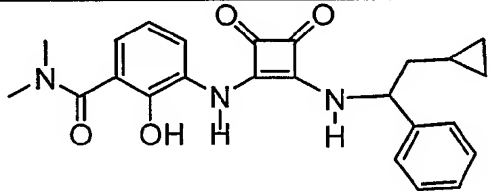
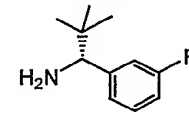
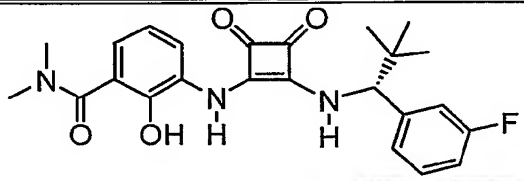
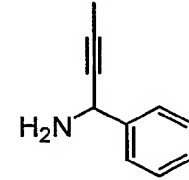
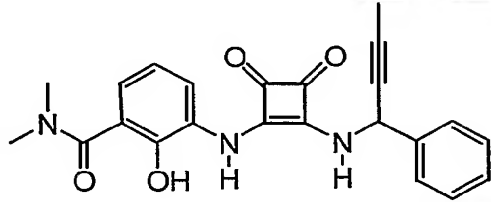
261

260.3	51.3 		1. 56% 2. 474.1 3. 121-123
260.4	75.22 		1. 71% 2. 500.1 3. 97(DEC)
260.6	51.25 		1. 61% 2. 465 3. 102-107
260.7	51.18 		1. 78% 2. 422.1 3. 114 DEC
260.8	51.4 		1. 35% 2. 486.1 3. 103-105
260.9	75.24 		1. 79% 2. 470 3. 110-115
260.10	51.19 		1. 62% 2. 462.1 3. 110 DEC

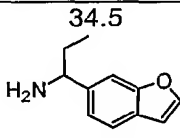
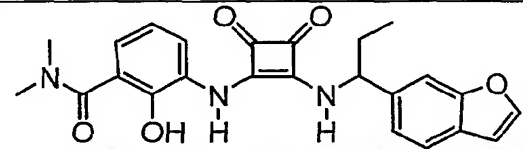
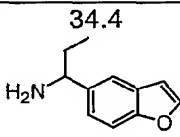
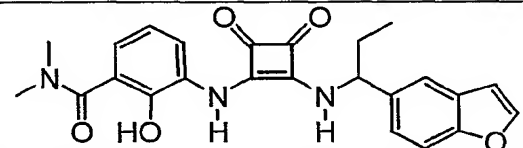
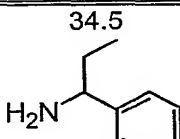
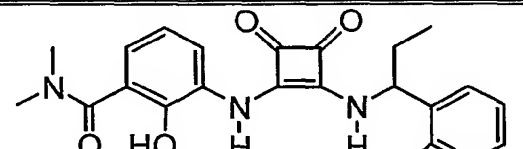
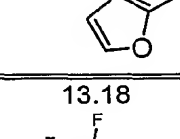
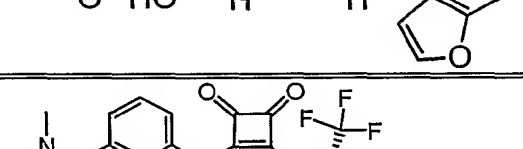
262

260.11	51.20 		1. 61% 2. 446.1 3. 118 DEC
260.12	51.8 		1. 58% 2. 480.1 3. 111 DEC
260.13	75.27 		1. 87% 2. 438.1 3. 122
260.14	75.28 		1. 74% 2. 408.1 3. 128-130
260.15	75.29 		1. 78% 2. 430.1 3. 117 DEC
260.16	75.30 		1. 81% 2. 452.1 3. 139
260.17	75.31 		1. 85% 2. 426.1 3. 126

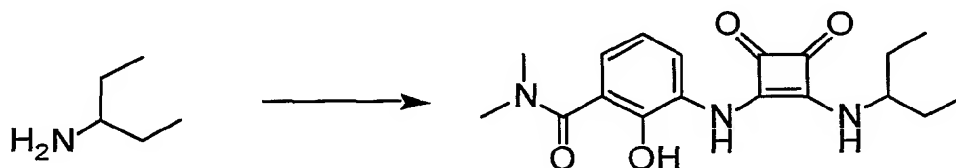
263

260.18	34.11 		1. 50% 2. 482.1 3. 114-116
260.19	75.32 		1. 64% 2. 450.1 3. 129
260.20	75.33 		1. 72% 2. 424.1 3. 116
260.21	34.3 		1. 35% 2. 434.1 3. 124
260.22	156.22 		1. 58% 2. 420.1 3. 107-109
260.23	75.34 		1. 69% 2. 440.1 3. 169
260.24	51.31 		1. 15% 2. 404.1 3. 103-105

264

260.25	34.5 		1. 92% 2. 434.1 3. 129
260.26	34.4 		1. 77% 2. 434.1 3. 133
260.27	34.5 		1. 73% 2. 434.1 3. 138
260.28	13.18 		1. 37% 2. 434.1 3. 133

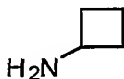
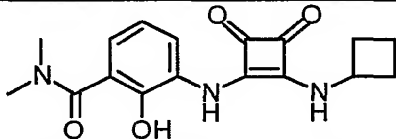
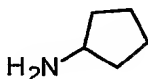
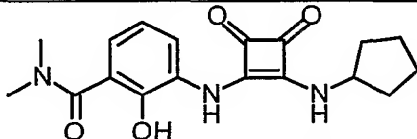
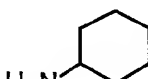
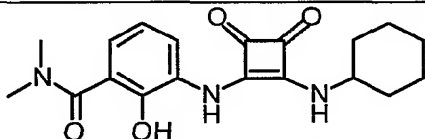
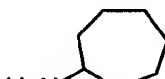
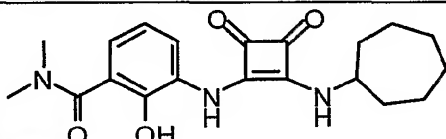
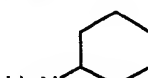
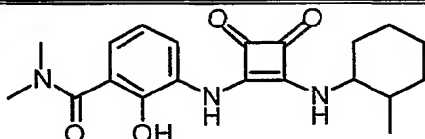
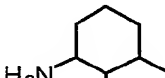
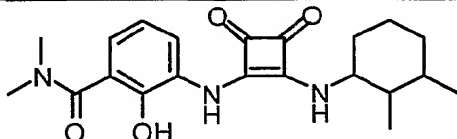
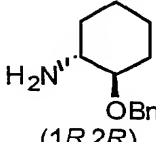
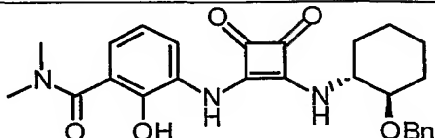
5

EXAMPLE 261

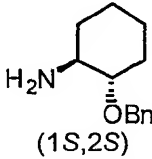
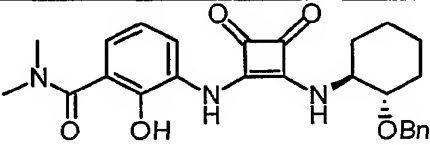
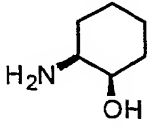
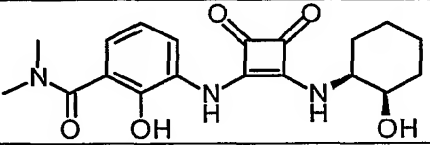
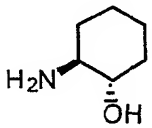
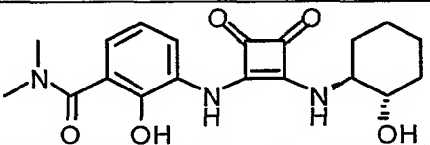
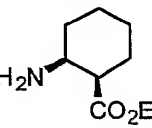
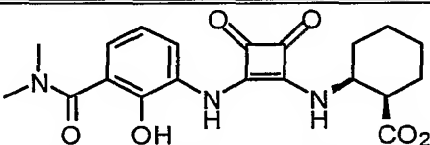
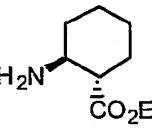
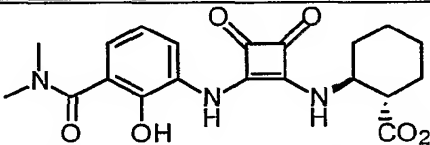
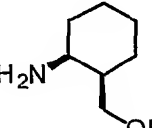
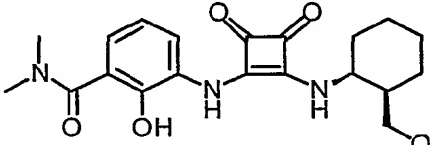
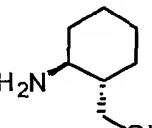
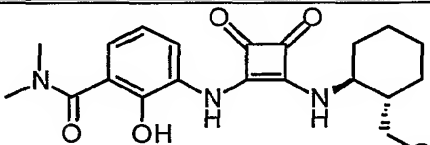
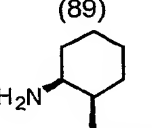
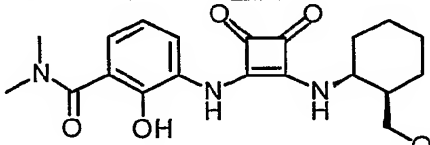
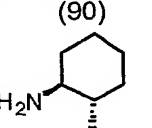
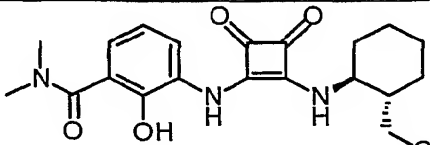
To a solution of the amine (77 μ L, 0.66 mmol) in EtOH (3 mL) at room temperature was added the product from Preparative Example 19 (100 mg, 0.33 mmol) in one portion. The resulting mixture was stirred for 5h (until TLC analysis revealed reaction complete) and was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was redissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (15 mL) and was washed sequentially with 10% KH_2PO_4 (2 x 15 mL) and brine (1 x 15 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the crude adduct. The crude product was purified by prep TLC (4 x 1000 μ M plates) eluting with $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{MeOH}$ (20:1) to afford 82 mg (72% yield) of the desired product as a solid. (mp 126.0-128.0 $^\circ\text{C}$, MH^+ 346)

EXAMPLES 262 - 360.108

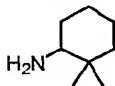
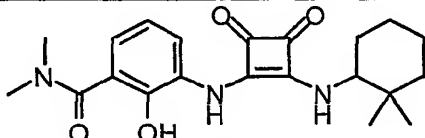
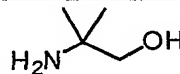
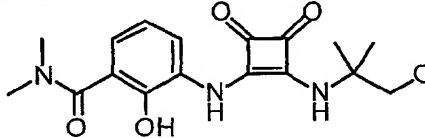
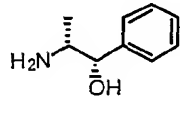
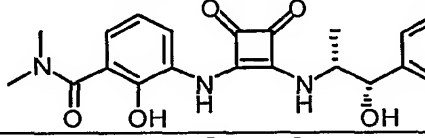
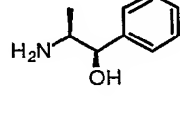
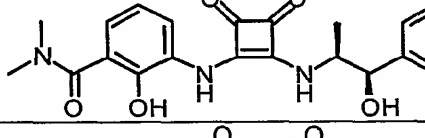
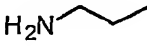
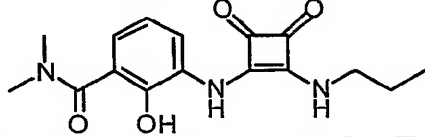
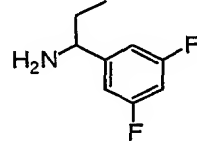
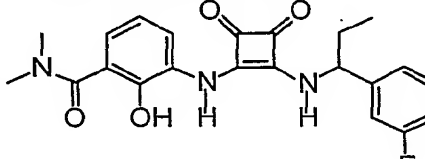
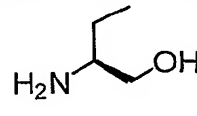
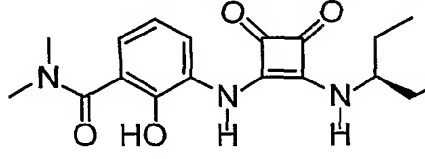
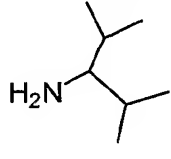
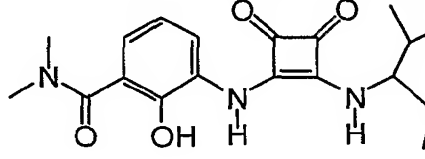
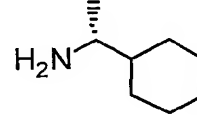
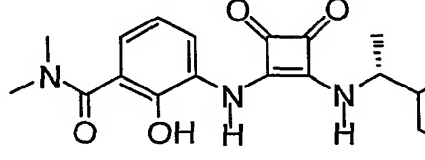
Following the procedure set forth in Example 261 but using the commercially
 5 available amine or the prepared amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the
 table below, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

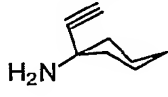
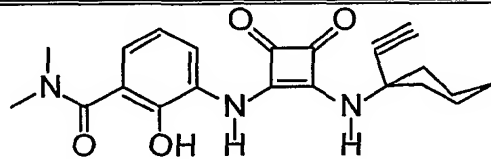
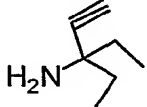
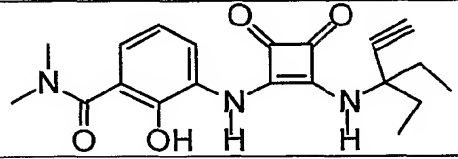
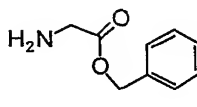
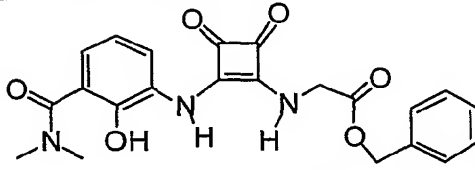
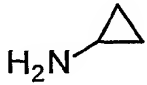
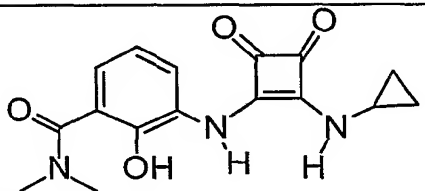
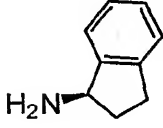
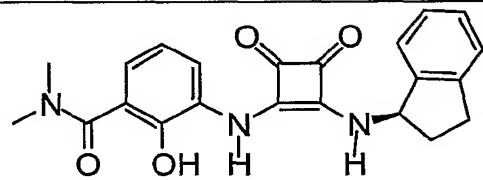
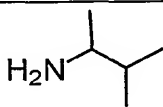
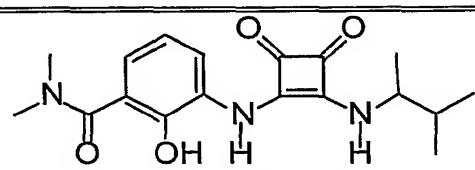
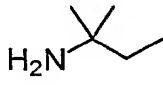
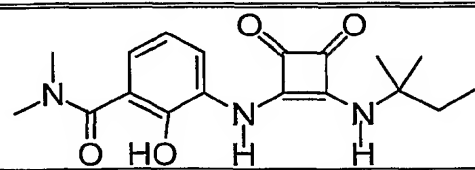
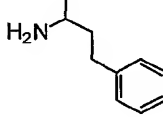
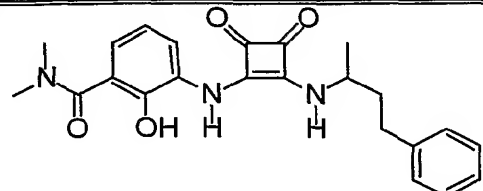
Ex.	Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺ 3. mp (°C)
262			1. 74% 2. 330.1 3. 112-115
263			1. 64% 2. 344.1 3. 120-122
264			1. 72% 2. 358.4 3. 129-132
265			1. 76% 2. 372.1 3. 141-143
266			1. 57% 2. 372.1 3. 102
267			1. 65% 2. 386.1 3. 146
268	 (1R,2R)		1. 65% 2. 464.1 3. 110-112

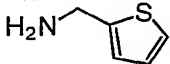
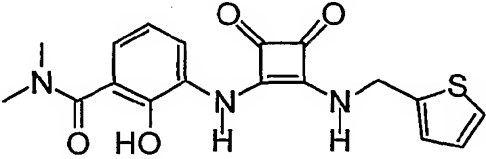
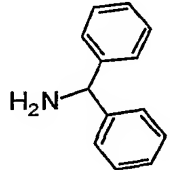
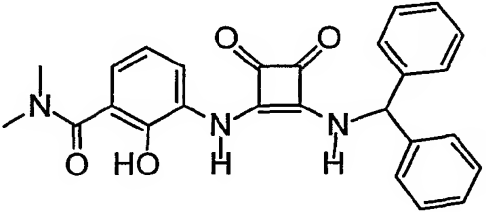
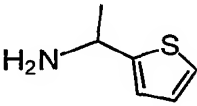
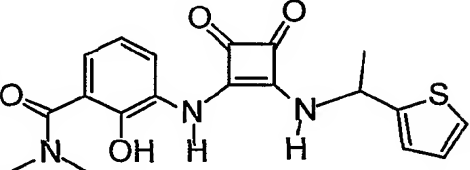
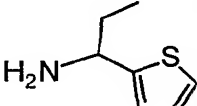
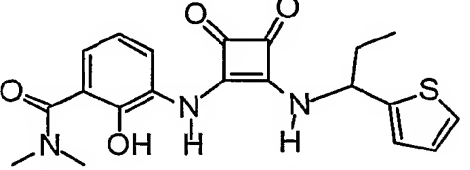
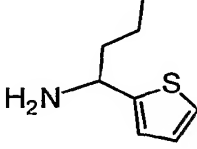
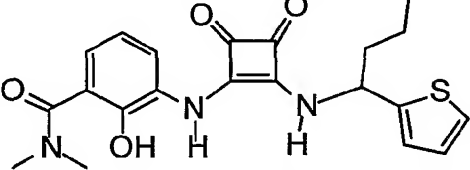
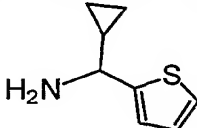
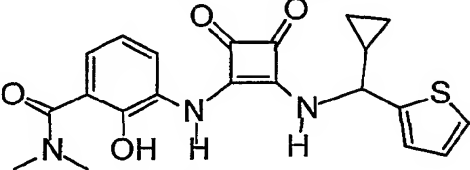
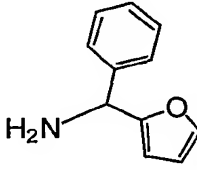
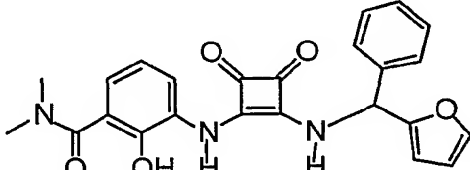
266

269	 (1S,2S)		1. 85% 2. 464.1 3. 111-113
270			1. 49% 2. 374.1 3. 146
271			1. 69% 2. 374.1 3. 158-162
272			1. 54% 2. 430.1 3. 108
273			1. 65% 2. 430.1 3. 110
274			1. 53% 2. 388.1 3. 136
275			1. 30% 2. 388.1 3. 114
276	(89) 		1. 53% 2. 402.1 3. 126
277	(90) 		1. 68% 2. 402.1 3. 116

278			1. 64% 2. 372.1 3. 106
279	(91) 		1. 69% 2. 434.1 3. 141-143
280	(92) 		1. 51% 2. 434.1 3. 148-150
281			1. 71% 2. 406.1 3. 146-148
282			1. 66% 2. 406.1 3. 141-144
283			1. 70% 2. 450.1 3. 97-99
284			1. 25% 2. 360.1 3. 139
285			1. 78% 2. 416.1 3. 94
286	(93) 		1. 49% 2. 372.1 3. 139

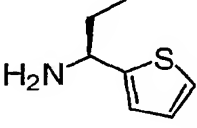
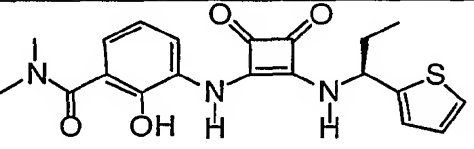
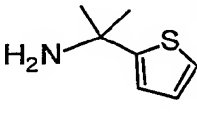
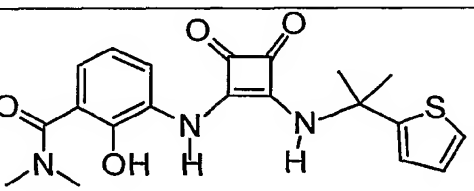
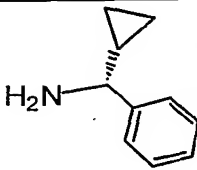
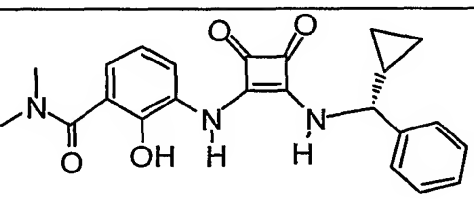
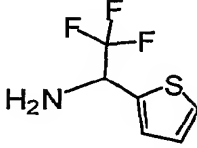
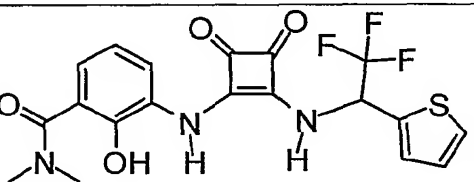
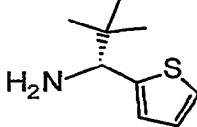
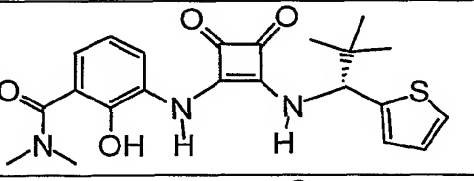
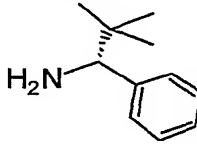
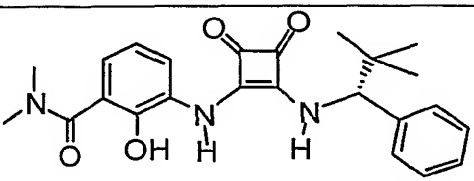
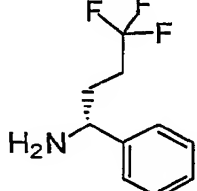
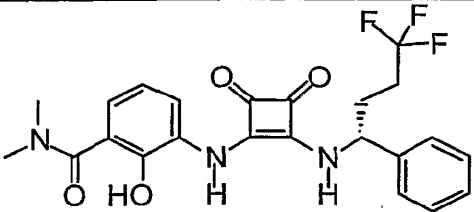
287	(94) 		1. 95% 2. 386.1 3. 139
288			1. 32% 2. 348 3. 130-133
289			1. 72% 2. 410.1 3. 138
290			1. 72% 2. 410.1 3. 132-134
291			1. 75% 2. 318.1 3. 96-98
292			1. 72% 2. 430.1 3. 125
293			1. 51% 2. 348 3. 109-111
294			1. 84% 2. 374 3. 150.3
295			1. 56% 2. 386 3. 142.3

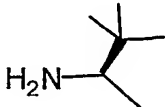
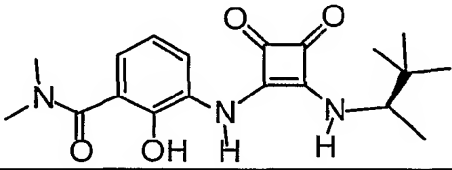
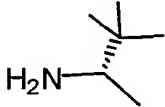
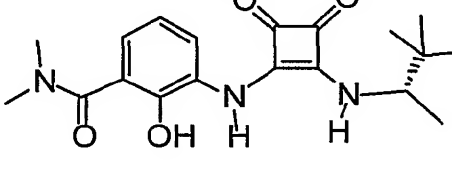
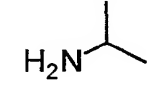
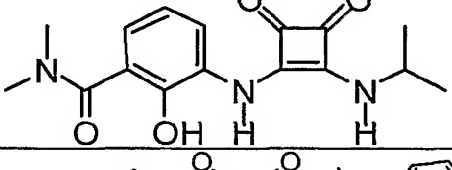
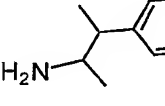
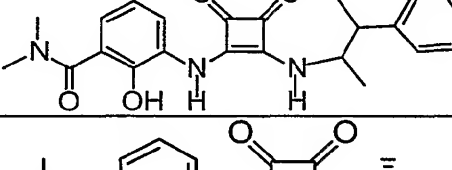
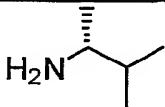
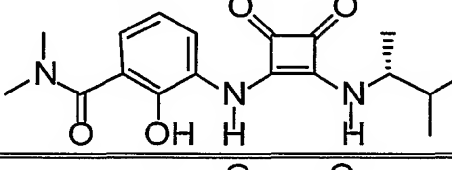
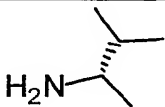
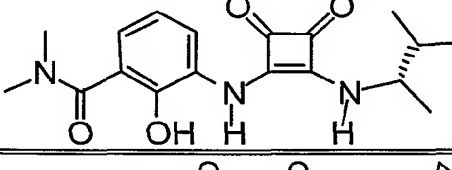
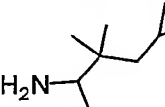
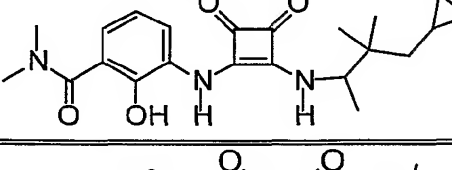
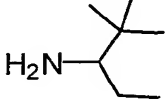
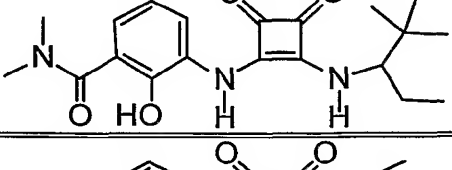
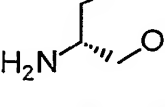
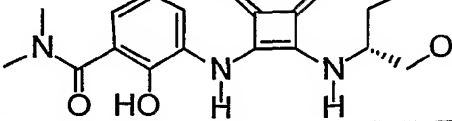
296			1. 38% 2. 382 3. 173.4
297			1. 13% 2. 370 3. 135.1
298			1. 47% 2. 424 3. 231.2-234.5
299			1. 34% 2. 316 3. 209.5
300			1. 92% 2. 392 3. 152.7
301			1. 52% 2. 346 3. 124.7
302			1. 51% 2. 346 3. 139.2
303			1. 29% 2. 408 3. 105

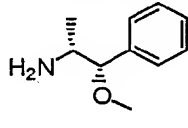
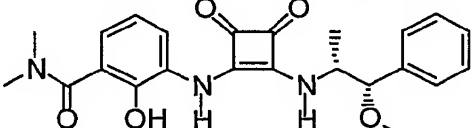
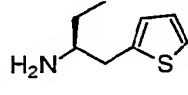
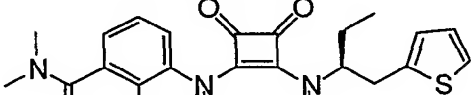
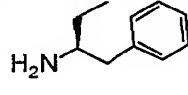
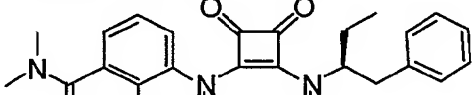
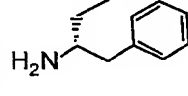
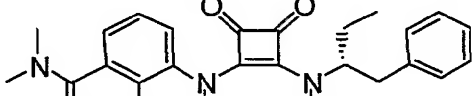
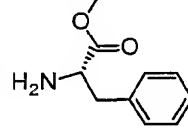
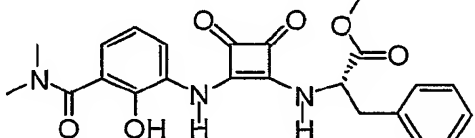
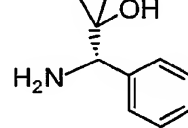
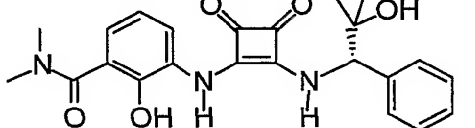
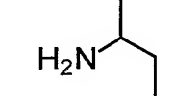
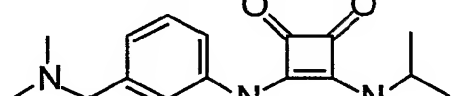
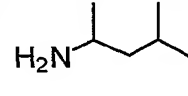
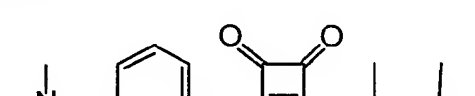
304			1. 24% 2. 372 3. 223.2
305			1. 25% 2. 442 3. 219.0
306			1. 83% 2. 386 3. 145
307			1. 58% 2. 400 3. 99.6
308			1. 60% 2. 414 3. 123.6
309			1. 44% 2. 412 3. 146.7
310			1. 39% 2. 432 3. 156.6

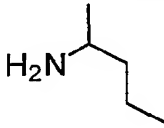
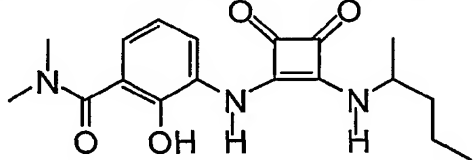
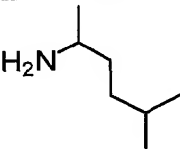
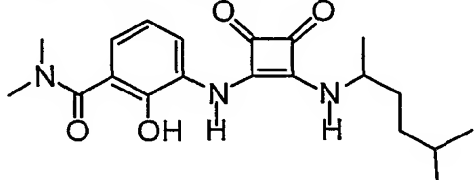
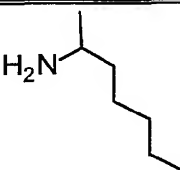
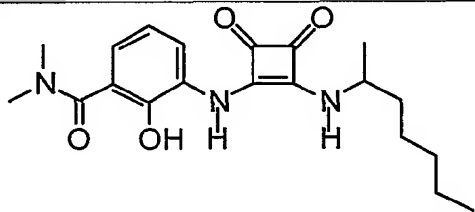
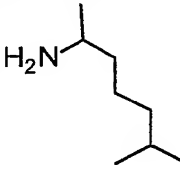
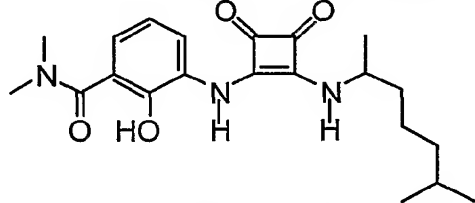
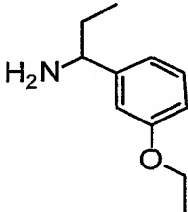
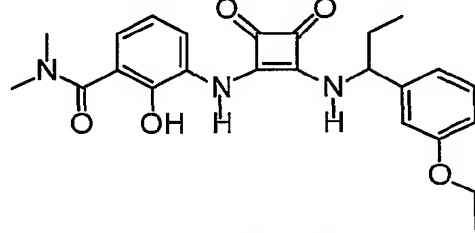
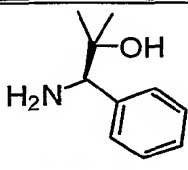
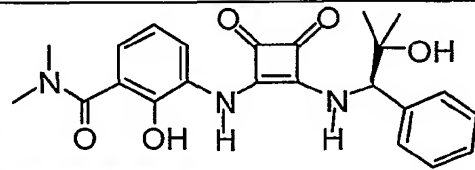
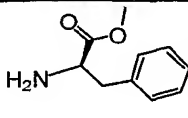
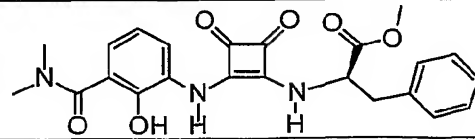
271

311			1. 65% 2. 448 3. 162.8
312			1. 53% 2. 449 3. 139.7
313			1. 64% 2. 454 3. 143.2
314			1. 35% 2. 428 3. 146.8
315			1. 72% 2. 476 3. 139.4
316			1. 36% 2. 402 3. 89.6
317			1. 62% 2. 400 3. 130.2

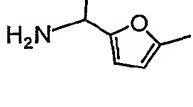
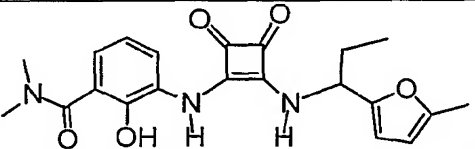
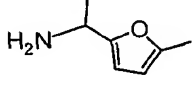
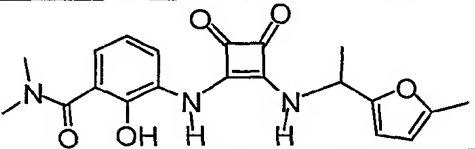
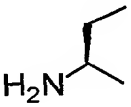
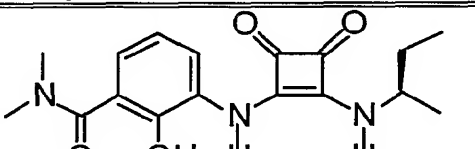
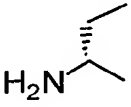
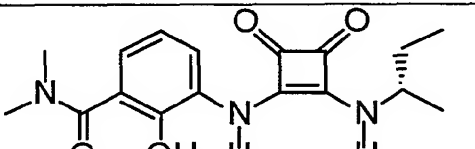
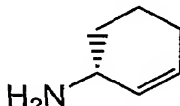
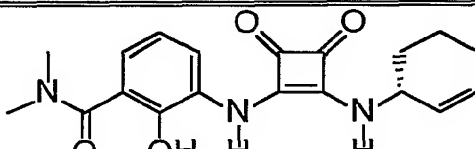
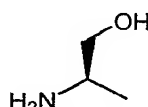
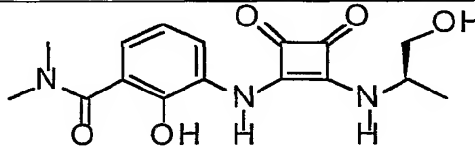
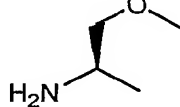
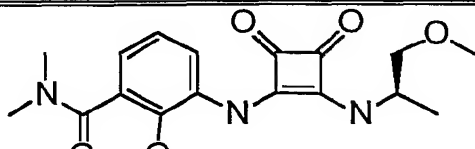
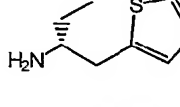
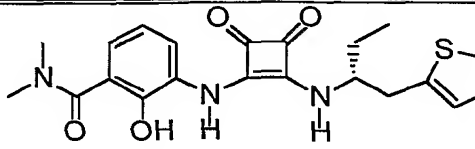
318			1. 46% 2. 400 3. 123.6
319			1. 64% 2. 400 3. 132.5
320			1. 79% 2. 406 3. 123.3
321			1. 17% 2. 440 3. 157.6
322			1. 58% 2. 428 3. 167.9
323			1. 50% 2. 422 3. 150.2
324			1. 20% 2. 462 3. 113.9

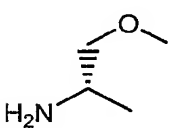
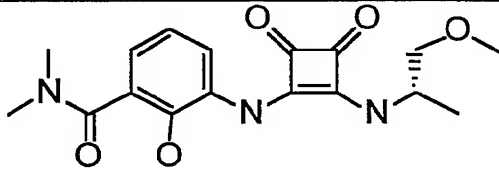
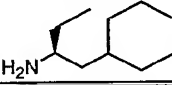
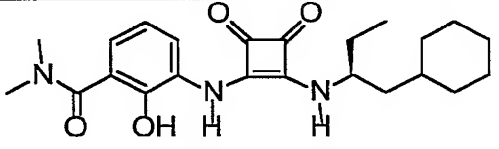
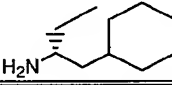
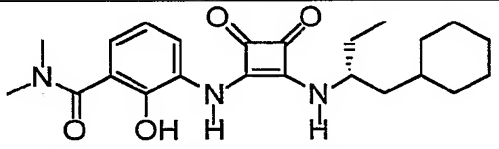
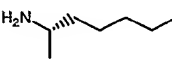
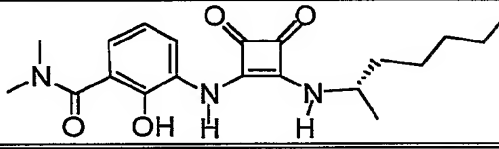
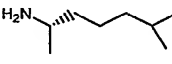
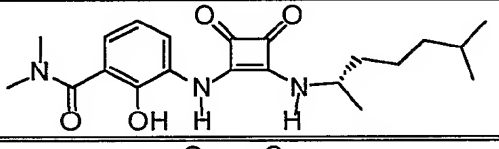

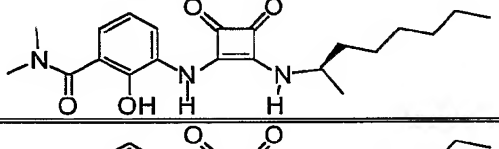
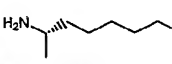
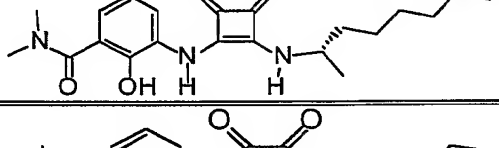
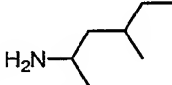
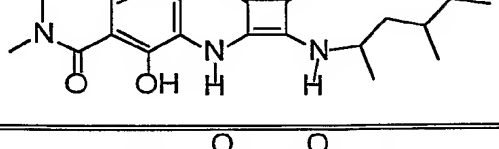
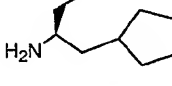
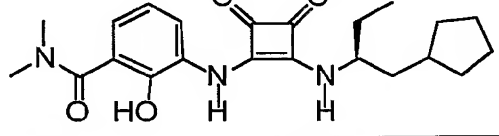
325			1. 95% 2. 360 3. 129.2
326			1. 97% 2. 360 3. 131.5
327			1. 39% 2. 318 3. 138.5
328			1. 54% 2. 408 3. 152.3
329			1. 62% 2. 346 3. 134.8
330			1. 55% 2. 346 3. 145.1
331			1. 61% 2. 400 3. 137.6
332			1. 42% 2. 374 3. 155.1
333			1. 45% 2. 348 3. 108-110

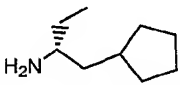
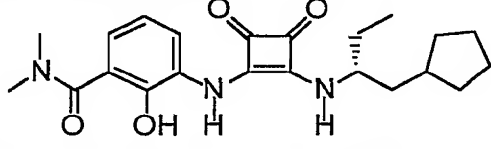
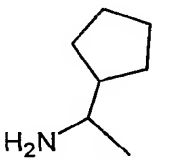
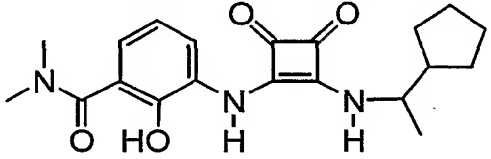
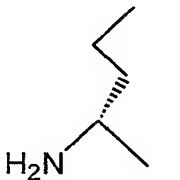
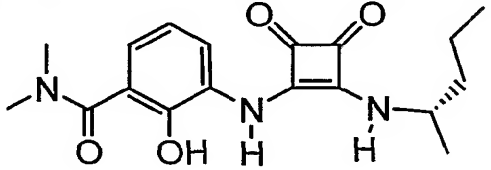
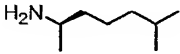
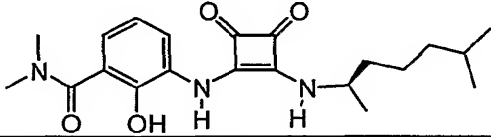
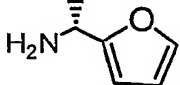
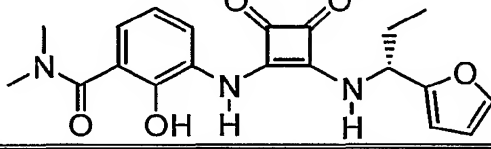
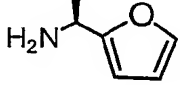
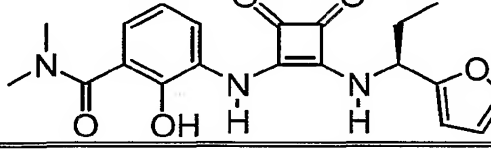
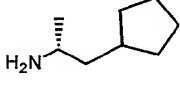
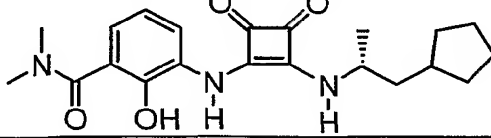
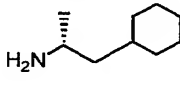
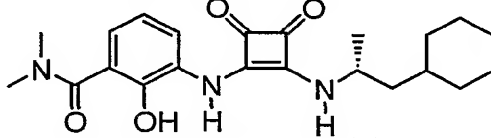
334			1. 29% 2. 424 3. 116
335			1. 15% 2. 414 3. 108-110
336			1. 75% 2. 408 3. 116
337			1. 75% 2. 408 3. 116
338			1. 59% 2. 424 3. 115-117
339			1. 72% 2. 424 3. 157-159
340			1. 19% 2. 332 3. 131
341			1. 86% 2. 360 3. 127

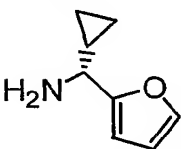
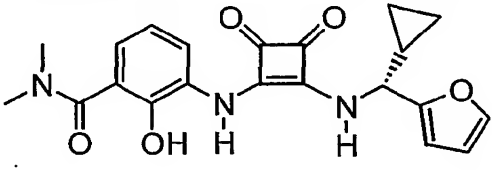
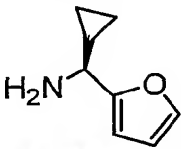
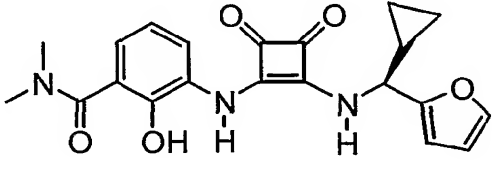
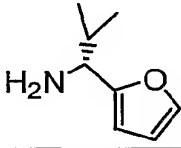
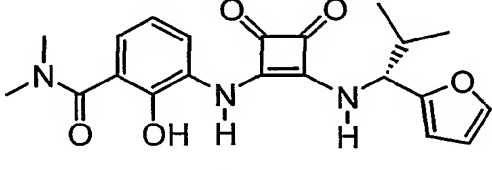
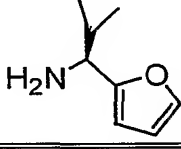
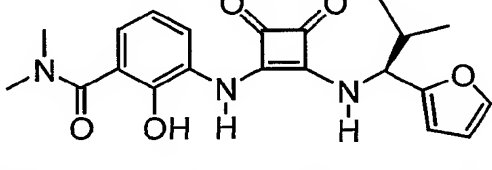
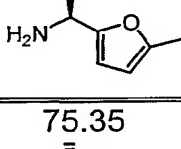
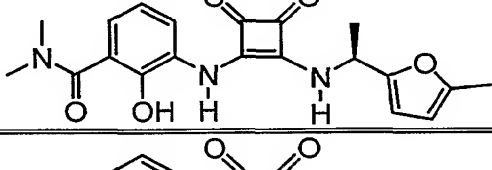
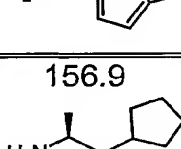
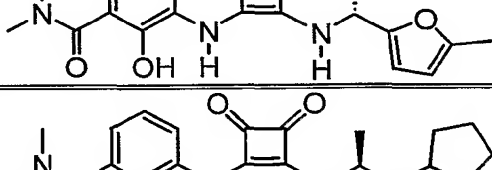
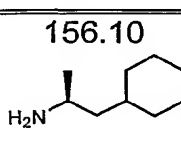
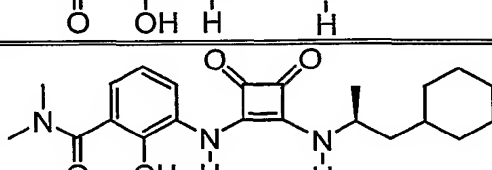
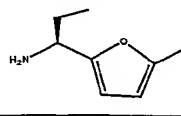
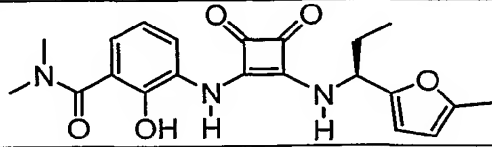


342			1. 98% 2. 346 3. 128
343			1. 80% 2. 374 3. 131.5
344			1. 46% 2. 374 3. 102
345			1. 75% 2. 388 3. 104
346			1. 76% 2. 438 3. 95
347			1. 72% 2. 424 3. 163-165
348			1. 73% 2. 438 3. 96-98

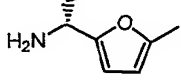
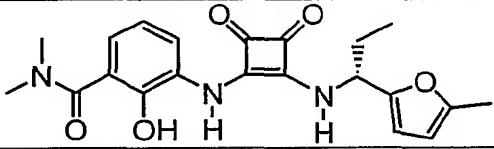
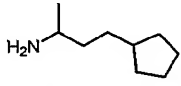
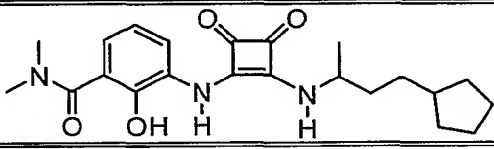
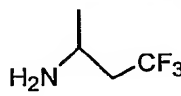
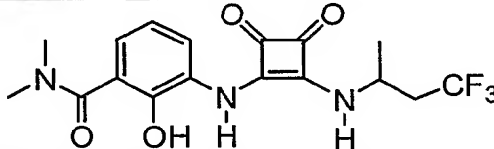
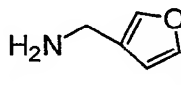
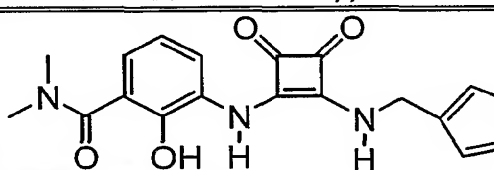
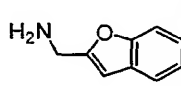
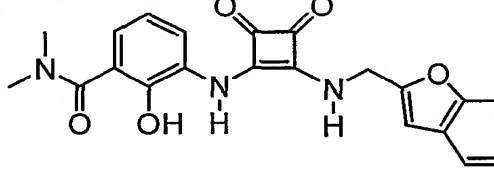
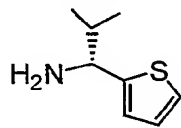
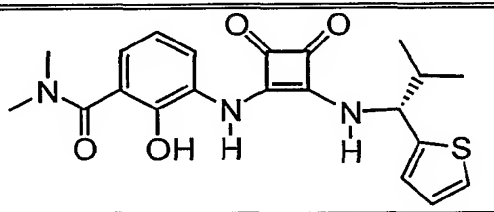
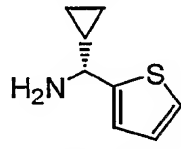
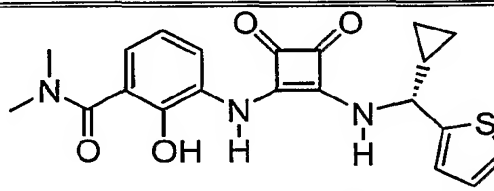
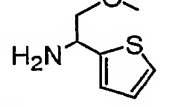
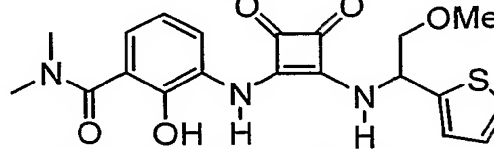
349			1. 53% 2. 362 3. 89-91
350			1. 59% 2. 362 3. 90-92
351			1. 61% 2. 362 3. 120-122
352			1. 70% 2. 362 3. 121-123
353			1. 23% 2. 371 3. 126
354			1. 79% 2. 370 3. 108
355			1. 80% 2. 370 3. 106
356			1. 56% 2. 450 3. 138-140

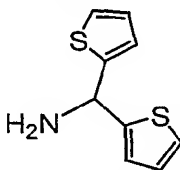
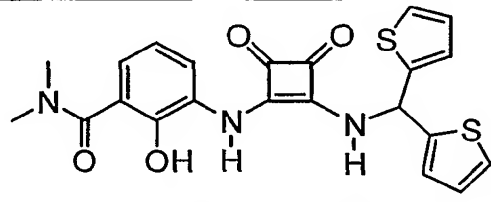
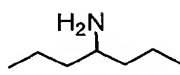
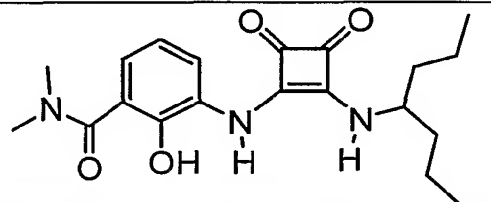
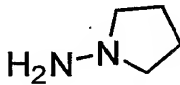
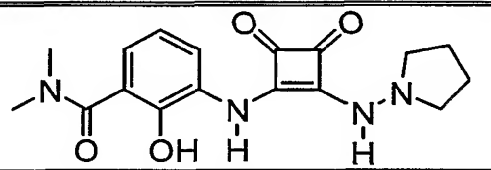
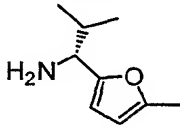
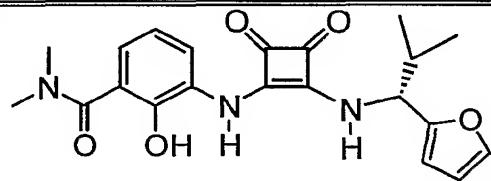
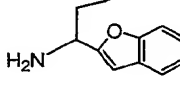
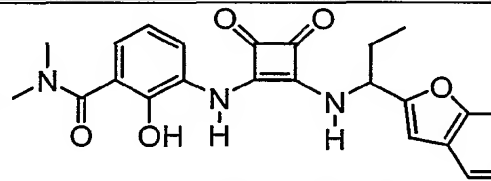
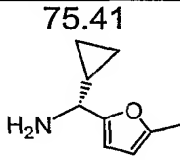
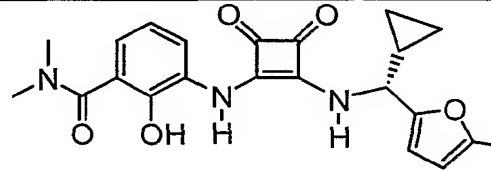
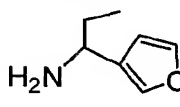
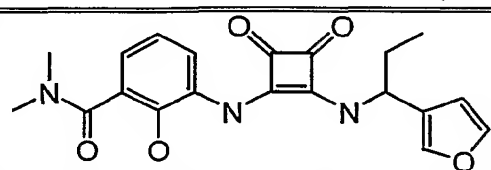
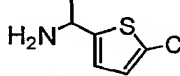
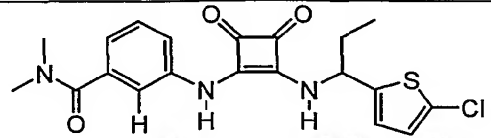
357			1. 76% 2. 398 3. 116
358			1. 85% 2. 384 3. 100
359			1. 59% 2. 332 3. 138.6
360			1. 47% 2. 332 3. 141.6
360.1			1. 89% 2. 356.1 3. 133-135
360.2			1. 65% 2. 334.1 3. 121-122
360.3	89.1 		1. 60% 2. 348.1 3. 94-96
360.4	156.23 		1. 29% 2. 414.1 3. 108-110

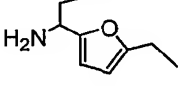
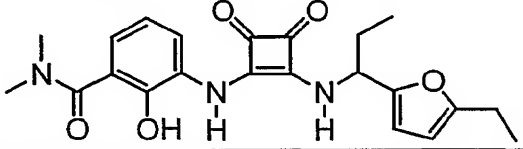
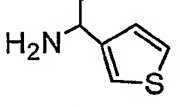
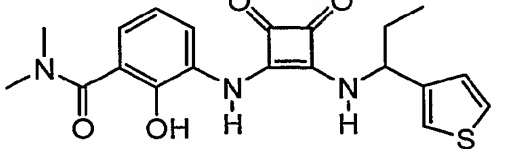
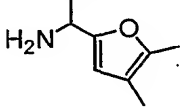
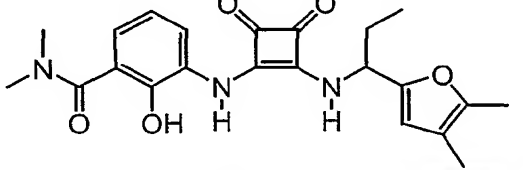
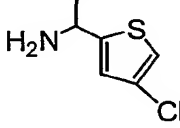
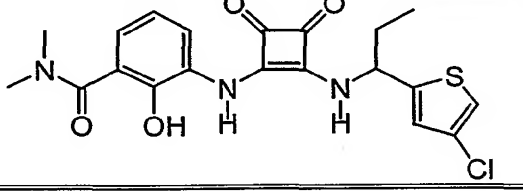
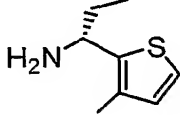
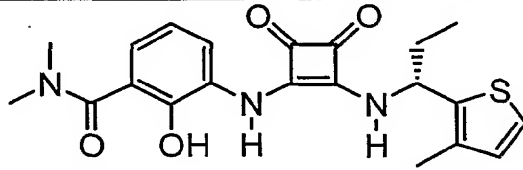
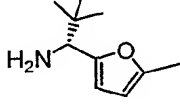
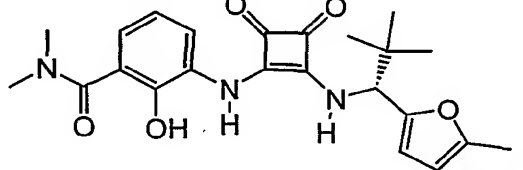
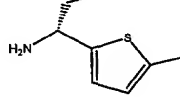
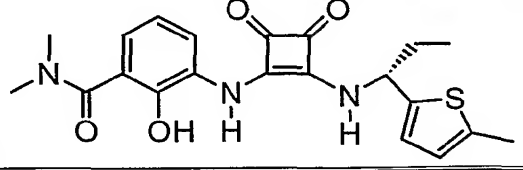
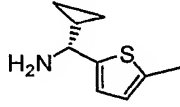
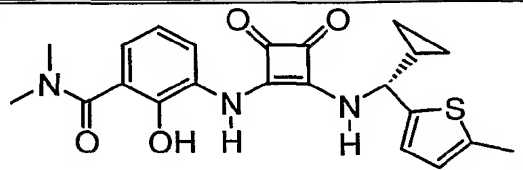
360.5	89.2 		1. 67% 2. 348.1 3. 95-96
360.6	156.3 		1. 62% 2. 414.1 3. 113-115
360.7	156.4 		1. 68% 2. 414.1 3. 114-116
360.8			1. 74% 2. 374 3. 129.8
360.9			1. 61% 2. 388 3. 123.1
360.10			1. 53% 2. 388 3. 117.2
360.11			1. 37% 2. 388 3. 129.9
360.12			1. 62% 2. 374 3. 126.1
360.13	156.5 		1. 71% 2. 400.1 3. 106-109

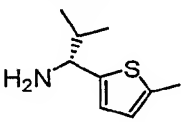
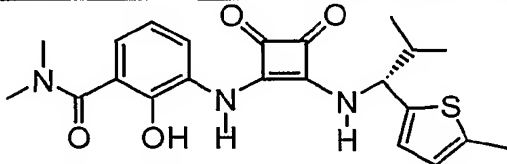
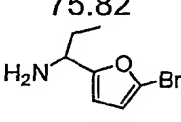
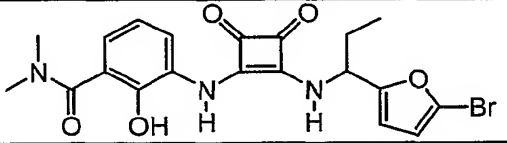
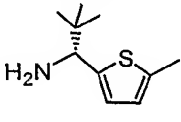
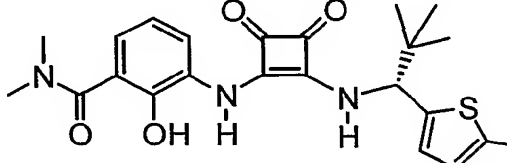
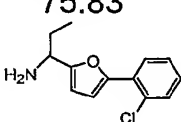
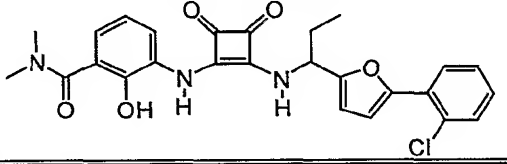
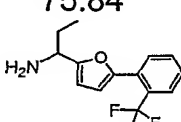
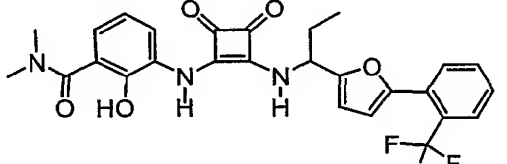
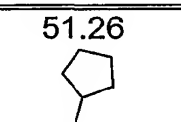
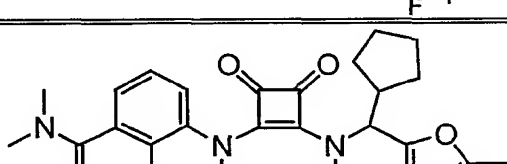
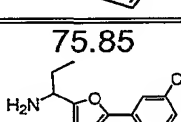
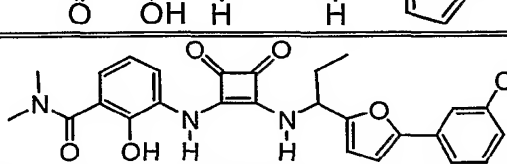
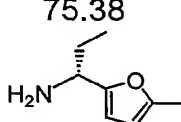
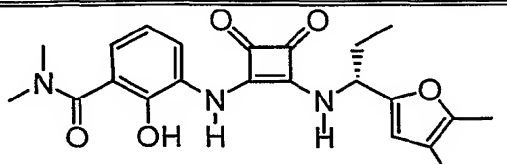
360.14	156.6 		1. 66% 2. 400.1 3. 106-109
360.15			1. 69% 2. 372 3. 138.7
360.16			1. 54% 2. 346 3. 123.6
360.17			1. 53% 2. 388 3. 116.9
360.18	75.55 		1. 87% 2. 384.1 3. 136
360.19	75.56 		1. 92% 2. 384.1 3. 136
360.20	156.7 		1. 27% 2. 386.1 3. 109-112
360.21	156.8 		1. 31% 2. 400.1 3. 117-120

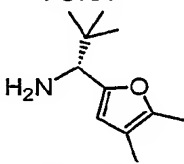
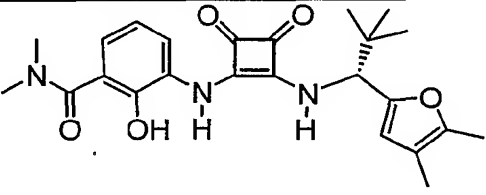
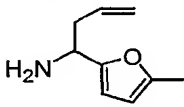
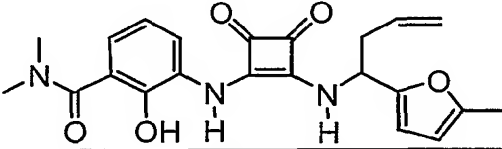
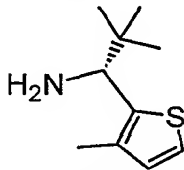
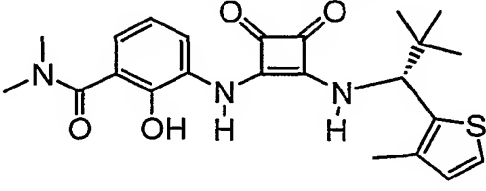
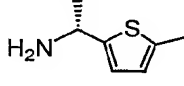
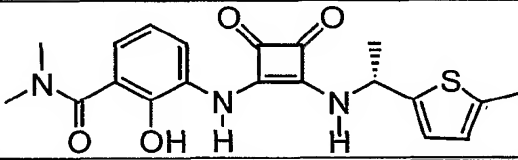
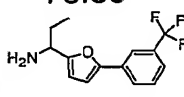
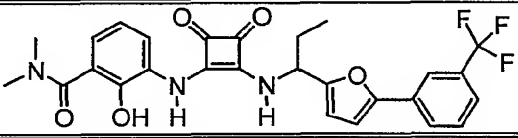
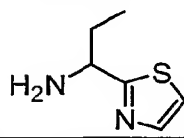
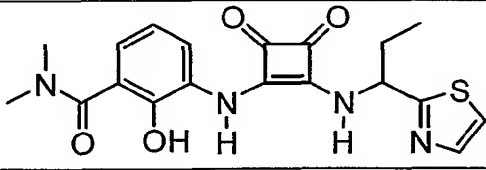
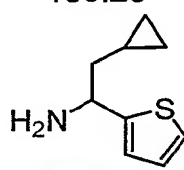
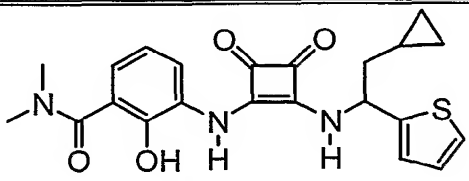
360.22	75.11 		1. 61% 2. 396.1 3. 129
360.23	75.12 		1. 69% 2. 396.1 3. 126
360.24	75.13 		1. 74% 2. 398.1 3. 123
360.25	75.14 		1. 76% 2. 398.1 3. 123
360.26	75.39 		1. 60% 2. 384.1 3. 103-105
360.27	75.35 		1. 67% 2. 384.1 3. 104-106
360.28	156.9 		1. 70% 2. 386.1 3. 103-105
360.29	156.10 		1. 64% 2. 400.1 3. 109-111
360.30	75.2 		1. 63% 2. 398.1 3. 99-101

360.31	75.1 		1. 57% 2. 398.1 3. 99-101
360.32			1. 45% 2. 400 3. 104.6
360.33			1. 44% 2. 386 3. 143
360.34			1. 73% 2. 356.1 3. 218-220
360.35			1. 97% 2. 406.1 3. 154
360.36	75.15 		1. 77% 2. 414.1 3. 122-124
360.37	75.16 		1. 70% 2. 412.1 3. 99-101
360.38	156.18 		1. 69% 2. 416.1 3. 107-109

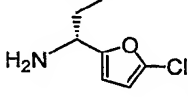
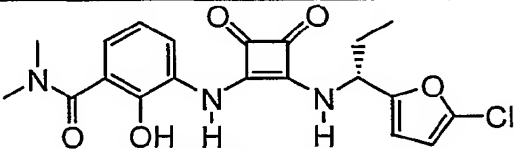
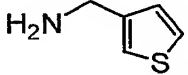
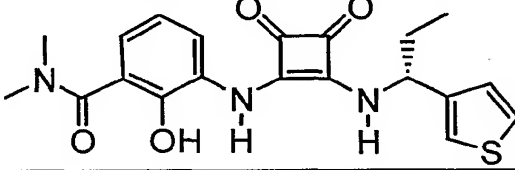
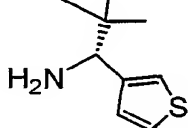
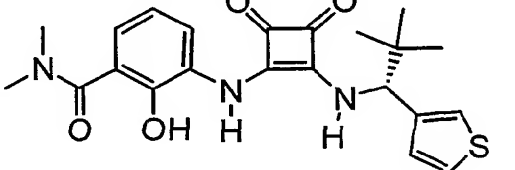
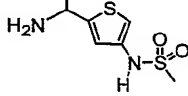
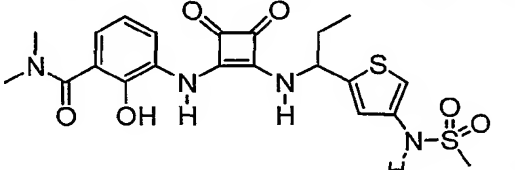
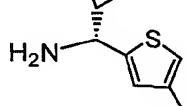
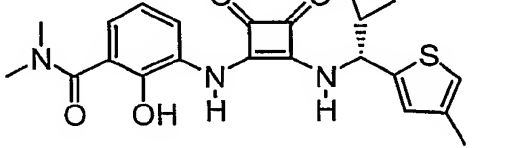
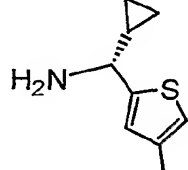
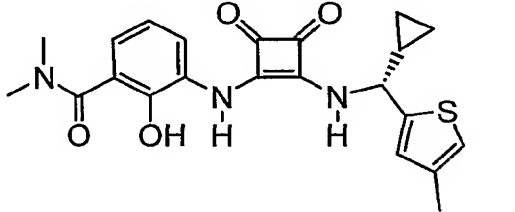
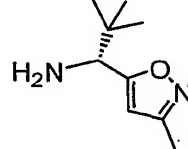
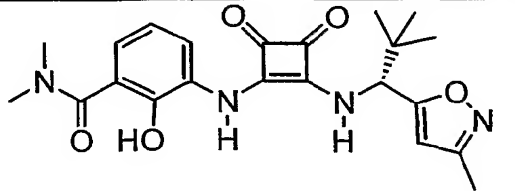
360.39	156.17 		1. 43% 2. 454.1 3. 128-130
360.40			1. 40% 2. 374.1 3. 132-136
360.41			1. 60% 2. 345.1 3. 205-207
360.42	75.45 		1. 96% 2. 412.1 3. 112
360.43	75.77 		1. 30% 2. 434.1 3. 117-119
360.44	75.41 		1. 96% 2. 410.1 3. 139
360.45	75.76 		1. 65% 2. 384.1 3. 87-89
360.46	75.78 		1. 50% 2. 434.1 3. 123-125

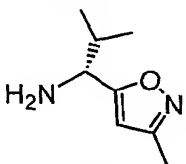
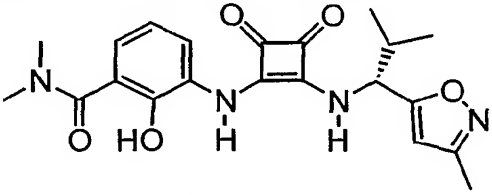
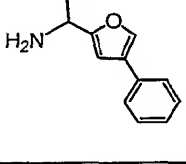
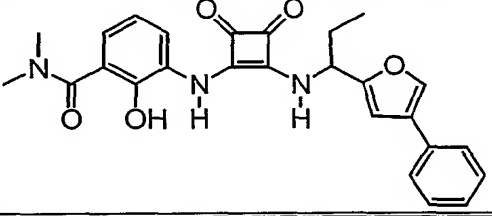
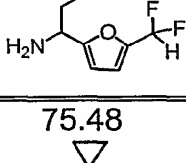
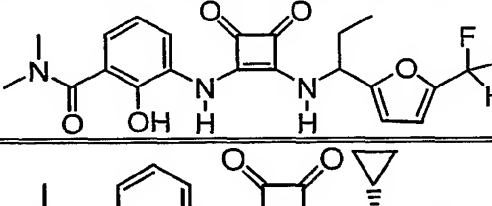
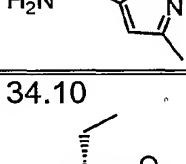
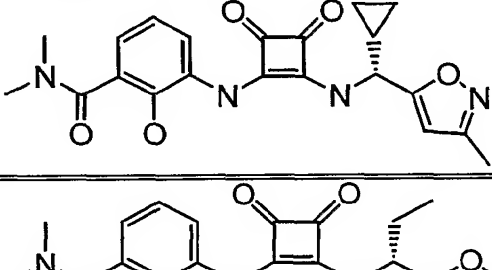
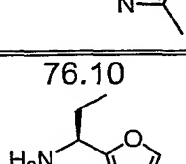
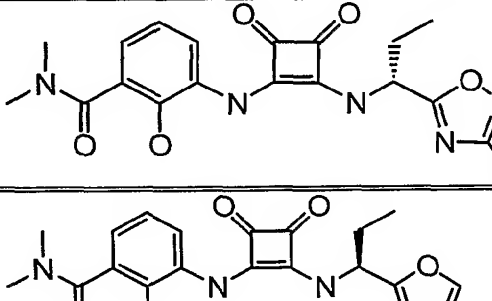
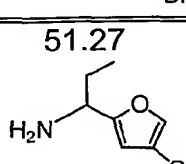
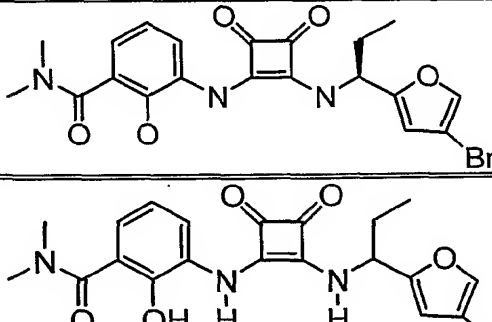
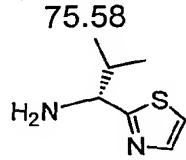
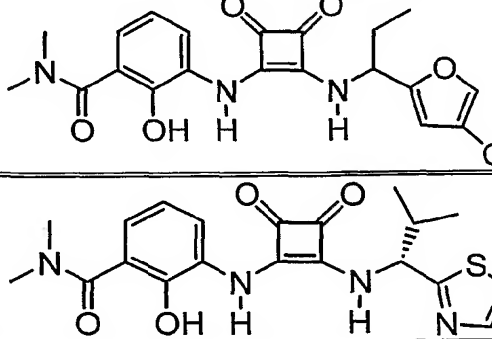

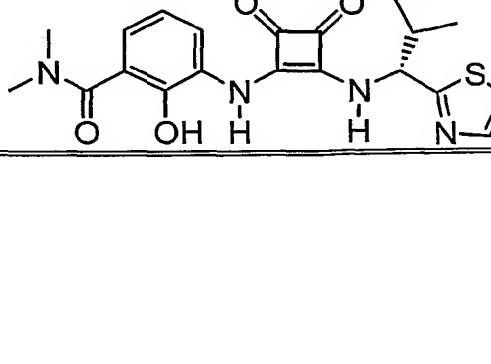
360.47	75.79 		1. 74% 2. 412.1 3. 84-86
360.48	75.80 		1. 73% 2. 400.1 3. 136-140
360.49	75.81 		1. 74% 2. 412.1 3. 103-105
360.50	156.19 		1. 63% 2. 434.1 3. 114-117
360.51	75.3 		1. 74% 2. 414.1 3. 130-133
360.52	75.44 		1. 71% 2. 426.1 3. 138
360.53	75.17 		1. 41% 2. 414 3. 139-141
360.54	75.18 		1. 32% 2. 426 3. 148-150

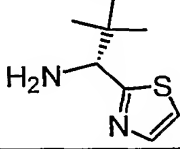
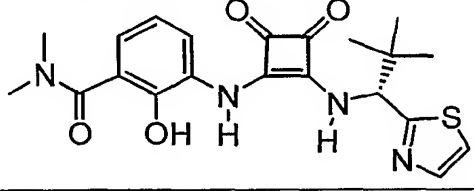
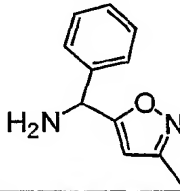
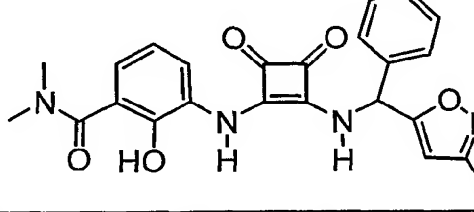
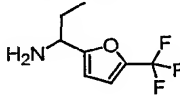
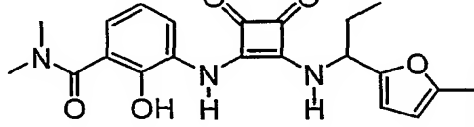
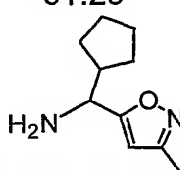
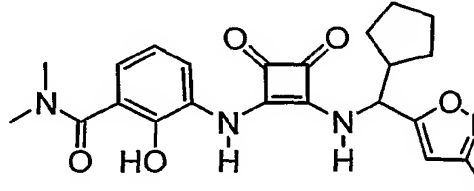
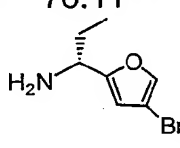
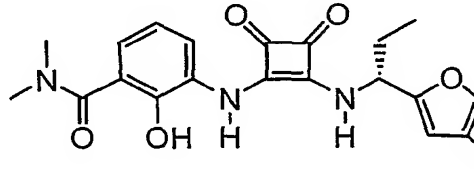
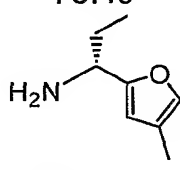
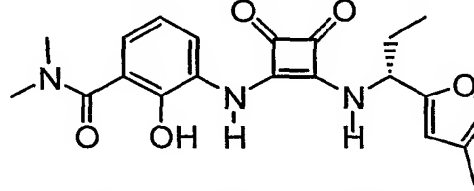
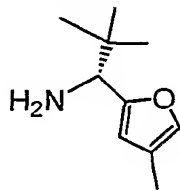
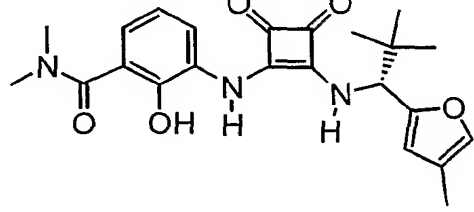
360.55	75.19 		1. 57% 2. 428 3. 159-163
360.56	75.82 		1. 44% 2. 464.1 3. 86-88
360.57	75.20 		1. 37% 2. 442 3. 158-162
360.58	75.83 		1. 53% 2. 494.1 3. 148-151
360.59	75.84 		1. 63% 2. 528.1 3. 90-95
360.60	51.26 		1. 73% 2. 438.1 3. 116
360.61	75.85 		1. 55% 2. 494.1 3. 133-135
360.62	75.38 		1. 83% 2. 412.1 3. 119

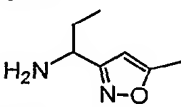
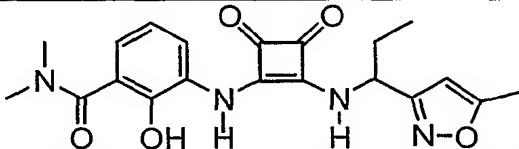
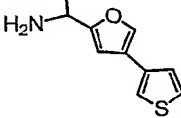
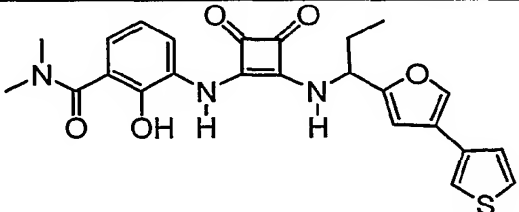
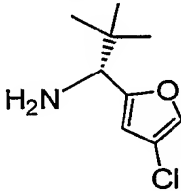
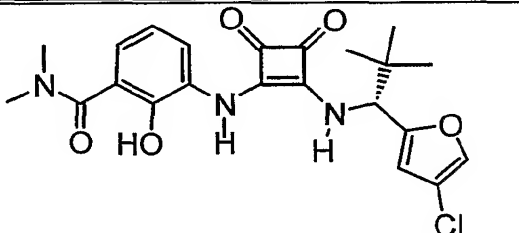
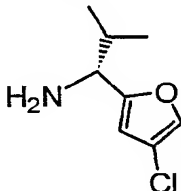
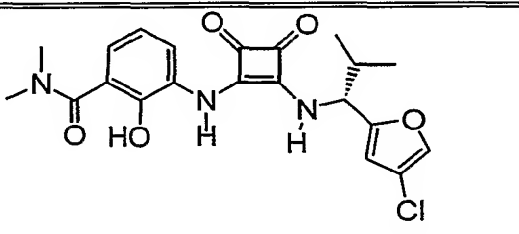
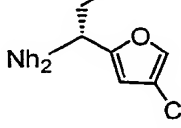
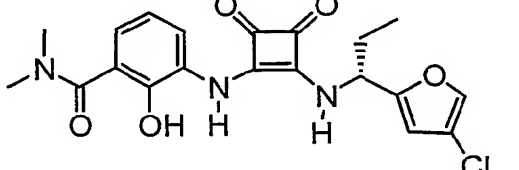
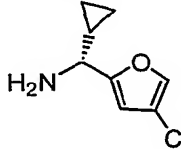
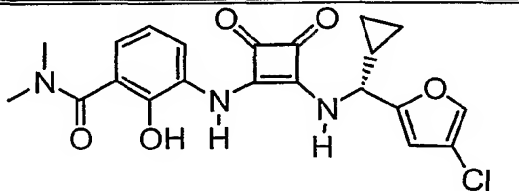
360.63	75.37 		1. 66% 2. 440.1 3. 110
360.64	51.10 		1. 49% 2. 410.1 3. 97
360.65	75.4 		1. 40% 2. 442.1 3. 157-160
360.66	75.21 		1. 75% 2. 400 3. 136-140
360.67	75.86 		1. 63% 2. 528.1 3. 106-108
360.68	75.87 		1. 10% 2. 401.1 3. 111-113
360.69	156.20 		1. 5% 2. 426.1

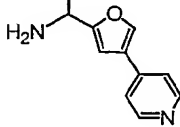
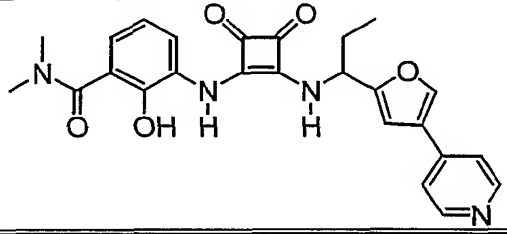
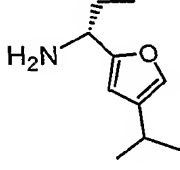
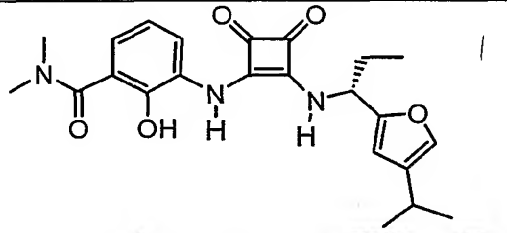
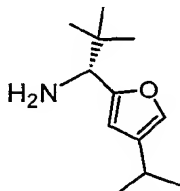
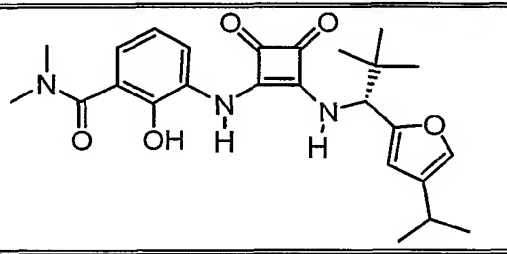
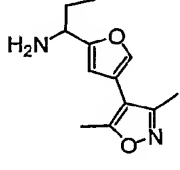
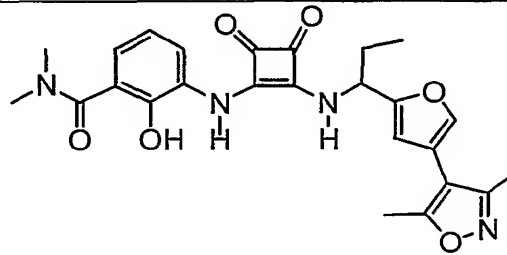
360.70	75.5 		1. 56% 2. 442.1 3. 152-154
360.71	75.6 		1. 46% 2. 414.1 3. 122-124
360.72	156.21 		1. 62% 2. 385.1 3. 130-133
360.73	75.57 		1. 41% 2. 399.1 3. 83-85
360.74	51.11 		1. 70% 2. 414.1 3. 98-101
360.75	51.12 		1. 62% 2. 441.1 3. 98-102
360.76	75.90 		1. 79% 2. 464.1 3. 111

360.77	75.59 		1. 79% 2. 418.1 3. 107
360.78	75.42 		1. 65% 2. 400.1 3. 109-112
360.79	75.43 		1. 21% 2. 428.1 3. 126
360.80	13.28 		1. 55% 2. 493.1 3. 155-158
360.81	75.7 		1. 67% 2. 428.1 3. 138-140
360.82	75.8 		1. 68% 2. 426.1 3. 121-123
360.83	75.46 		1. 25% 2. 427.1 3. 139

360.84	75.47 		1. 62% 2. 413.1 3. 128
360.85	75.88 		1. 49% 2. 460.1 3. 112-114
360.86	75.89 		1. 71% 2. 434.1 3. 91-93
360.87	75.48 		1. 57% 2. 411.1 3. 125
360.88	34.10 		1. 12% 2. 400.1 3. 131-133
360.89	76.10 		1. 60% 2. 464.1 3. 111-113
360.90	51.27 		1. 60% 2. 418.1 3. 113
360.91	75.58 		1. 55% 2. 415.1 3. 140-143

360.92	75.36 		1. 55% 2. 429 3. 185-190
360.93	51.28 		1. 3% 2. 447.1
360.94	51.30 		1. 71% 2. 452.1 3. 106
360.95	51.29 		1. 44% 2. 439.1 3. 112
360.96	76.11 		1. 71% 2. 464.1 3. 111-113
360.97	75.49 		1. 70% 2. 398.1 3. 106-108
360.98	75.50 		1. 46% 2. 426.1 3. 140-142

360.99	34.9 		1. 62% 2. 399.1 3. 109-112
360.100	76.1 		1. 60% 2. 466.1 3. 129-131
360.101	75.52 		1. 49% 2. 446.1 3. 146
360.102	75.51 		1. 48% 2. 432.1 3. 116
360.103	75.53 		1. 62% 2. 418.1 3. 126
360.104	75.54 		1. 47% 2. 430.1 3. 136

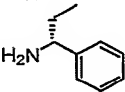
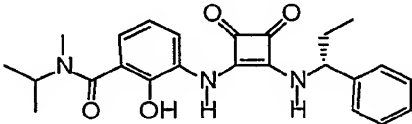
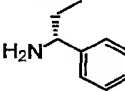
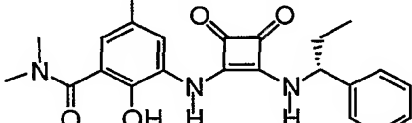
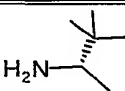
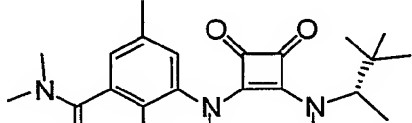
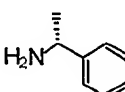
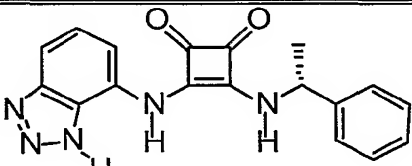
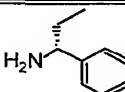
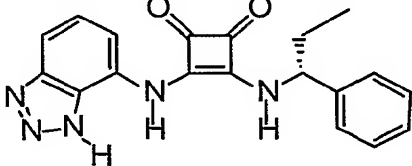
360.105	76.2 		1. 42% 2. 461.1 3. 131-134
360.106	75.9 		1. 93% 2. 426.1 3. 123-125
360.107	75.10 		1. 26% 2. 454.1 3. 132-134
360.108	76.3 		1. 12% 2. 479.1 3. 129-132

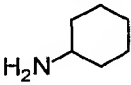
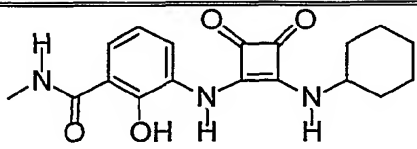
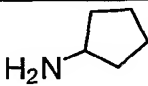
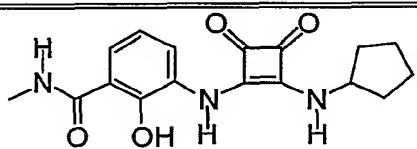
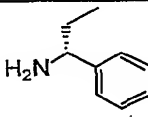
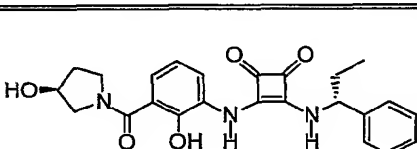
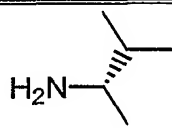
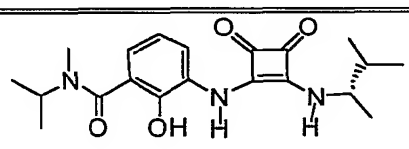
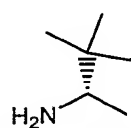
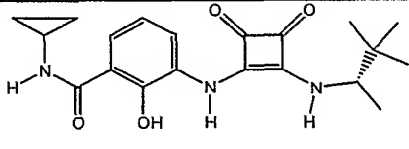
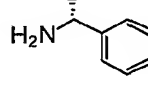
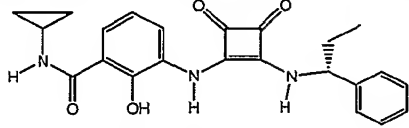
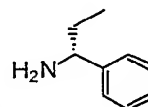
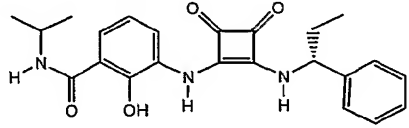
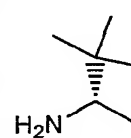
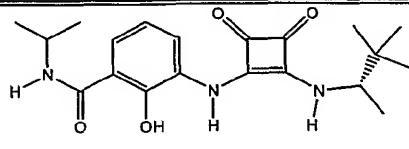
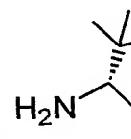
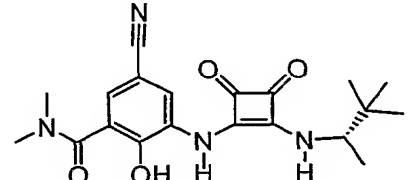
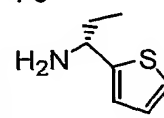
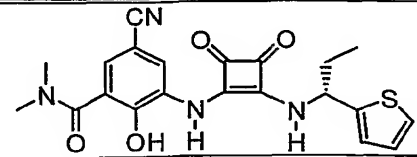
EXAMPLES 361-368.31

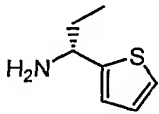
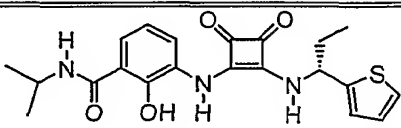
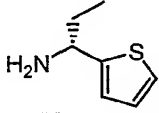
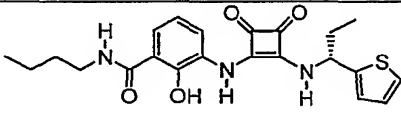
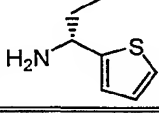
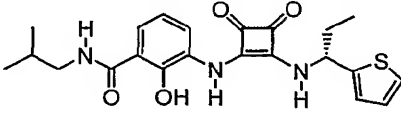
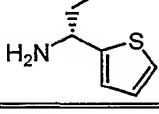
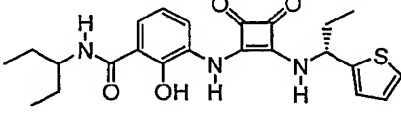
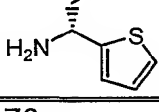
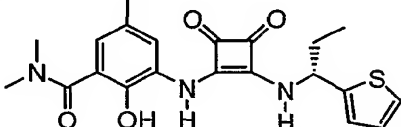
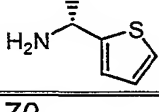
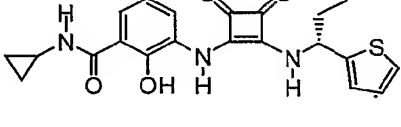
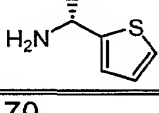
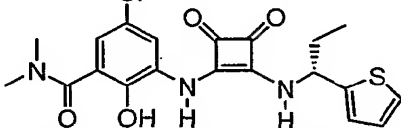
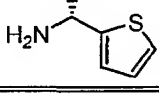
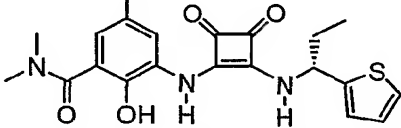
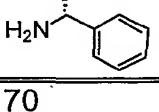
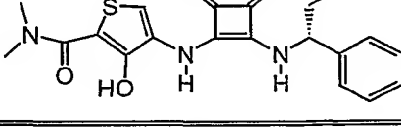
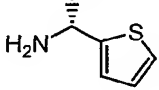
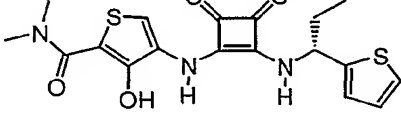
5

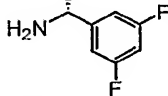
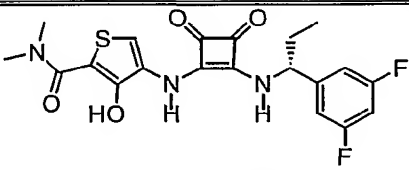
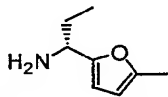
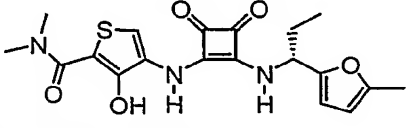
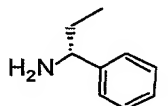
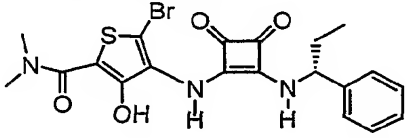
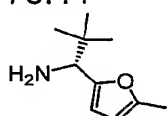
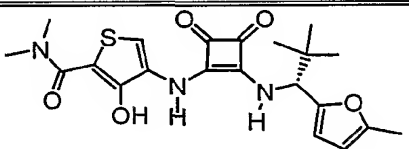
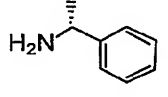
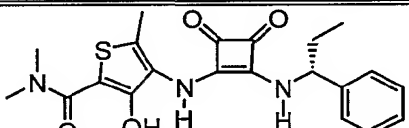
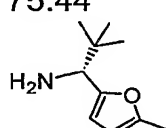
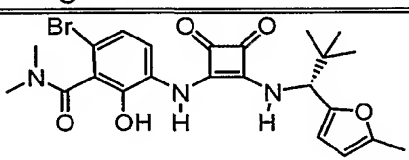
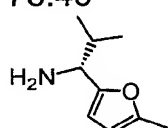
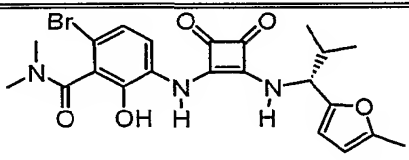
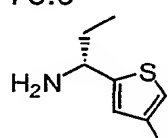
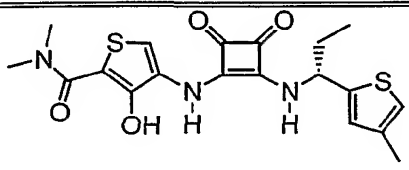
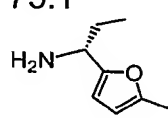
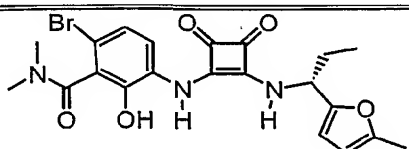
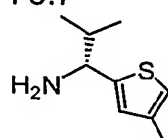
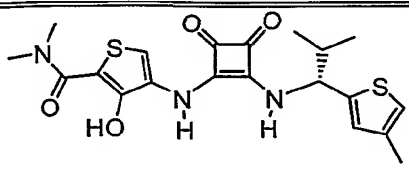
Following the procedure set forth in Example 261 but using the commercially available amine in the table below and the cyclobutenedione intermediate from the Preparative Example indicated, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

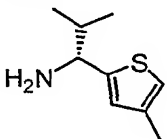
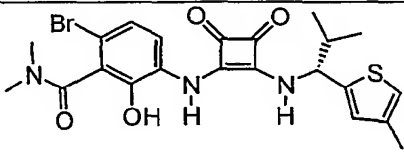
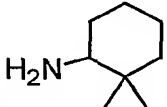
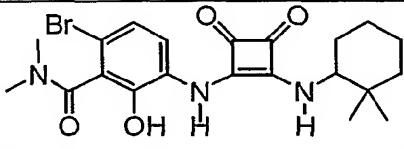
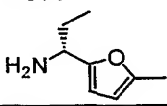
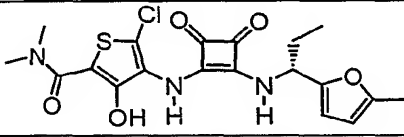
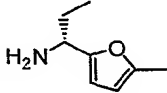
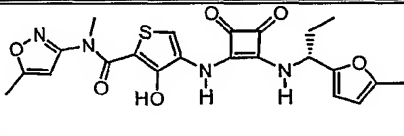
10

Ex.	Amine	Prep. Ex.	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH^+ 3. mp ($^{\circ}C$)
361		20		1. 57% 2. 422 3. 172.4
362		21		1. 53% 2. 408 3. 139.8
363		21		1. 70% 2. 374 3. 167.8-170.1
364		23		1. 21% 2. 334 3. 184.3
365		23		1. 61% 2. 348 3. 205.6

366		21.1		1. 75% 2. 344 3. 170-172
367		21.1		1. 66% 2. 330 3. 160-162
368		22		1. 31% 2. 436 3. 140-145
368.1		20		1. 8% 2. 374 3. 130-133
368.2		23.1		1. 56% 2. 372 3. 188-191
368.3		23.1		1. 67% 2. 406 3. 142-144
368.4		23.2		1. 69% 2. 408 3. 147-150
368.5		23.2		1. 67% 2. 374 3. 177-180
368.6		23.3		1. 45% 2. 385 3. 236-240
368.7	70 	23.3		1. 35% 2. 425 3. 248-251

368.8	70 	23.2		1. 66% 2. 414 3. 156-160
368.9	70 	23.4		1. 78% 2. 428 3. 138-140
368.10	70 	23.5		1. 46% 2. 428 3. 149-153
368.11	70 	23.6		1. 54% 2. 412 3. 136-138
368.12	70 	21		1. 30% 2. 414 3. 164-167
368.13	70 	23.1		1. 25% 2. 412 3. 172-177
368.14	70 	23.7		1. 21% 2. 434 3. 208-211
368.15	70 	23.8		1. 27% 2. 478 3. 216-219
368.16		23.9		1. 63% 2. 400
368.17	70 	23.9		1. 61% 2. 406.1 3. 127 DEC

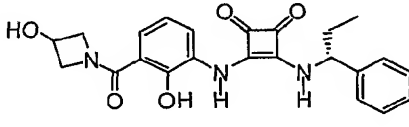
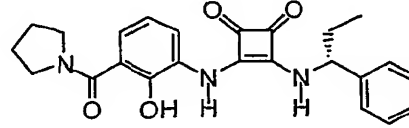
368.18	75.29 	23.9		1. 68% 2. 436.1 3. 128 DEC
368.19	75.1 	23.9		1. 72% 2. 404.1 3. 126 DEC
368.20		23.10		1. 8.4% 2. 478
368.21	75.44 	23.9		1. 39% 2. 432.1 3. 151-153
368.22		23.12		1. 78% 2. 414.1 3. 210 DEC
368.23	75.44 	23.11		1. 4% 2. 504
368.24	75.45 	23.11		1. 31% 2. 490 3. 241-245
368.25	75.6 	23.9		1. 81% 2. 420.1 3. 126-128
368.26	75.1 	23.11		1. 8% 2. 476 3. 193-198
368.27	75.7 	23.9		1. 70% 2. 434.1 3. 130 DEC

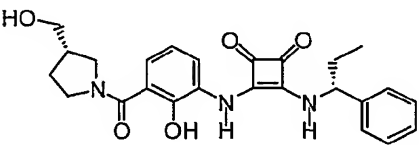
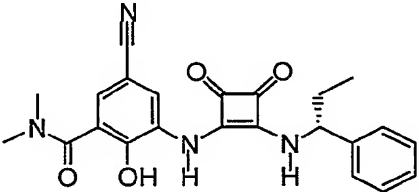
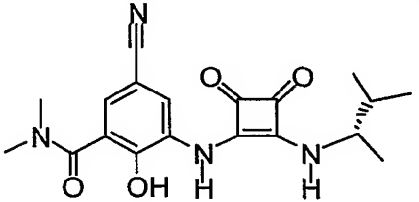
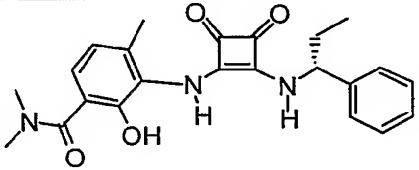
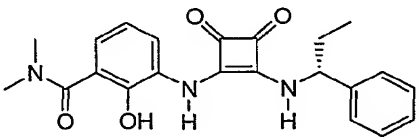
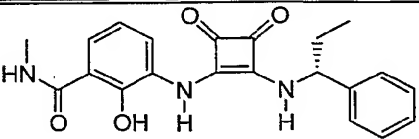
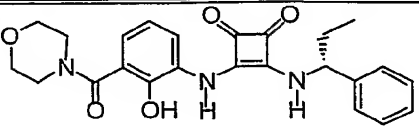
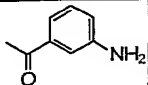
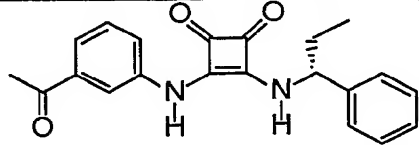
368.28	75.7 	23.11		1. 83% 2. 506 3. 222-227
368.29		23.11		1. 17% 2. 464 3. 183-190
368.30	75.1 	23.13		1. 6.5% 2. 438.1
368.31	75.1 	23.14		1. 71% 2. 471.1 3. 149-151

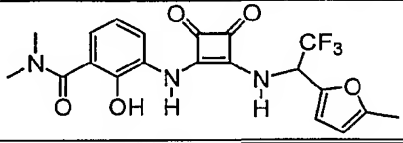
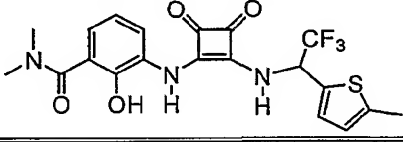
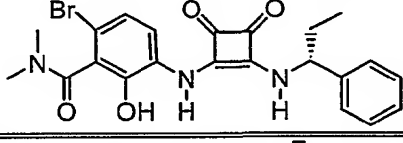
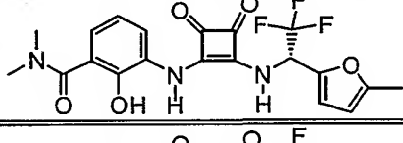
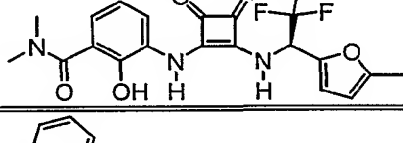
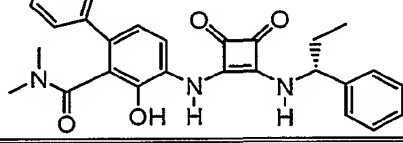
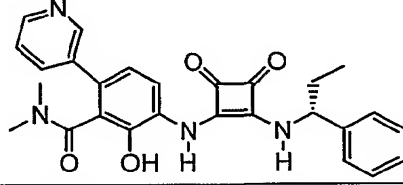
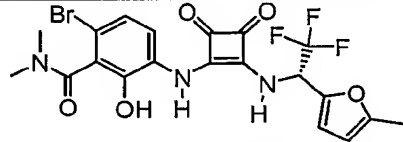
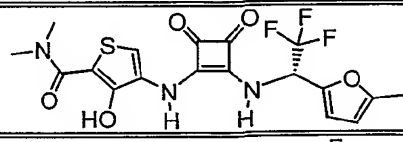
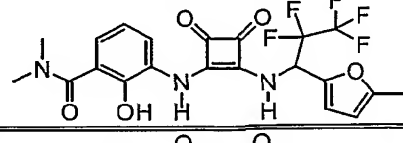
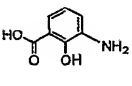
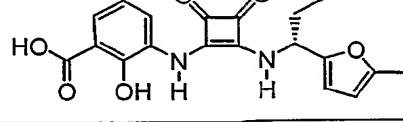
EXAMPLES 369-378.23

5

Following the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the cyclobutenedione intermediate from Preparative Example indicated and the amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

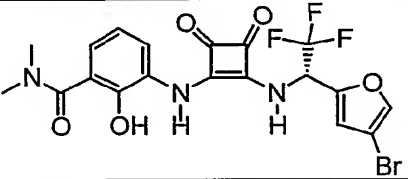
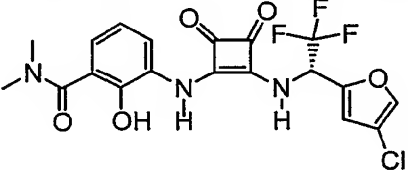
Ex.	Prep Ex of Amine	Prep Ex of Cyclobutene intermediate	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺ 3. mp (°C)
369	8	87		1. 41% 2. 422 3. 135-140
370	9	87		1. 60% 2. 420 3. 120-125

371	10	87		1. 59% 2. 450 3. 162-167
372	12	87		1. 34% 2. 419 3. 157.2-168.2
373	12	88		1. 18% 2. 371 3. 142.3-144.6
374	13	87		1. 41% 2. 408 3. 245.3-247.8
375	5	87		1. 32% 2. 366 3. 165.7
376	6	87		1. 17% 2. 380 3. 173.5
377	7	87		1. 48% 2. 436 3. 175.6
378		87		1. 62% 2. 364 3. 155-160

378.1	3	88.3		1. 73% 2. 438.1 3. 116
378.2	3	88.2		1. 58% 2. 454 3. 140-142
378.3	13.3	87		1. 43% 2. 472 3. 206-209
378.4	3	23.16		1. 69% 2. 438.1 3. 116
378.5	3	23.17		1. 73% 2. 438.1 3. 116
378.6	13.4	87		1. 10% 2. 470 3. 198-201 DEC
378.7	13.5	87		1. 16% 2. 471 3. 246-248
378.8	13.3	23.16		1. 30% 2. 516/518 3. 234-240 DEC
378.9	13.19	23.16		1. 65% 2. 444.1
378.10	3	23.20		1. 78% 2. 488 3. 137-140
378.11		88.1		1. 24% 2. 371 3. 254-260 DEC

378.12	13.6	88.1		1. 3% 2. 542
378.13	13.7	88.1		1. 9% 2. 542
378.14		88.1		1. 48% 2. 434 3. 150-152
378.15	3	23.19		1. 71% 2. 488 3. 136-138
378.16	3	23.22		1. 35% 2. 424.1 3. 132
378.17	13.9	88.1		1. 13% 2. 440 3. 219-223
378.18	13.10	88.1		1. 26% 2. 406 3. 242-249 DEC
378.19	13.8	88.1		1. 18% 2. 395
378.20	3	23.18		1. 53% 2. 478.1 3. 126
378.21	3	23.21		1. 66% 2. 466 3. 106

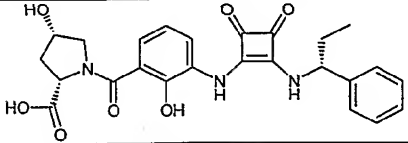
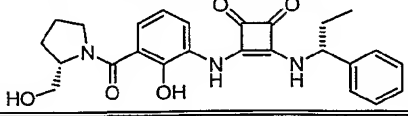
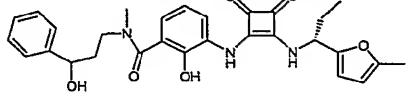
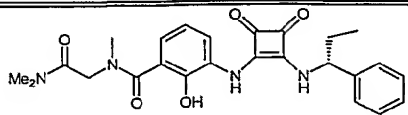
300

378.22	3	23.24		1. 73% 2. 502.1 3. 121
378.23	3	23.23		1. 57% 2. 458.1 3. 129

EXAMPLES 378.25-378.89

5 Following the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the cyclobutenedione intermediate from Preparative Example indicated and the amine from the Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

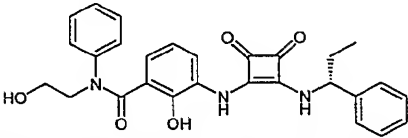
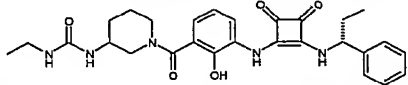
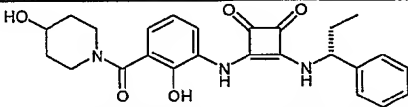
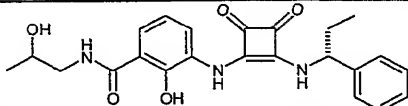
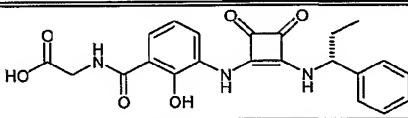
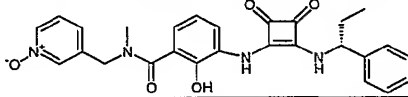
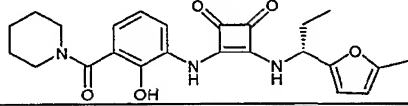
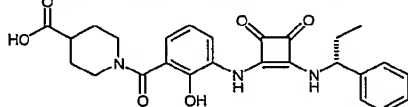
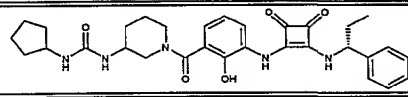
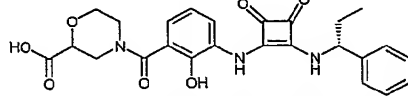
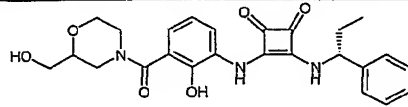
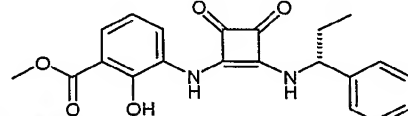
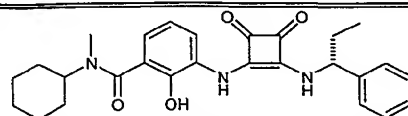
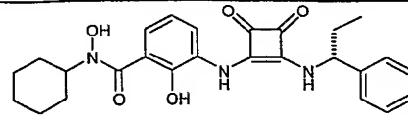
10

Ex.	Prep Ex of Amine	Prep Ex of Cyclobutene intermediate	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺
378.25	11.10	87.1		1. 71% 2. 480.0
378.26	10.28	87.1		1. 60% 2. 449.9
378.27	11.11	88.4		1. 25% 2. 540.1 [M+Na ⁺]
378.28	10.36	87.1		1. 16% 2. 465.0

301

378.29	10.7	88.5		1. 46% 2. 440.4
378.30	10.9	88.4		1. 43% 2. 934.9 [dimer+1] ⁺
378.31	11.12	88.4		1. 48% 2. 464.0
378.32	10.35	87.1		1. 17% 2. 437
378.33	10.8	87.1		1. 10% 2. 481.9
378.34	11.13	87.1		1. 55% 2. 463.9
378.35	10.29	87.1		1. 34% 2. 471.9
378.36	10.48	87.1		1. 4% 2. 433.9
378.36	10.10	87.1		1. 85% 2. 451.9
378.37	10.31	87.1		1. 36% 2. 423.8
378.38	10.17	87.1		1. 85% 2. 521.1
378.39	10.32	87.1		1. 63% 2. 409.9
378.40		87.1		1. 44% 2. 323.1

302

378.41	10.33	87.1		1. 20% 2. 486.0
378.42	10.13	87.1		1. 47% 2. 520.1
378.43	10.34	87.1		1. 18% 2. 449.9
378.44	11.14	87.1		1. 13% 2. 424.0
378.45	2.13	87.1		1. 13% 2. 423.8
378.46	12.1	87.1		1. 51% 2. 487.1
378.47	10.38	88.4		1. 72% 2. 437.7
378.48	11.15	87.1		1. 29% 2. 477.9
378.49	10.14	87.1		1. 61% 2. 560.2
378.50	11.18	87.1		1. 25% 2. 480.0
378.51	10.18	87.1		1. 51% 2. 466.0
378.52	12.2	87.1		1. 32% 2. 380.9
378.53	10.19	87.1		1. 14% 2. 461.4
378.54	11.1	87.1		1. 41% 2. 463.9

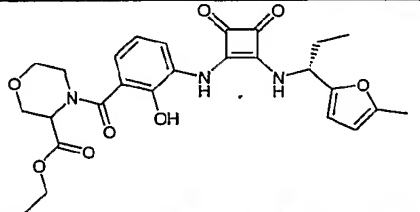
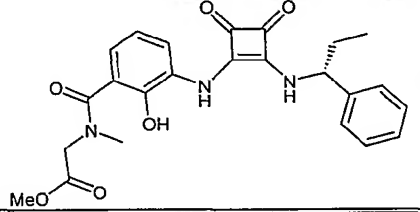
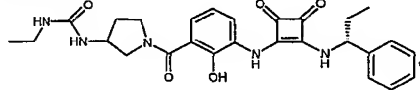
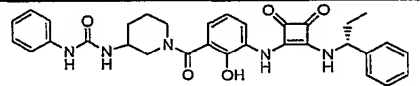
303

378.55	11.2	87.1		1. 5% 2. 409.9
378.56	10.20	87.1		1. 70% 2. 478.1
378.57	10.49	87.1		1. 17% 2. 421.9
378.58	10.15	87.1		1. 51% 2. 582.1
378.59	10.46	87.1		1. 18% 2. 477.9
378.60	11.16	88.4		1. 54% 2. 455.1
378.61	10.21	87.1		1. 84% 2. 485.9
378.62	10.40	87.1		1. 4% 2. 506.1
378.65	2.8	87.1		1. 34% 2. 480
378.66	10.22	87.1		1. 16% 2. 486.0
378.67	2.10	87.1		1. 44% 2. 545
378.68	10.23	87.1		1. 26% 2. 493.9
378.69	2.14	87.1		1. 60% 2. 437.9
378.70	10.24	87.1		1. 64% 2. 469.9

304

378.71	10.18	88.4		1. 64% 2. 471.1
378.72	10.39	88.4		1. 41% 2. 451.7
378.73	10.30	87.1		1. 60% 2. 464.0
378.74	10.25	87.1		1. 63% 2. 470.1
378.75	10.26	87.1		1. 10% 2. 448.0
378.76	10.50	87.1		1. 5% 2. 477.0
378.77	10.42	88.4		1. 57% 2. 467.7
378.78	11.17	87.1		1. 75% 2. 478.0
378.79	2.9	87.1		1. 21% 2. 561
378.80	10.43	87.1		1. 69% 2. 437.9
378.81	10.41	87.1		1. 3% 2. 436.0
378.82	10.44	87.1		1. 90% 2. 454.0
378.83	10.13	88.4		1. 29% 2. 524.1

305

378.84	10.45	88.4		1. 46% 2. 511.7
378.86	10.37	87.1		1. 53% 2. 452.0
378.88	10.47	87.1		1. 61% 2. 506.1
378.89	10.16	87.1		1. 30% 2. 568.1

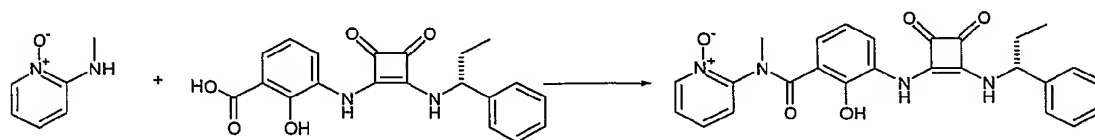
EXAMPLE 378.90

5



The above compound from Preparative Example 378.68 was stirred with 4N HCl/dioxane to yield the product (23%, MH+=437.9).

10

EXAMPLE 378.91

15

Using the procedure set forth in Preparative Example 2, Step A, but using Preparative Example 2.16 and Preparative Example 2.15, the title compound was prepared (20%, MH+=472.9).

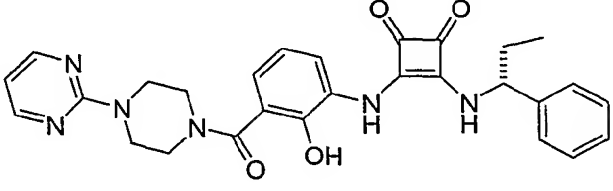
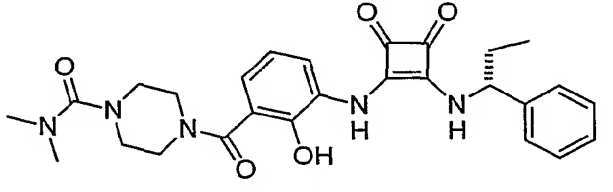
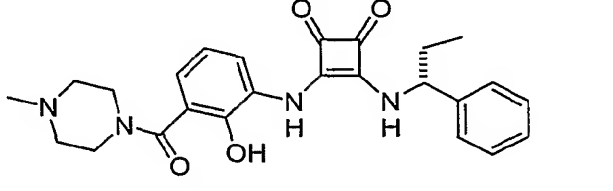
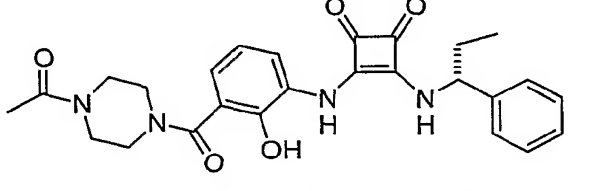
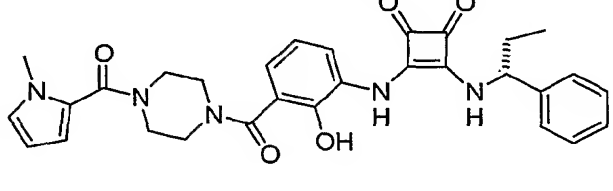
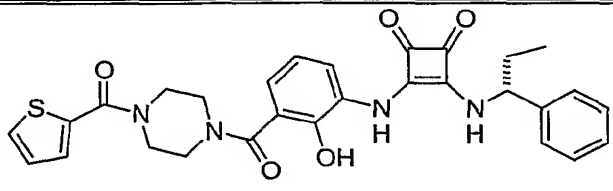
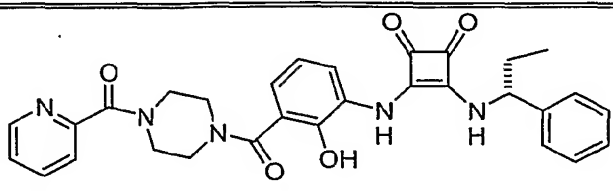
20

EXAMPLES 379-393

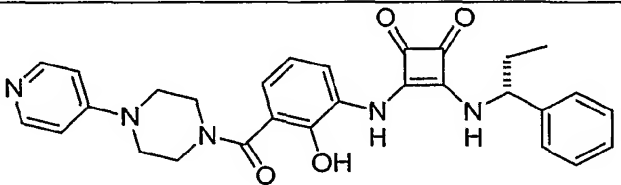
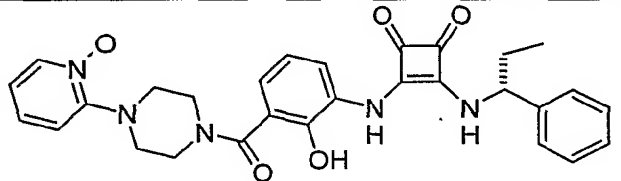
Following the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the amine from the Preparative Example indicated and the ethoxy squarate intermediate from Preparative Example 87, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

Ex.	Aniline	Product	1.Yield(%) 2. (MH ⁺)
379	109		1. 29% 2. 436.0
380	105		1. 6.3% 2. 550.0
381	106		1. 12% 2. 557.0
382	107		1. 8.6% 2. 573.0
383	143		1. 3.2% 2. 497.0

307

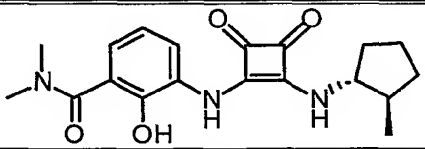
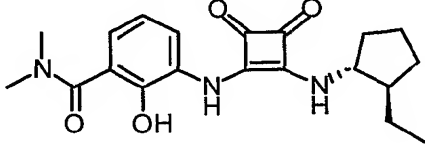
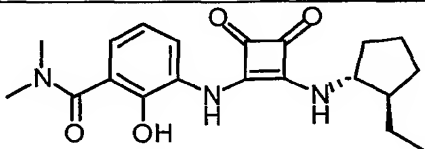
384	135		1. 36% 2. 529.0
385	130		1. 33% 2. 506.1
387	145		1. 27% 2. 449.1
388	140		1. 25% 2. 477.0
389	98		1. 66% 2. 542.1
390	96		1. 60% 2. 545.0
391	97		1. 66% 2. 540.1

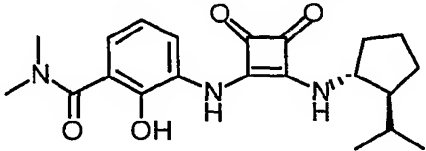
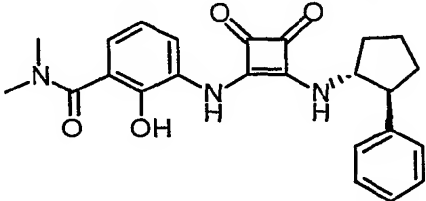
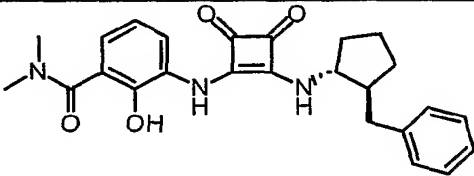
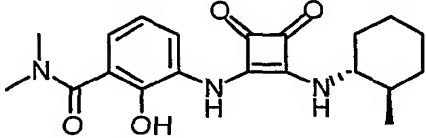
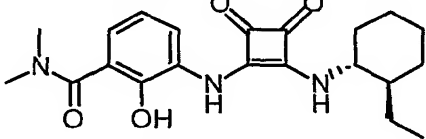
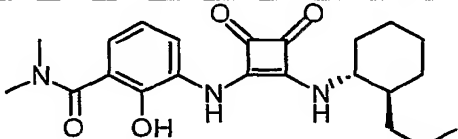
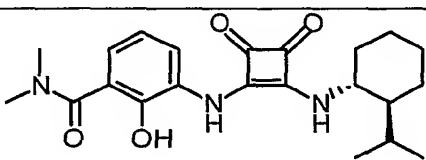
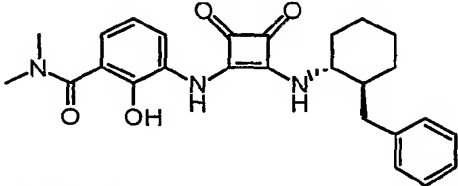
308

392	100		1. 47% 2. 512.1
393	99		1. 60% 2. 528.1

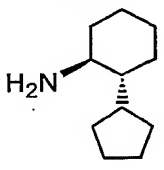
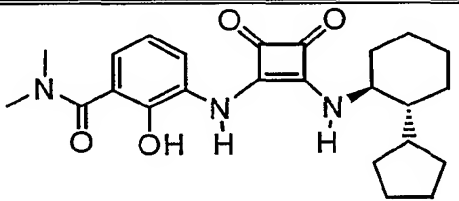
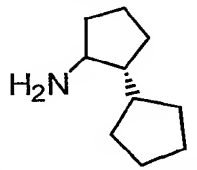
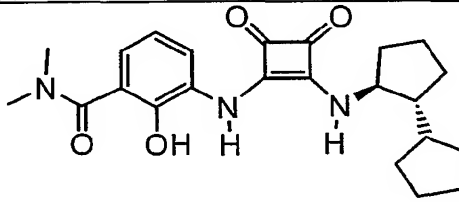
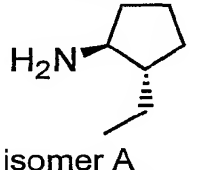
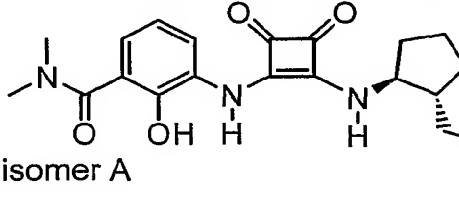
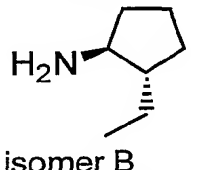
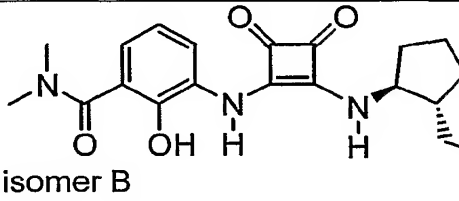
EXAMPLES 394 - 404.4

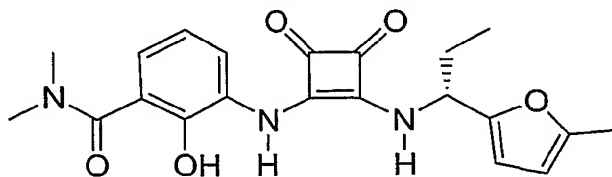
Following the procedure set forth in Example 261 but using the amines from the
 5 Preparative Examples indicated in the table below and the cyclobutenedione
 derivative from Preparative Example 19, the following cyclobutenedione products
 were obtained as racemic mixtures.

Ex.	Prep Ex. of Amine	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺ 3. mp (°C)
394	147		1. 64% 2. 358.1 3. 137
395	148		1. 23% 2. 372.1 3. 126
396	149		1. 94% 2. 386.1 3. 108

397	150		1. 86% 2. 386.1 3. 134
398	146		1. 87% 2. 420.1 3. 136
399	151		1. 84% 2. 434.1 3. 129
400	152		1. 90% 2. 372.1 3. 154
401	153		1. 86% 2. 386.1 3. 156
402	154		1. 90% 2. 400.1 3. 153
403	155		1. 91 2. 400.1 3. 153
404	156		1. 83% 2. 448.1 3. 138

310

404.1	156.2 		1. 30% 2. 426.1 3. 132
404.2	156.1 		1. 74% 2. 412.1 3. 127
404.3	156.11  isomer A	 isomer A	1. 73.4% 2. 372.1 3. 128
404.4	156.11  isomer B	 isomer B	1. 72% 2. 372.1 3. 128

EXAMPLE 405

5

To a solution of the amine from Preparative Example 75.1 (11.3 g) in EtOH (100 mL) at room temperature was added the product from Preparative Example 19 (16.4 g) in one portion. The resulting mixture was stirred at reflux overnight and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude residue was redissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (80 mL) and was washed with 10% KH₂PO₄ (120 mL). The solid precipitate that was generated was filtered, washed with water and dried under vacuo. The residue was recrystallized from methanol-methylene chloride to give a cream colored solid (16 g, 75% yield). (mp 105-108 °C, MH⁺ 398.1).

10

EXAMPLES 1101-1112.10

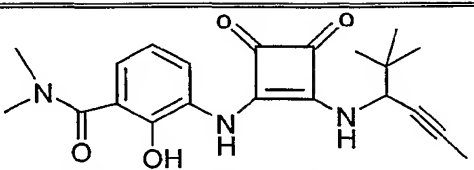
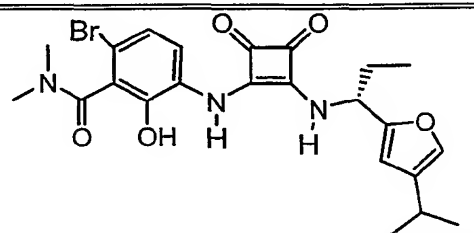
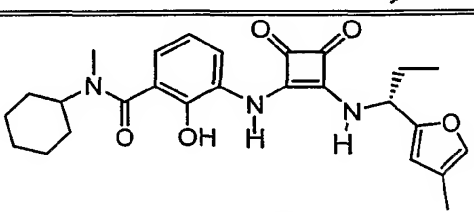
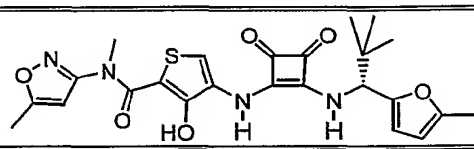
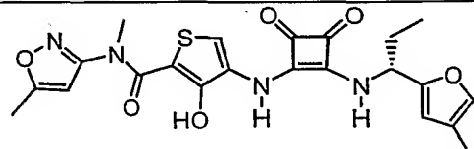
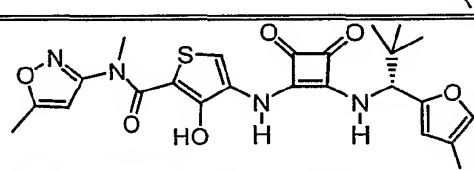
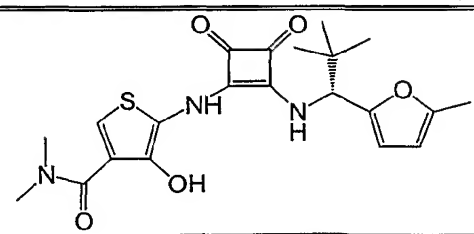
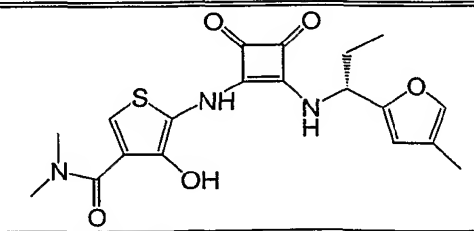
If one were to follow the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the ethoxysquarate from the Preparative Example indicated and the amines from the
 5 Preparative Example indicated in the Table below, the following cyclobutenedione products can be obtained.

Ex.	Prep Ex of Amine	Prep Ex of Squarate	Product
1101	15	87	
1102	15	88	
1103	16	87	
1104	16	88	
1105	17	87	
1106	17	88	

312

1107	18	87	
1108	18	88	
1109	157	87	
1110	157	88	
1111	158	87	
1112	158	88	
1112.1	500.3 or 500.4	88.1	
1112.2	500.1 or 500.2	88.1	

313

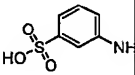
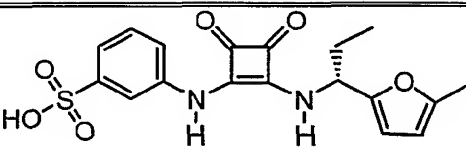
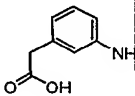
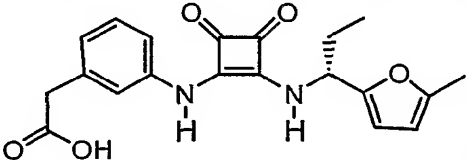
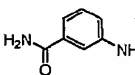
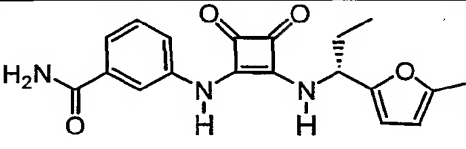
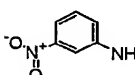
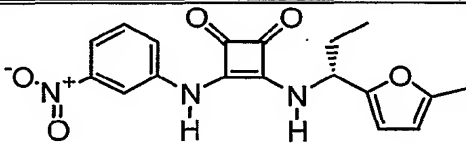
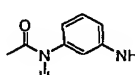
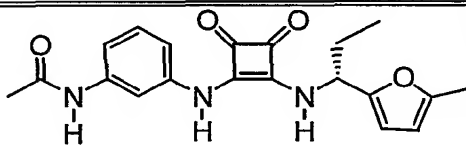
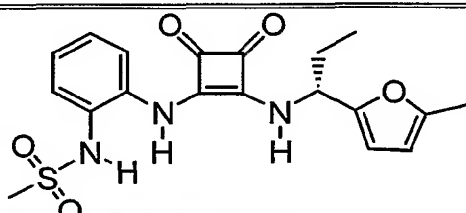
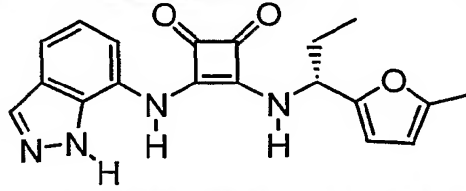
1112.3	500.5	19	
1112.4	75.9	23.11	
1112.5	10.19	88.4	
1112.6	75.44	23.14	
1112.7	75.49	23.14	
1112.8	75.50	23.14	
1112.9	75.44	500.6	
1112.10	75.49	500.6	

EXAMPLES 1120.1- 1120.12

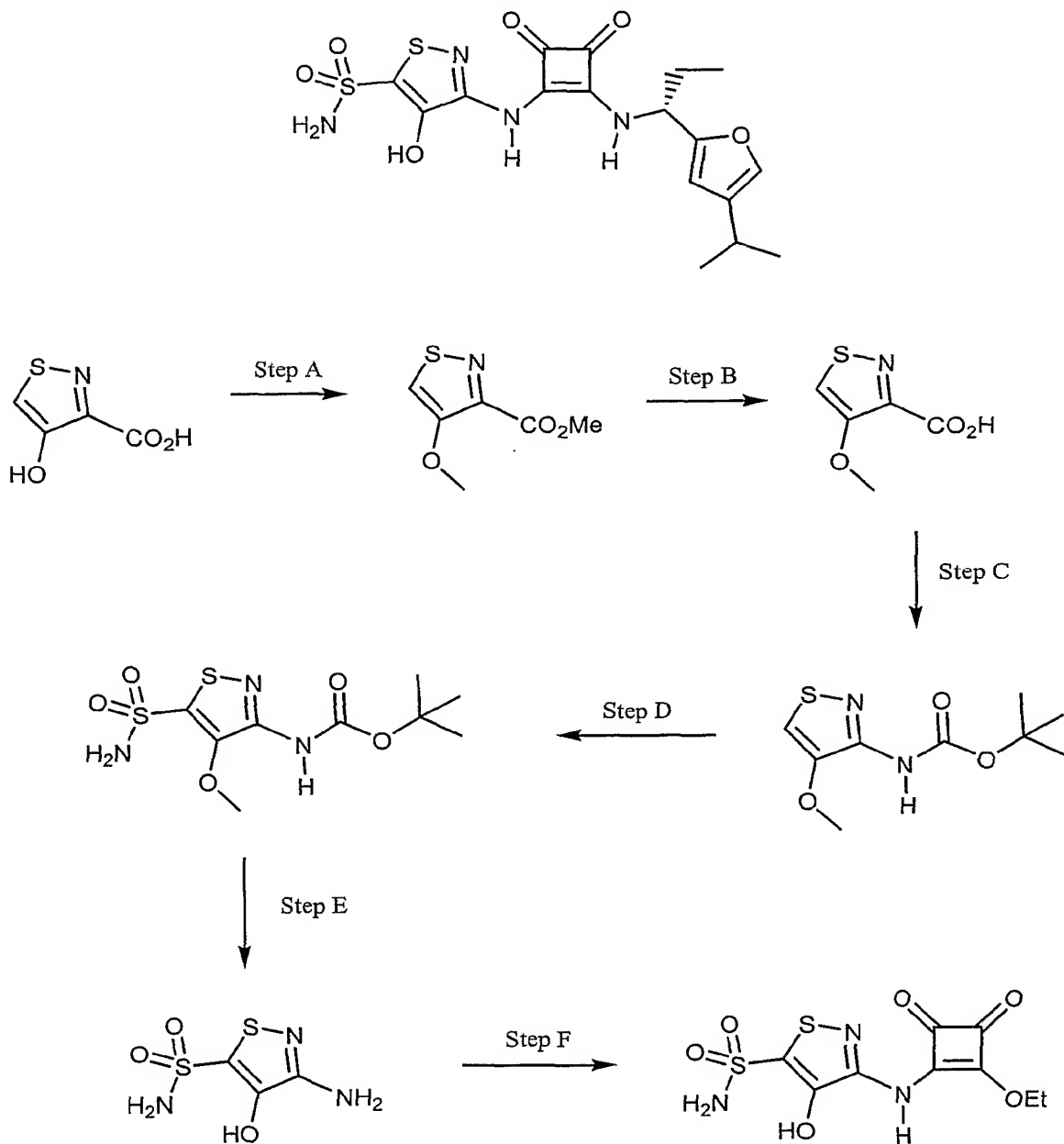
Following the procedure set forth in Example 210 but using the amine from the Preparative Example indicated and the ethoxy squarate intermediate from the Preparative Example indicated, the following cyclobutenedione products were obtained.

Ex.	Prep Ex of Amine	Prep Ex of Squarate	Product	1. Yield (%) 2. MH ⁺ 3. mp (°C)
1120.1	156.16	87		1. 9% 2. 3. 393.1 154-158
1120.2		88.1		1. 55% 2. 355.1 3. 199-201
1120.3	156.12	88.1		1. 37% 2. 355.1 3. 210-213
1120.4		88.1		1. 30% 2. 391.1 3. 70-73
1120.5	156.14	88.1		1. 73% 2. 466 3. 105-108

315

1120.6		88.1		1. 21 % 2. 391 3. 79-82
1120.7		88.1		1. 15 % 2. 369 3. 167-170
1120.8		88.1		1. 47 % 2. 354 3. 121-124
1120.9		88.1		1. 15 % 2. 356 3. 200-202
1120.10		88.1		1. 25 % 2. 468 3. 154-156
1120.11	156.13	88.1		1. 57 % 2. 404 3. 92-94
1120.12	156.15	88.1		1. 61 % 2. 351 3. 155-157

316

EXAMPLE 1125

5

Step A

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in Preparative Example 13.3 Step B, except using the hydroxy acid from *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* 6(9), 1996, 1043, one would obtain the desired methoxy compound.

10

Step B

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in Preparative Example 13.19 Step B, except using the product from Step A above, one would obtain the desired compound.

5

Step C

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in *Synth. Commun.* 1980, 10, p. 107, except using the product from Step B above and t-butanol, one would obtain the desired compound.

10

Step D

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in *Synthesis*, 1986, 1031, except using the product from Step C above, one would obtain the desired sulfonamide compound.

15

Step E

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in Preparative Example 13.19 Step E, except using the product from Step D above, one would obtain the desired compound.

20

Step F

If one were to use a similar procedure to that used in Preparative Example 19, except using the product from Step E above and adding potassium carbonate as base, one would obtain the desired compound.

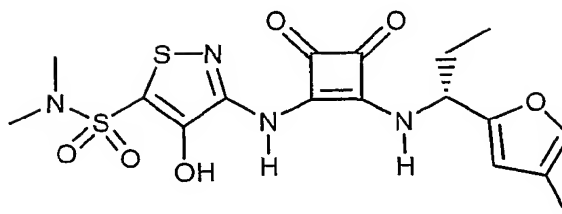
25

Step G

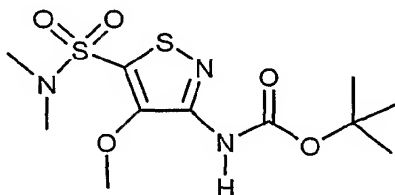
If one were to follow the procedure set forth in Example 210, except using the product from Step F above and the amine from Preparative Example 75.9, then one would obtain the title compound.

30

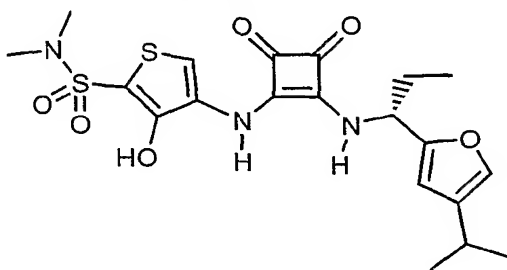
318

EXAMPLE 1130Step A

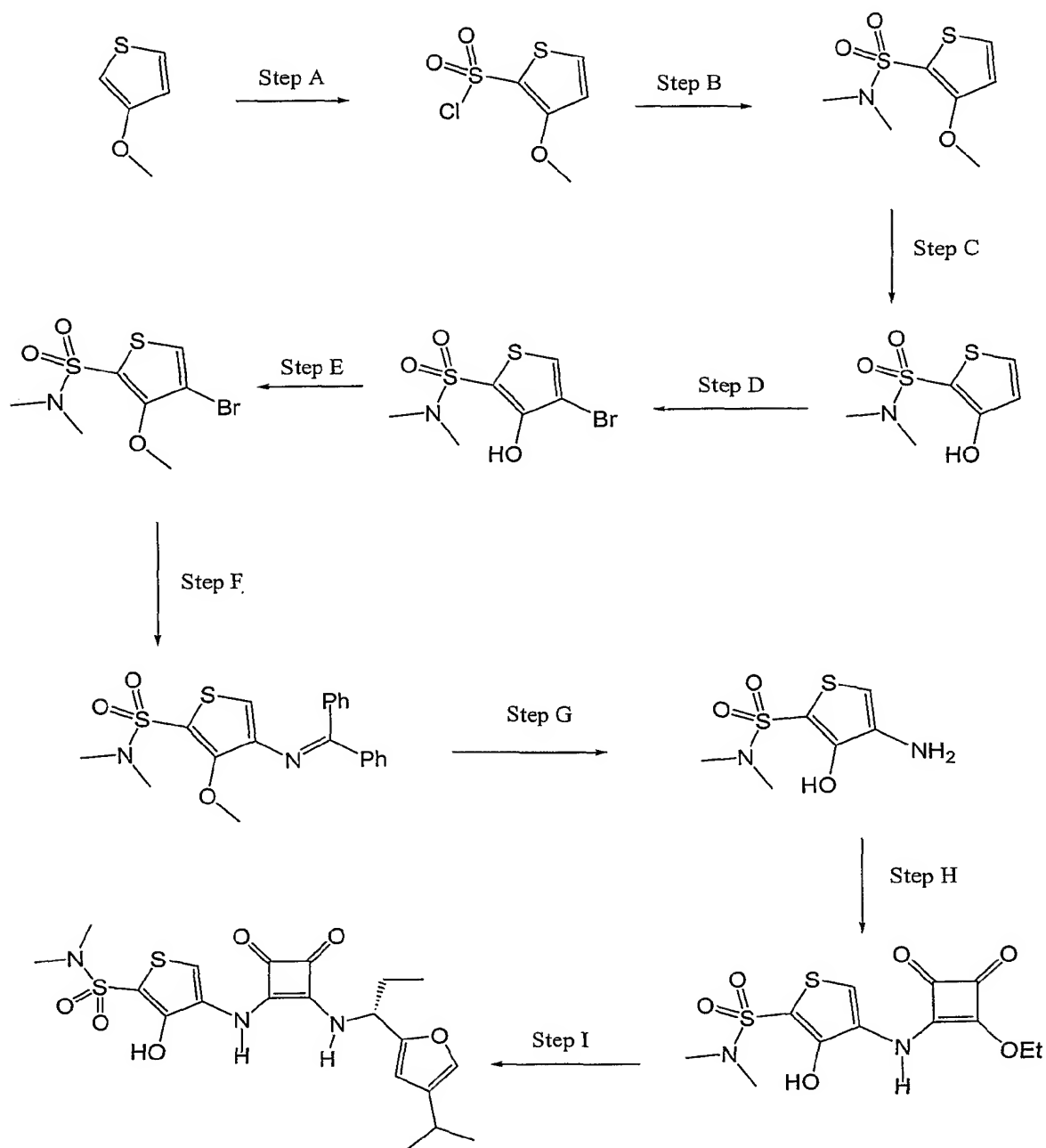
If one were to treat the product from Step C of Example 1125 with BuLi (2.2
5 eq.) in THF followed by quenching of the reaction mixture with N,N,-
dimethylsulfamoyl chloride (1.1 eq.) then one would obtain

Step B

If one were to use the product of Step A above and one were to follow Steps E, F and
G of Example 1125, except using the amine from Preparative Example 75.49 in Step
G, then one would obtain the title compound.

EXAMPLE 1131

319



5 Step A

To a solution of 3-methoxythiophene (3 g) in dichloromethane (175 mL) at -78°C was added chlorosulfonic acid (8.5 mL) dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 15 min at -78°C and 1.5 h at room temp. Afterwards, the mixture was poured carefully into crushed ice, and extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with

brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered through a 1-in silica gel pad. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to give the desired compound (4.2 g).

Step B

5 The product from Step A above (4.5 g) was dissolved in dichloromethane (140 mL) and added with triethylamine (8.8 mL) followed by diethyl amine in THF (2M, 21 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture was washed with brine and saturated bicarbonate (aq) and brine again, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered through a 1-in silica gel pad. The filtrate was concentrated in
10 vacuo to give the desired compound (4.4 g).

Step C

 The product from Step B above (4.3 g) was dissolved in dichloromethane (125 mL) and cooled in a -78°C bath. A solution of boron tribromide (1.0 M in
15 dichloromethane, 24.3 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for 4 h while the temperature was increased slowly from -78°C to 10°C. H₂O was added, the two layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloro- methane. The combined organic layer and extracts were wahed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to give 3.96 g of the desired
20 hydroxy-compound.

Step D

 The product from step C above (3.96 g) was dissolved in 125 mL of dichloromethane, and added with potassium carbonate (6.6 g) followed by bromine (2
25 mL). The mixture was stirred for 5 h at room temperature, quenched with 100 mL of H₂O. The aqueous mixture was addjusted to pH ~ 5 using a 0.5N hydrogen chloride aqueous solution, and extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and filtered through a celite pad. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to afford 4.2 g of the desired bromo-compound.

Step E

 The product from Step D (4.2 g) was dissolved in 100 mL of acetone and added with potassium carbonate (10 g) followed by iodomethane (9 mL). The mixture

was heated to reflux and continued for 3.5 h. After cooled to room temperature, the mixture was filtered through a Celite pad. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to a dark brown residue, which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with dichloromethane-hexanes (1:1, v/v) to give 2.7 g of the desired product.

5

Step F

The product from step E (2.7 g) was converted to the desired imine compound (3 g), following the similar procedure to that of Preparative Example 13.19 step D.

10 Step G

The imine product from step F (3 g) was dissolved in 80 mL of dichloromethane and cooled in a -78°C bath. A solution of boron tribromide (1.0 M in dichloromethane, 9.2 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 4.25 h from -78°C to 5°C . H_2O (50 mL) was added, and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was
15 extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer and extracts were combined, washed with brine, and concentrated to an oily residue. The residue was dissolved in 80 mL of methanol, stirred with sodium acetate (1.5 g) and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.95 g) at room temperature for 2 h. The mixture was poured into an aqueous mixture of sodium hydroxide (1.0 M aq, 50 mL) and ether (100 mL). The two
20 layers were separated. The aqueous layer was washed with ether three times. The combined ether washings were re-extracted with H_2O once. The aqueous layers were combined, washed once with dichloromethane, adjusted to pH ~ 6 using 3.0 M and 0.5 M hydrogen chloride aqueous solutions, and extracted with dichloromethane. The organic extracts were combined, washed with brine, dried over
25 sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give 1.2 g of desired amine compound.

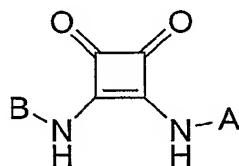
Step H

The product from step F (122 mg) was stirred with diethoxyxysquarate (0.25 mL) and potassium carbonate (75 mg) in 5 mL of ethanol at room temperature for 5 h. The
30 mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, filtered through a Celite pad, and concentrated to an oily residue, which was separated by preparative TLC (CH_2Cl_2 -MeOH= 15:1, v/v) to give 91 mg of the desired product.

Step I

Following the procedure set forth in Example 210, and using the amine from Preparative Example 75.9, the product (43 mg) from Step H was converted to the desired compound (20 mg).

This invention provides novel compounds of the formula (I):

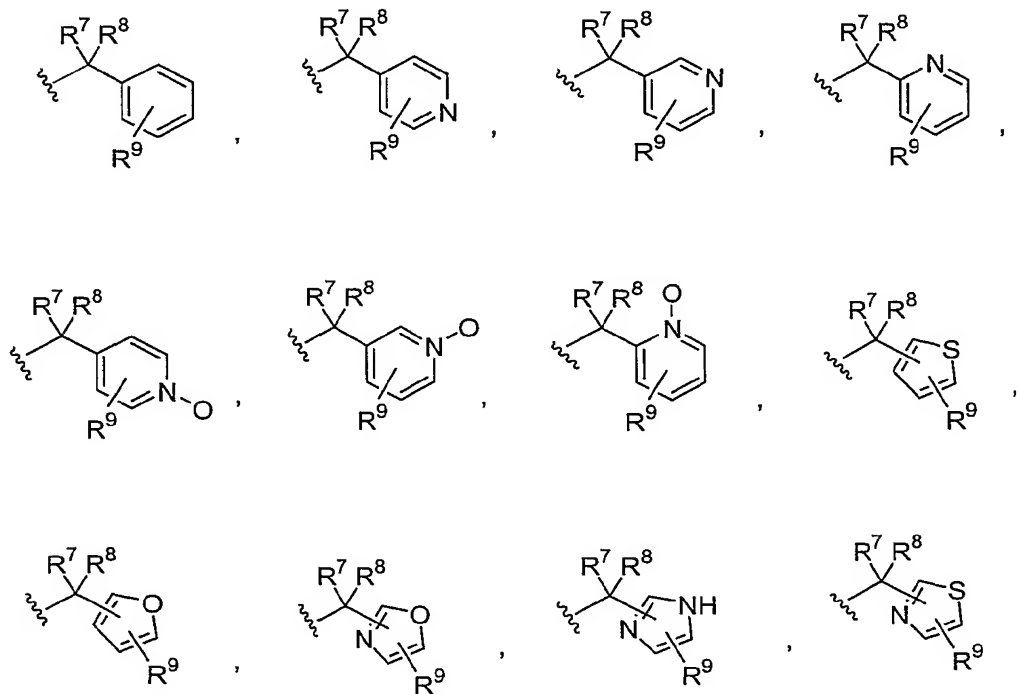


(I)

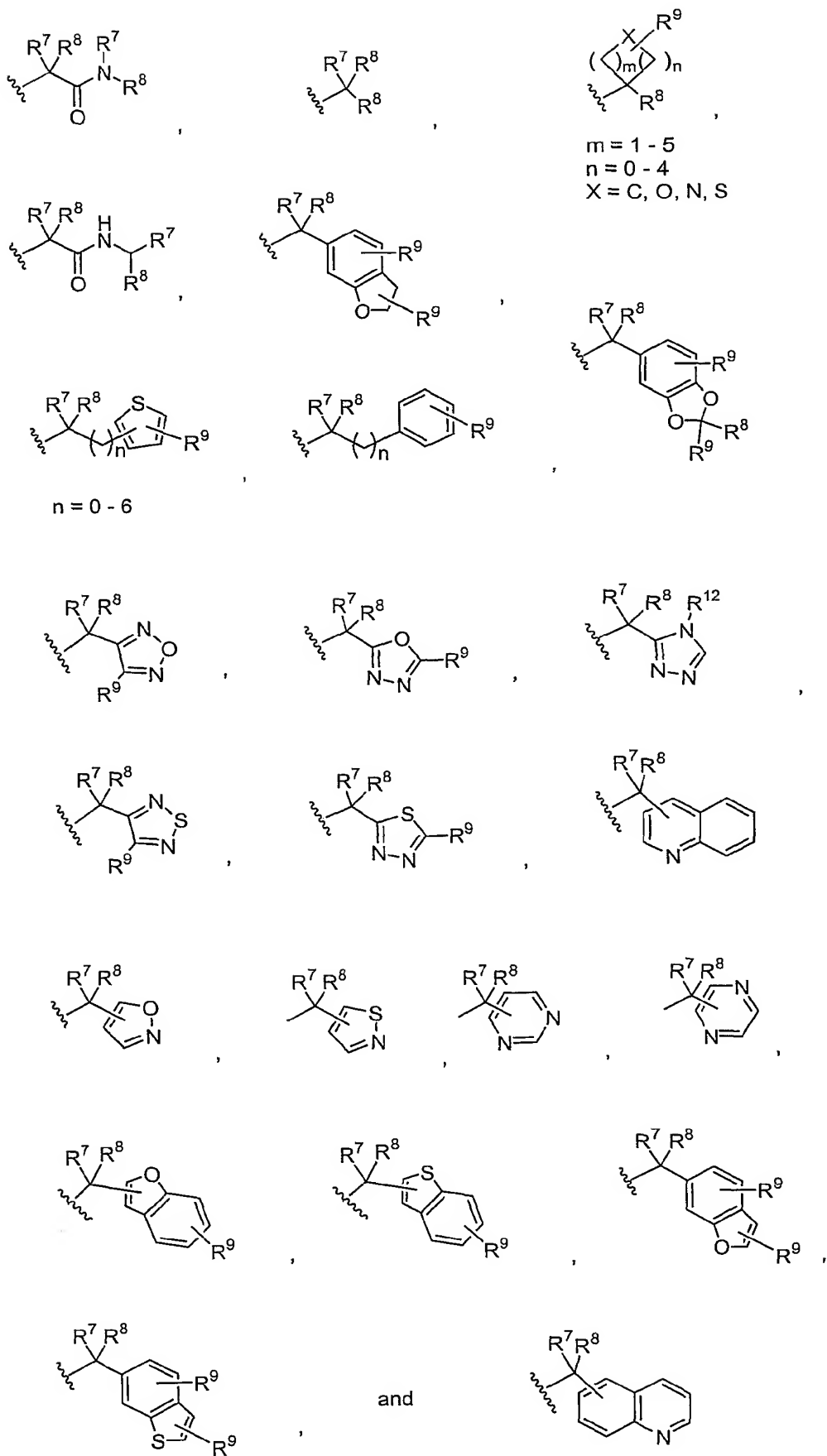
- 10 a prodrug thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate of the compound or of said prodrug;

wherein

A is selected from:



323



wherein,

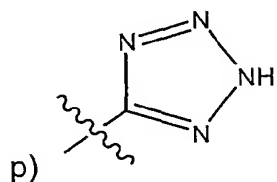
R^7 and R^8 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H; optionally substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, heteroarylalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, CO_2R^{13} , $CONR^{13}R^{14}$, fluoroalkyl, alkynyl, alkenyl, alkynylalkyl, alkenylalkyl, and cycloalkenyl,

wherein said substituents on said substituted groups are selected from the group consisting of:

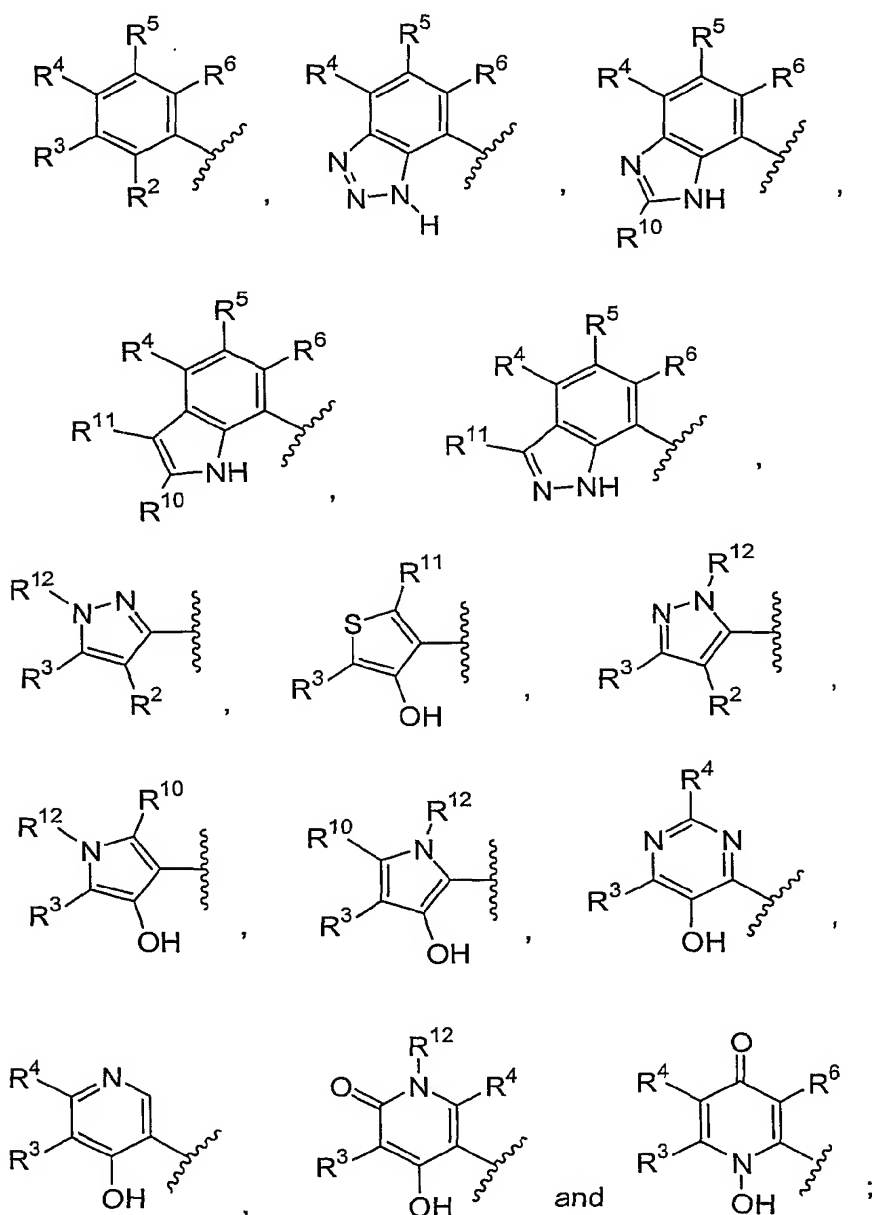
- a) cyano;
- b) CO_2R^7 ;
- c) $CONR^7R^8$;
- d) $SO_2NR^7R^8$;
- e) SO_2R^7 ;
- f) NO_2 ;
- g) CF_3 ;
- h) $-OR^7$;
- i) $-NR^7R^8$;
- j) $-O(C=O)R^7$;
- k) $-O(C=O)NR^7R^8$, and
- l) halogen;

R^9 is selected from one or more of the groups consisting of:

- a) R^7 ;
- b) R^8 ;
- c) halogen;
- d) $-CF_3$;
- e) $-COR^7$;
- f) $-OR^7$;
- g) $-NR^7R^8$;
- h) $-NO_2$;
- i) $-CN$;
- j) $-SO_2R^7$;
- k) $-SO_2NR^7R^8$;
- l) $-NR^7COR^8$;
- m) $-CONR^7R^8$;

n) $-NR^7CO_2R^8$;o) CO_2R^7 , and

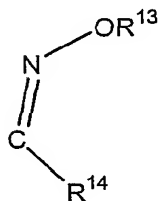
5 B is an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl group selected from:



wherein,

R^2 is hydrogen, OH, $C(O)OH$, SH, $SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHC(O)R^{13}$, $NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHSO_2R^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $C(O)NHOR^{13}$, $C(O)NR^{13}OH$, $OC(O)R^{13}$ or an optionally substituted cyclic or heterocyclic acidic functional group, with the proviso that if R^2 is $SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, at least one of R^{13} and R^{14} must be hydrogen;

R^3 and R^4 are independently hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, OH, CF_3 , OCF_3 , NO_2 , $C(O)R^{13}$, $C(O)OR^{13}$, $C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, $SO_{(t)}R^{13}$, $C(O)NR^{13}OR^{14}$,



, cyano, optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl,

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups.

R^5 and R^6 independently represent hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, CF_3 , OCF_3 , NO_2 , $C(O)R^{13}$, $C(O)OR^{13}$, $C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, $C(O)NR^{13}OR^{14}$, cyano, or an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl group,

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups.

R^{10} and R^{11} independently represent hydrogen, halogen, CF_3 , OCF_3 , $NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, OH, $C(O)OR^{13}$, SH, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, SO_2R^{13} , $NHC(O)R^{13}$, $NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHSO_2R^{13}$, $C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $C(O)NR^{13}OR^{14}$, $OC(O)R^{13}$ or cyano.

R^{12} is hydrogen, $OC(O)R^{13}$, or an optionally substituted aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkylalkyl or heteroarylalkyl group;

R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H; optionally substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, heteroarylalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, and fluoroalkyl, or

R^{13} and R^{14} when taken together form an optionally substituted 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring containing one to two heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, and

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups; and

t is 1 or 2.

The definitions below refer to the formula I that directly precedes these definitions.

These definitions apply regardless of whether a term is used by itself or in combination with other terms. Hence the definition of "alkyl" applies to "alkyl" as well as to the "alkyl" portions of "alkoxy", etc.

When any variable (e.g., aryl, R²) occurs more than one time in any constituent, its definition on each occurrence is independent of its definition at every other occurrence. Also, combinations of substituents and/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

Alkyl represents a straight or branched saturated hydrocarbon chain having the designated number of carbon atoms. Where the number of carbon atoms is not specified, 1 to 20 carbons are intended.

The term halogen or Halo is intended to include fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine.

The term fluoroalkyl represents a straight or branched saturated hydrocarbon chain having the designated number of carbon atoms, substituted with one or more fluorine atoms. Where the number of carbon atoms is not specified, 1 to 20 carbons are intended

Aryl refers to a mono- or bicyclic ring system having one or two aromatic rings including, but not limited to, phenyl, naphthyl, indenyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, anthracenyl, fluorenyl and the like. The aryl group can be unsubstituted or substituted with one, two, or three substituents independently selected from lower alkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, haloalkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, carboxy, carboxyalkyl, carboxamide, mercapto, sulfhydryl, amino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, sulfonyl, sulfonamido, aryl and heteroaryl.

The term heterocycle or heterocyclic ring is defined by all non-aromatic, heterocyclic rings of 3-7 atoms containing 1-3 heteroatoms selected from N, O and S, such as oxirane, oxetane, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, pyrrolidine, piperidine, piperazine, tetrahydropyridine, tetrahydropyrimidine, tetrahydrothiophene, tetrahydrothiopyran, morpholine, hydantoin, valerolactam, pyrrolidinone, and the like.

The term heterocyclic acidic functional group is intended to include groups such as, pyrrole, imidazole, triazole, tetrazole, and the like.

Heteroaryl refers to 5- or 10-membered single or benzofused aromatic rings consisting of 1 to 3 heteroatoms independently selected from the group consisting of -O-, -S-, and -N=, provided that the rings do not possess adjacent oxygen and/or sulfur

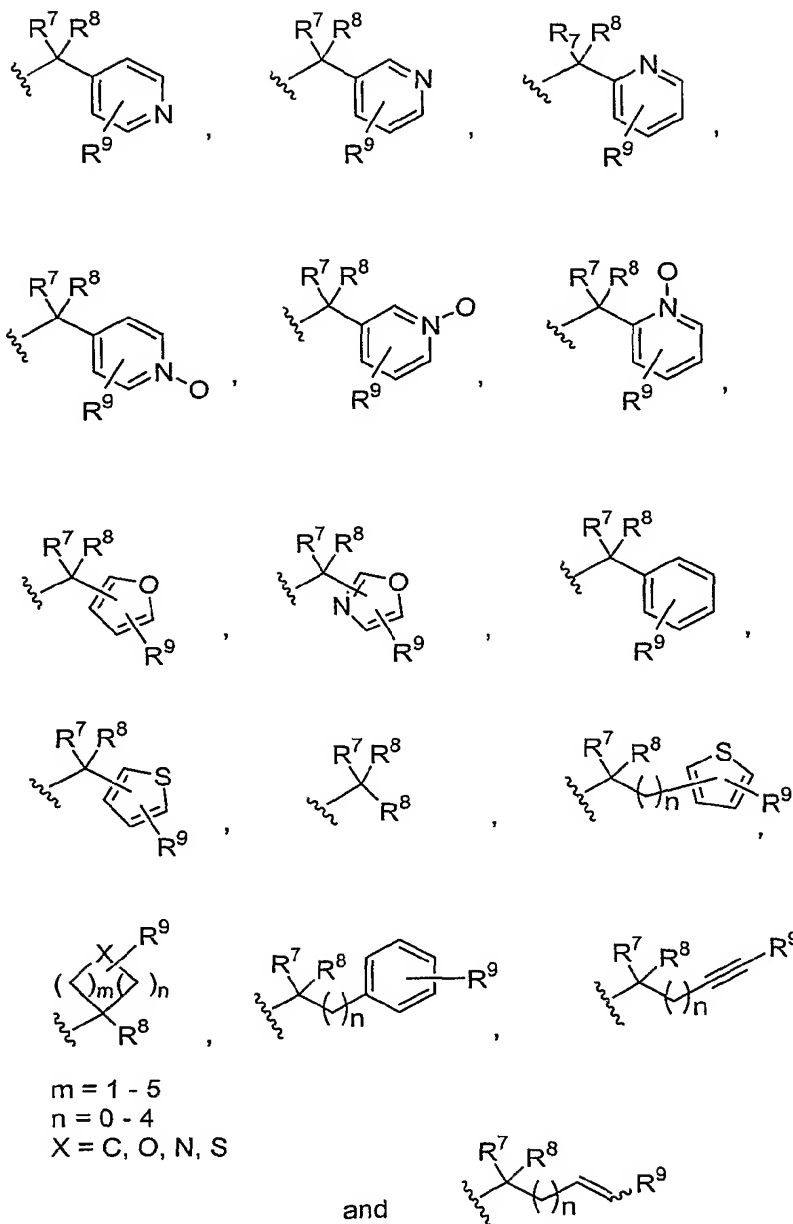
atoms. The heteroaryl group can be unsubstituted or substituted with one, two, or three substituents independently selected from lower alkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, haloalkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, carboxy, carboxyalkyl, carboxamide, sulfhydryl, amino, alkylamino and dialkylamino.

5 N-oxides can form on a tertiary nitrogen present in an R substituent, or on =N- in a heteroaryl ring substituent and are included in the compounds of formula I.

 The preferred groups described below refer to the formula I that directly precedes these preferred groups.

 In a preferred group of compounds of formula I, A is selected from the group
10 consisting of:

329



wherein,

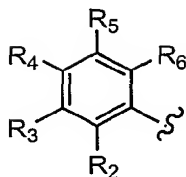
R^7 and R^8 are the same or different and are independently selected from alkyl and cycloalkyl such as, for example, methyl, ethyl, t-butyl, isopropyl and cyclohexyl with methyl, ethyl, t-butyl and isopropyl being most preferred and,

R^9 is selected from one or more moieties selected from the group halogen (e.g. Bromine, Fluorine or Chlorine), CH_3 , CF_3 , cyano, $-OCH_3$, and NO_2 , and

330

$$n = 0 - 6.$$

Preferrably, B is



5 wherein

R² is selected from the group consisting of OH, NHC(O)R¹³ and NHSO₂R¹³;

R³ is selected from the group consisting of SO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, NO₂, cyano, C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, SO₂R¹³; and C(O)OR¹³;

R⁴ is selected from the group consisting of H, NO₂, cyano and CF₃;

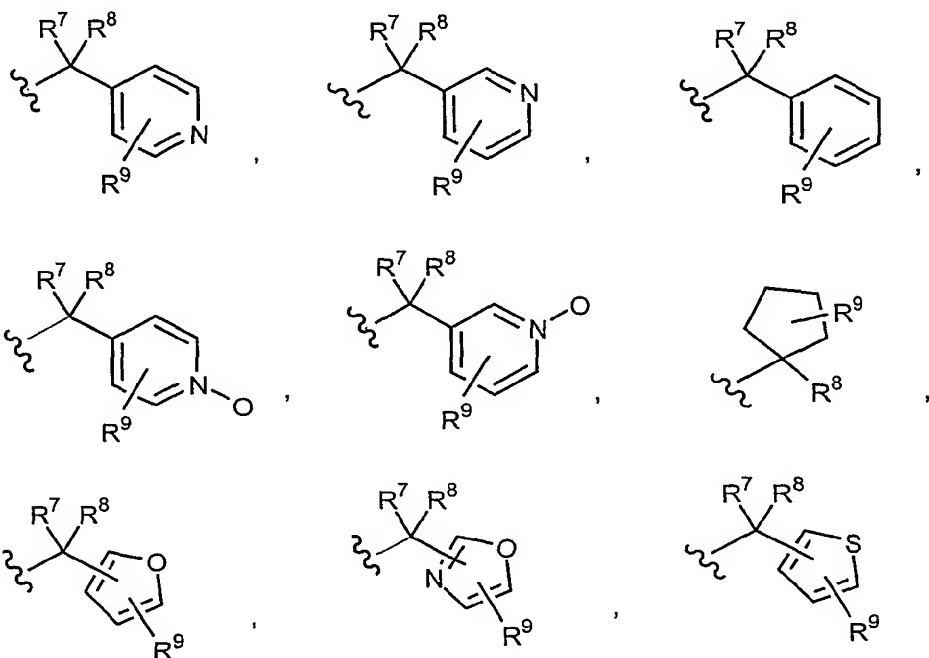
10 R⁵ is selected from the group consisting of H, CF₃, NO₂, halogen and cyano;

and

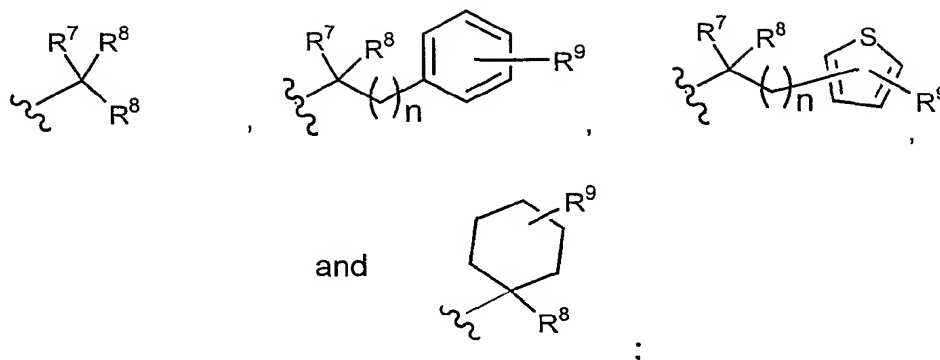
R⁶ is selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl and CF₃.

R¹³ and R¹⁴ are independently selected from methyl, ethyl and isopropyl or
 15 when taken together R¹³ and R¹⁴ form a 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring containing
 one to two heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, optionally substituted with one or
 more R⁹ groups.

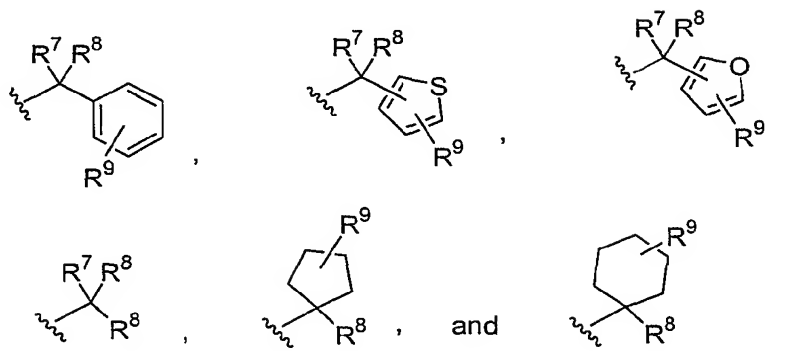
More preferably, A is selected from:



331



Most preferably, A is selected from:



5

Most Preferably, for compounds of the present invention,

R^2 is $-OH$;

R^3 is $CONR^{13}R^{14}$;

R^4 is H ;

10

R^5 is H or cyano;

R^6 is H or alkyl;

R^7 , R^8 are independently selected from H , methyl, ethyl, isopropyl and t -butyl;

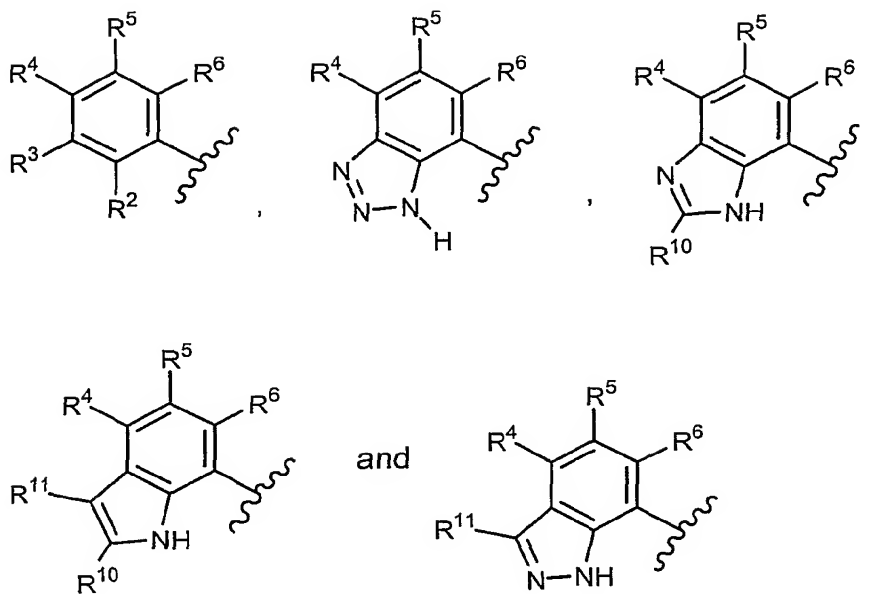
R^{13} and R^{14} are independently selected from methyl and ethyl.

15

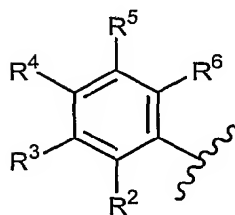
In one embodiment of the methods of treatment of this invention using compounds of formula IA, or in the use for manufacture of a medicament using compounds of formula IA, B is selected from the group consisting of:

20

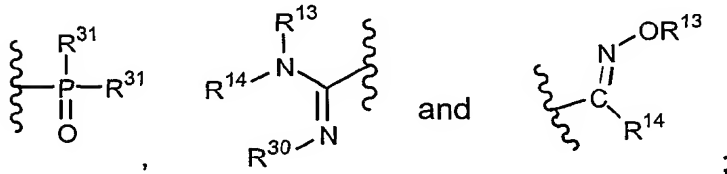
332



5 provided that for the B group



R^3 is not selected from the group consisting of: $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,



and all other substituents are as defined for formula IA.

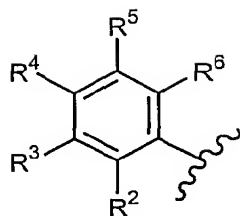
10

Additional representative embodiments of the novel compounds of this invention are described below. The embodiments have been numbered for purposes
15 of reference thereto.

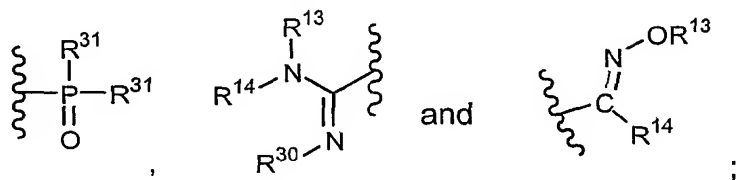
Embodiment No. 47 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:

333

(1)

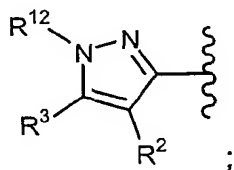


provided that R^3 for this group is selected from the group consisting of: $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,

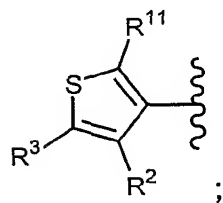


5

(2)

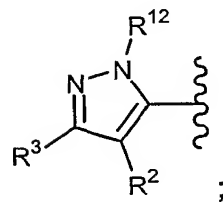


(3)



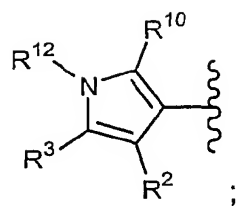
10

(4)

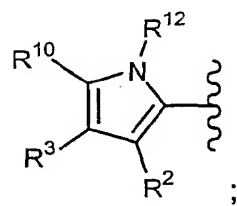


334

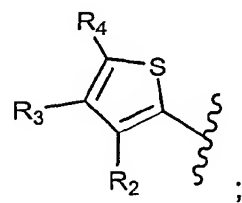
(5)



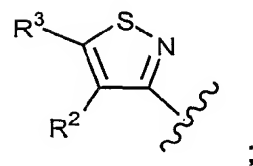
(6)



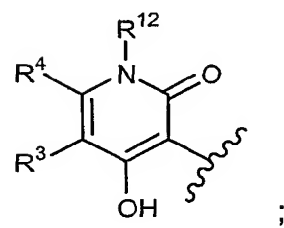
(7)



(8)

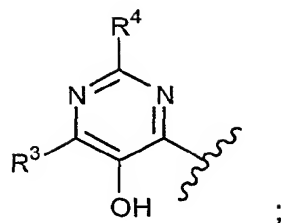


(9)

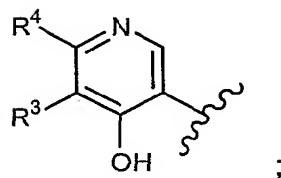


335

(10)

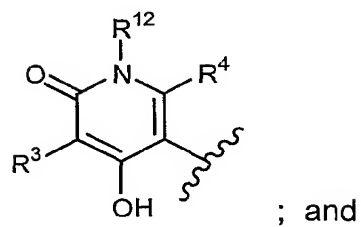


(12)

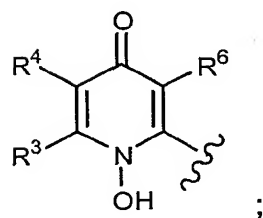


5

(13)



(14)



10

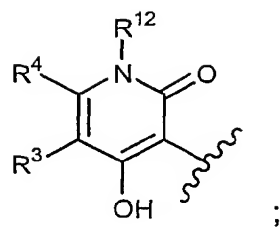
wherein all other substituents are as defined for formula IA.

Embodiment No. 48 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is
selected from the group consisting of:

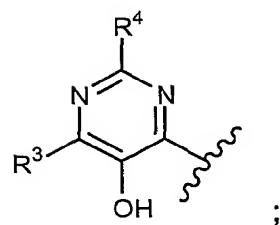
15

336

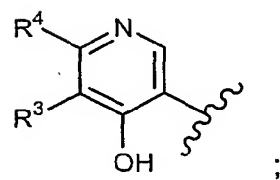
(1)



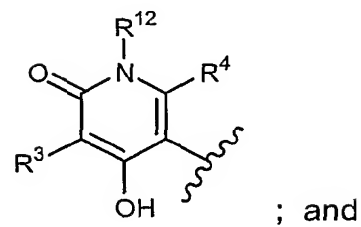
(2)



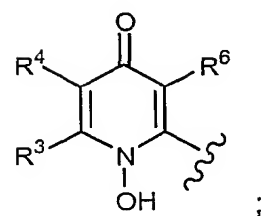
(3)



(4)



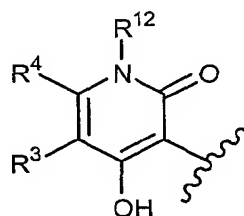
(5)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

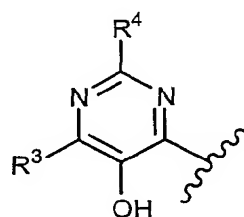
337

Embodiment No. 49 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:



5 wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

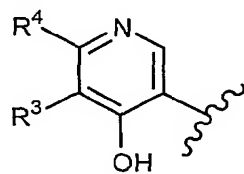
Embodiment No. 50 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:



10

wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

Embodiment No. 51 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:



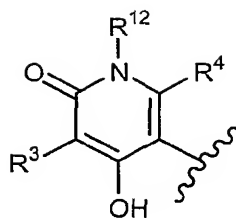
15

;

wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

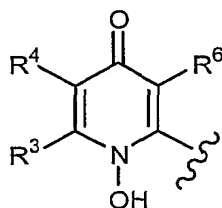
Embodiment No. 52 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:

20



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

Embodiment No. 53 is directed to compounds of formula IA wherein B is
 5 selected from the group consisting of:



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA.

10 Embodiment No. 54 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53 wherein the compound of formula IA is a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

Embodiment No. 55 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53 wherein the compound of formula IA is a sodium salt.

15 Embodiment No. 56 is directed to any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53 wherein the compound of formula IA is a calcium salt.

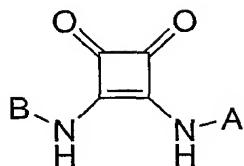
Embodiment No. 57 is directed to a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one (e.g., 1 to 3, usually 1) compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

20 Embodiment No. 58 is directed to a method of treating any one of the diseases described above comprising administering to a patient in need of such treatment an effective amount (e.g., a therapeutically effective amount) of a compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53. The diseases referred to in this embodiment are those described in the methods of treatment using
 25 compounds of formula I.

Embodiment No. 59 is directed to the use of a compound of formula IA as described in any one of the Embodiment Nos. 48 to 53 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment any one of the diseases described above. The diseases referred in this embodiment are those described in the methods of treatment
5 using compounds of formula I.

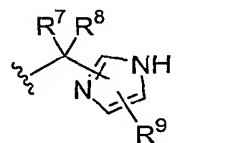
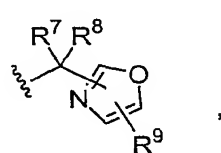
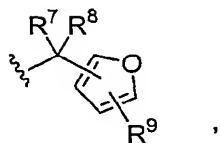
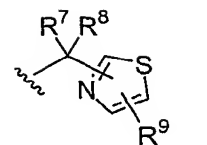
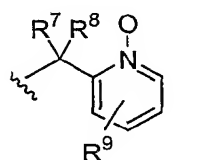
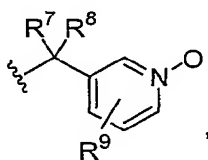
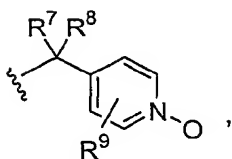
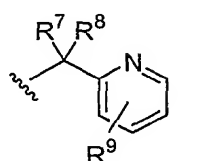
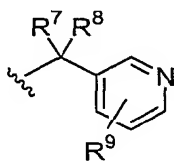
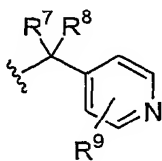
WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of the formula

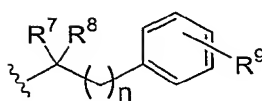
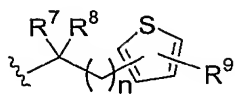
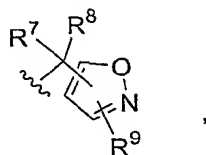
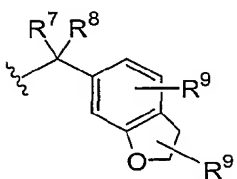
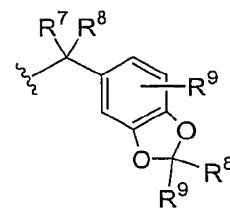
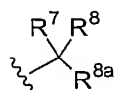
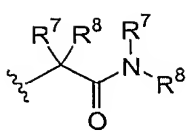
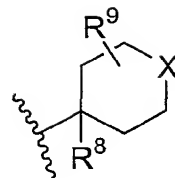
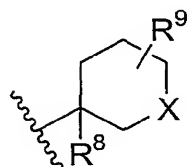
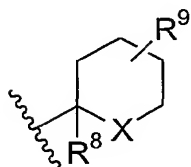
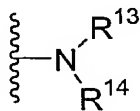
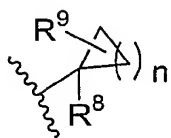


(I)

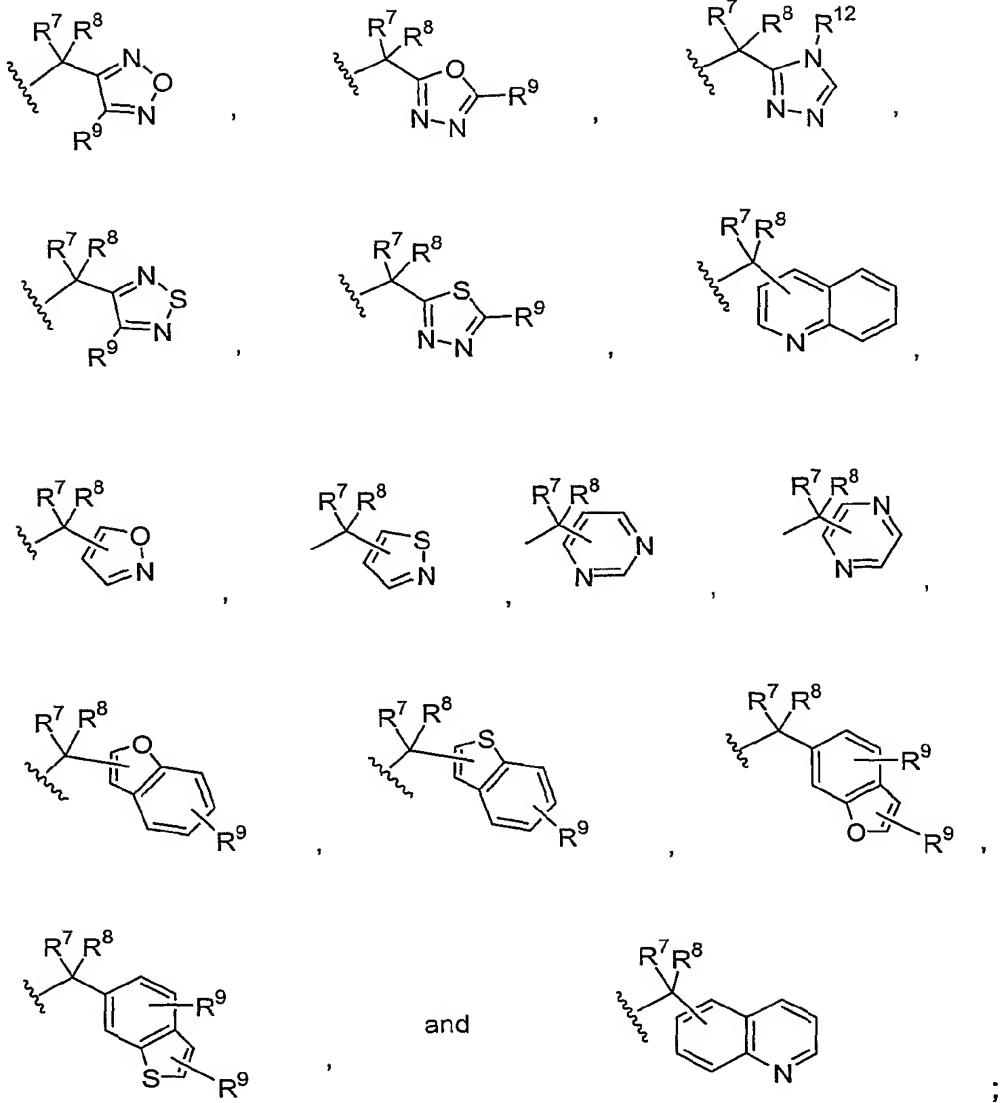
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof wherein
A is selected from the group consisting of



341

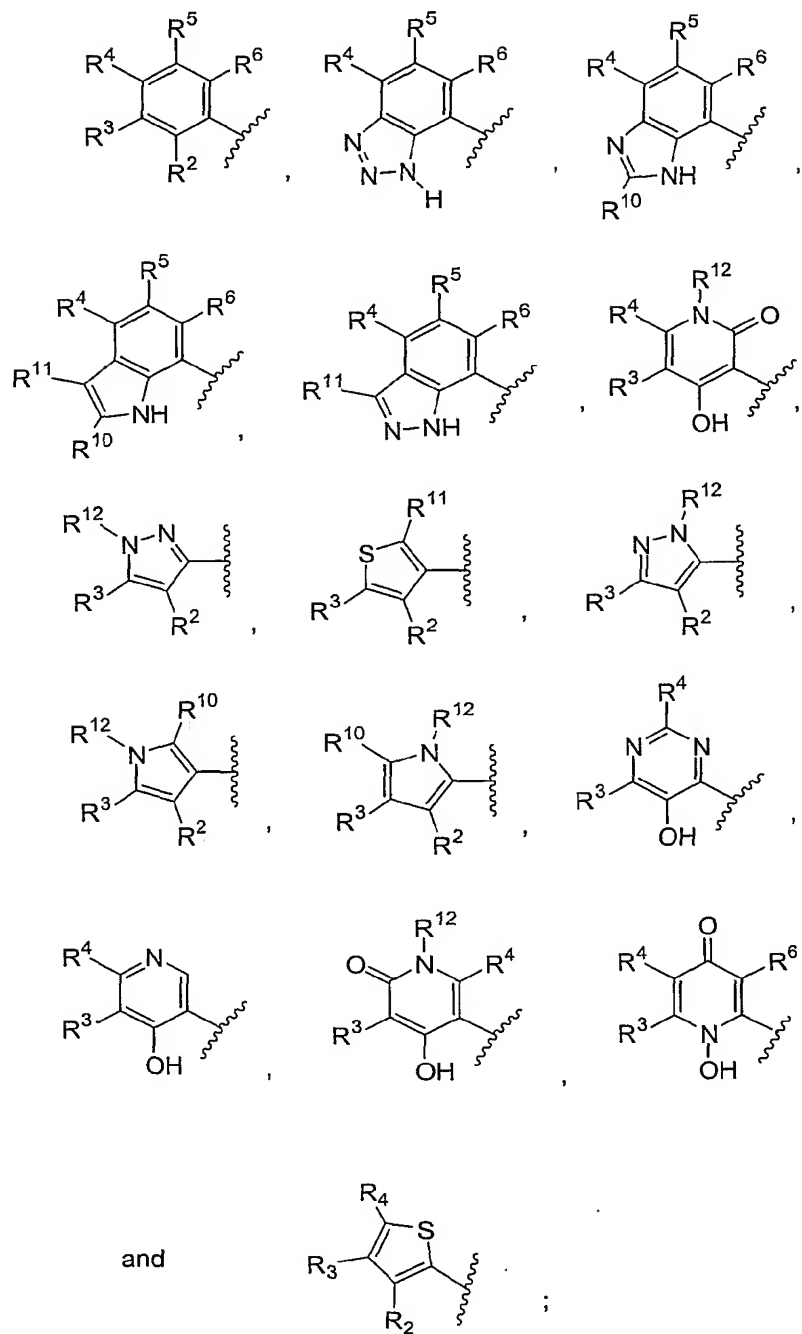

 $n = 0 - 6$

 $X = -O-, -NH-, -S-$

 $n = 1 - 5$

342



343

B is selected from the group consisting of



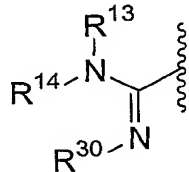
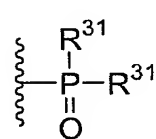
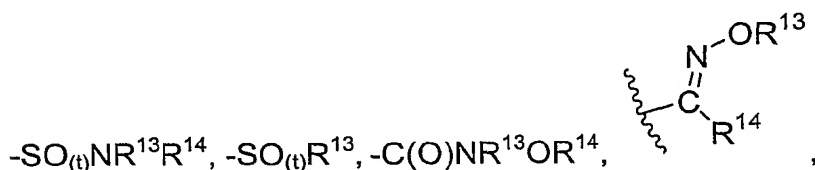
5

 R^2 is hydrogen, OH, $-C(O)OH$, $-SH$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHC(O)R^{13}$,

-NHSO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -NHSO₂R¹³, -NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NHR¹³,
-C(O)NR¹³OH, -S(O₂)OH, -OC(O)R¹³ or an unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic
acidic functional group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R² groups are the same or different
and independently selected from 1-6 R⁹ groups;

R³ and R⁴ are the same or different and are independently selected from the
group consisting of hydrogen, cyano, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -OH,
-CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O)R¹³, -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NHR¹⁷, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,



-NHC(O)R¹⁷, unsubstituted or substituted aryl and
unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R³ and R⁴ groups are the same or
different and independently selected from 1-6 R⁹ groups;

R⁵ and R⁶ are the same or different and are independently selected from the
group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -CF₃, -OCF₃,
-NO₂, -C(O)R¹³, -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, cyano, an
unsubstituted or substituted aryl and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R⁵ and R⁶ groups are the same or
different and independently selected from 1-6 R⁹ groups;

R⁷ and R⁸ are the same or different and are independently selected from the
group consisting of H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl,
unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl,
unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, -CO₂R¹³, -CONR¹³R¹⁴, fluoroalkyl, alkynyl,
alkenyl and cycloalkenyl,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R⁷ and R⁸ groups are selected from
the group consisting of

a) H,

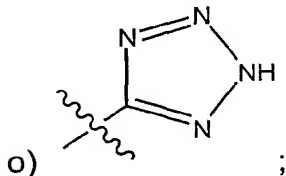
- b) halogen,
- c) $-\text{CF}_3$,
- d) $-\text{COR}^{13}$,
- e) $-\text{OR}^{13}$,
- 5 f) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- g) $-\text{NO}_2$,
- h) $-\text{CN}$,
- i) $-\text{SO}_2\text{OR}^{13}$,
- j) $-\text{Si}(\text{alkyl})_3$,
- 10 k) $-\text{Si}(\text{aryl})_3$,
- l) $-(\text{R}^{13})_2\text{R}^{14}\text{Si}$,
- m) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- n) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- o) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- 15 p) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- q) $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$,
- r) $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- s) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{14}$, and
- t) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{14}$;

20 R^{8a} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl and cycloalkylalkyl;

R^9 is independently selected from 1-6 of the group consisting of:

- a) $-\text{R}^{13}$,
- b) halogen,
- 25 c) $-\text{CF}_3$,
- d) $-\text{COR}^{13}$,
- e) $-\text{OR}^{13}$,
- f) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- g) $-\text{NO}_2$,
- 30 h) $-\text{CN}$,
- i) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- j) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- k) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{COR}^{14}$,

- l) $-\text{CONR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
 m) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{14}$,
 n) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, and



R^{10} and R^{11} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{SO}(\text{t})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{OR}^{14}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$ and cyano;

R^{12} is hydrogen, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$, or an unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl or unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl group,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{12} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups;

R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted fluoroalkyl, or

R^{13} and R^{14} can be taken together when both are attached to a nitrogen atom to form an unsubstituted or substituted 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring containing one to two heteroatoms selected from oxygen, sulfur and nitrogen,

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{13} and R^{14} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1-6 of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{15}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{15}\text{R}^{16}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{NR}^{15}\text{R}^{16}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{15}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{15}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ and halogen;

347

R^{15} and R^{16} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

R^{17} is $-\text{SO}_2$ alkyl, $-\text{SO}_2$ aryl, $-\text{SO}_2$ cycloalkyl or $-\text{SO}_2$ heteroaryl;

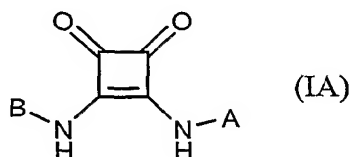
R^{30} is alkyl, cycloalkyl, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or $-\text{SO}_2R^{15}$;

R^{31} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl and unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl;

wherein the substituents on the substituted R^{31} groups are the same or different and independently selected from 1-6 R^9 groups; and

t is 0, 1 or 2.

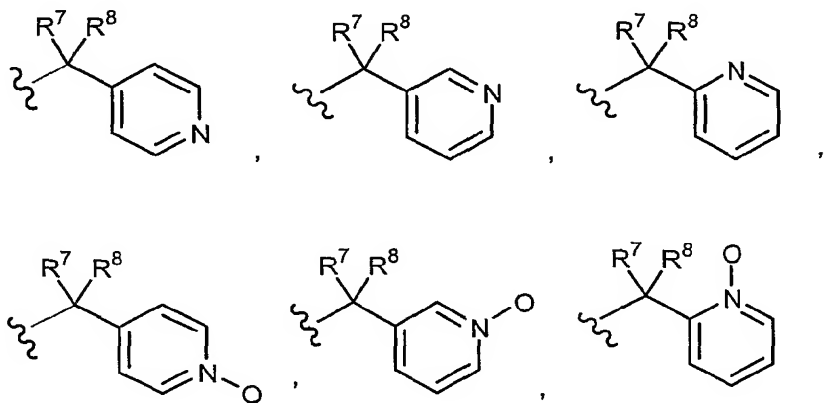
2. The use of a compound of formula IA for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a disease described herein:



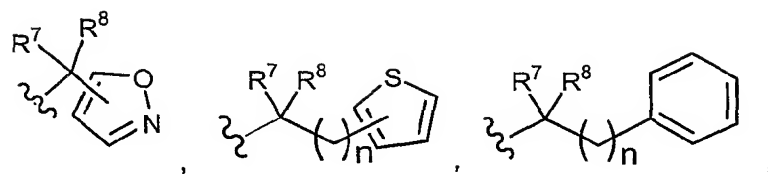
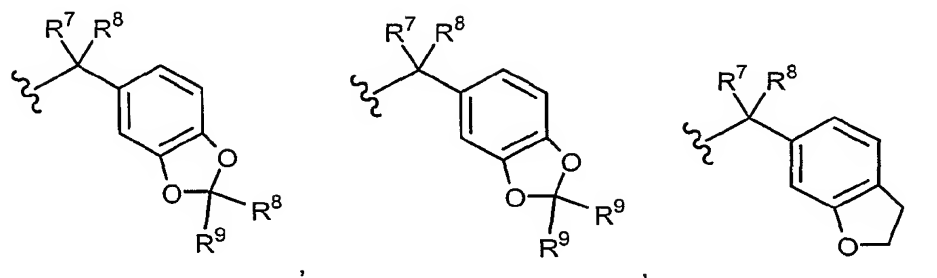
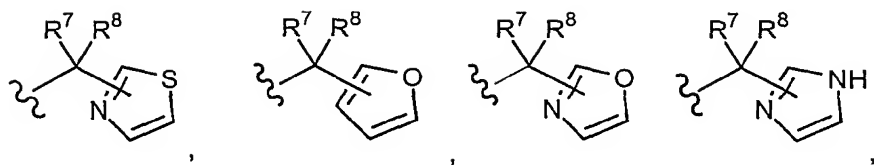
and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts (e.g., sodium or calcium salt) and solvates thereof, wherein:

A is selected from the group consisting of:

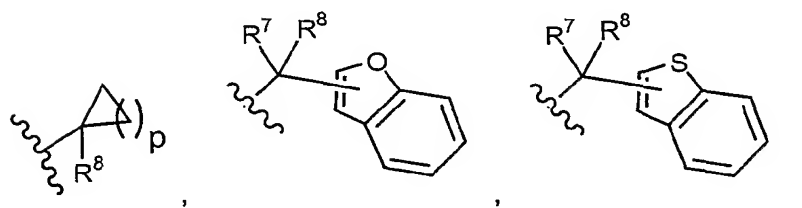
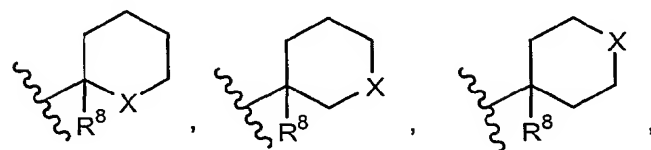
(1)



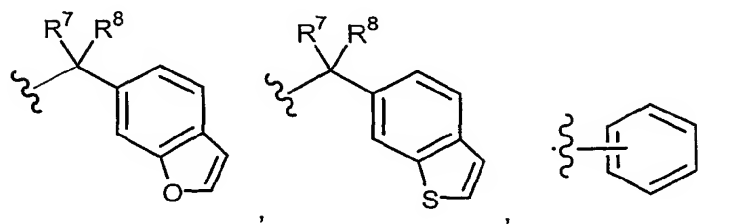
348



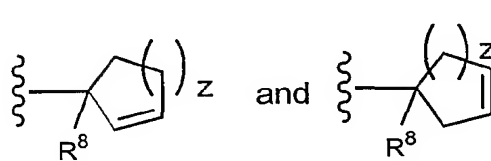
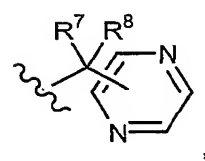
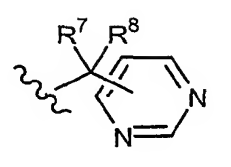
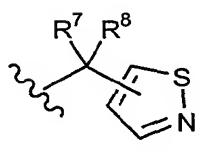
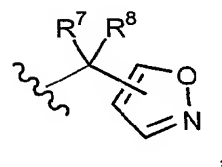
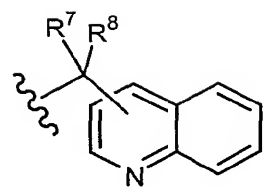
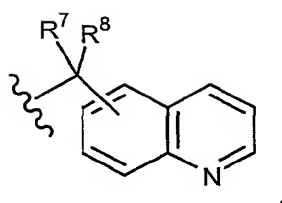
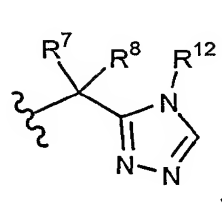
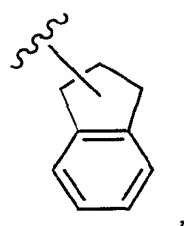
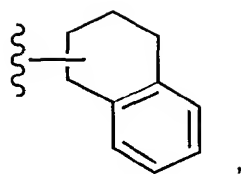
5



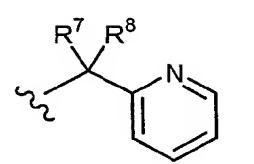
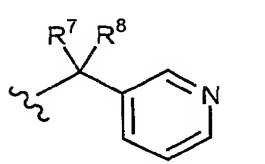
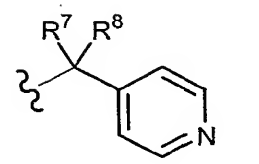
10



349



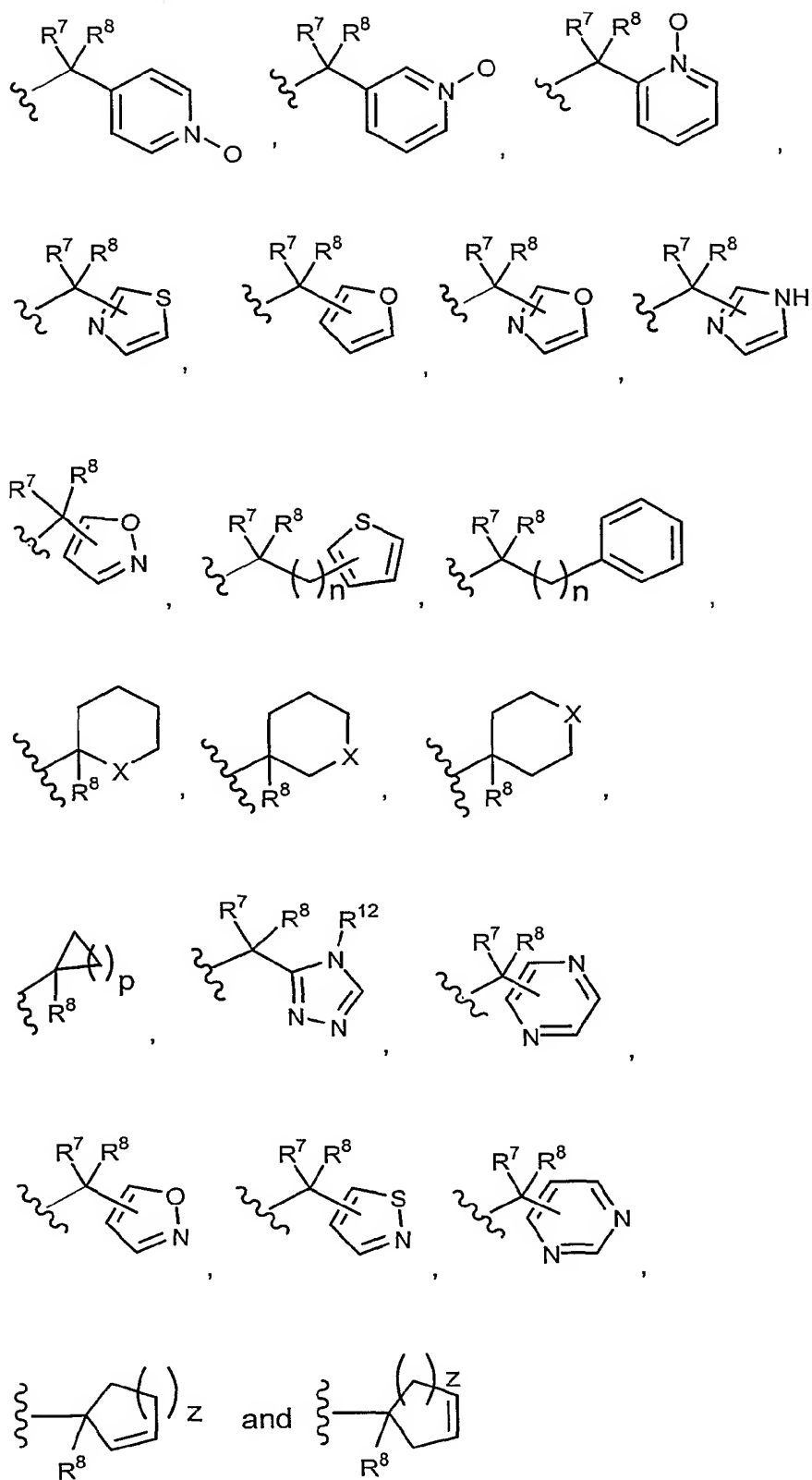
(2)



5

10

350



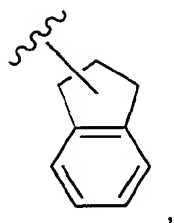
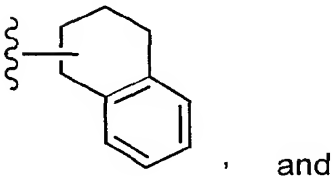
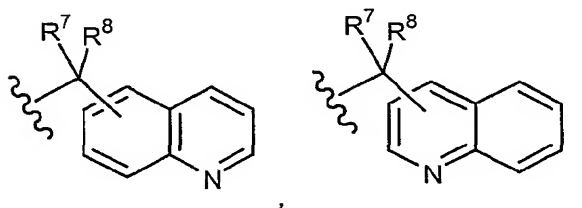
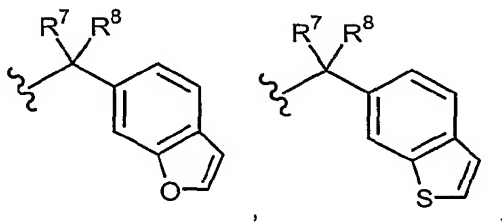
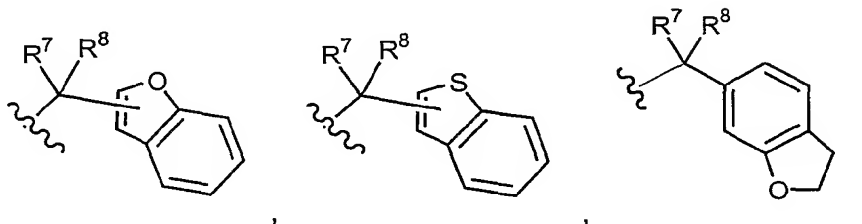
5

10

351

wherein the above rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 6 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

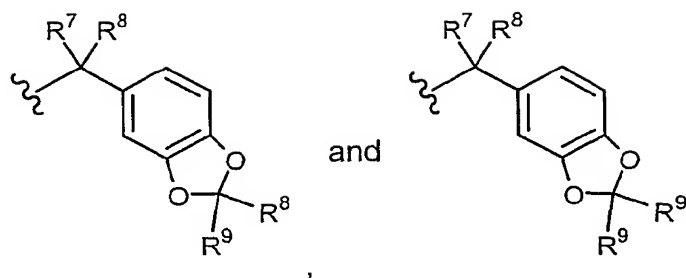
(3)



15 wherein one or both of the above rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 6 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

352

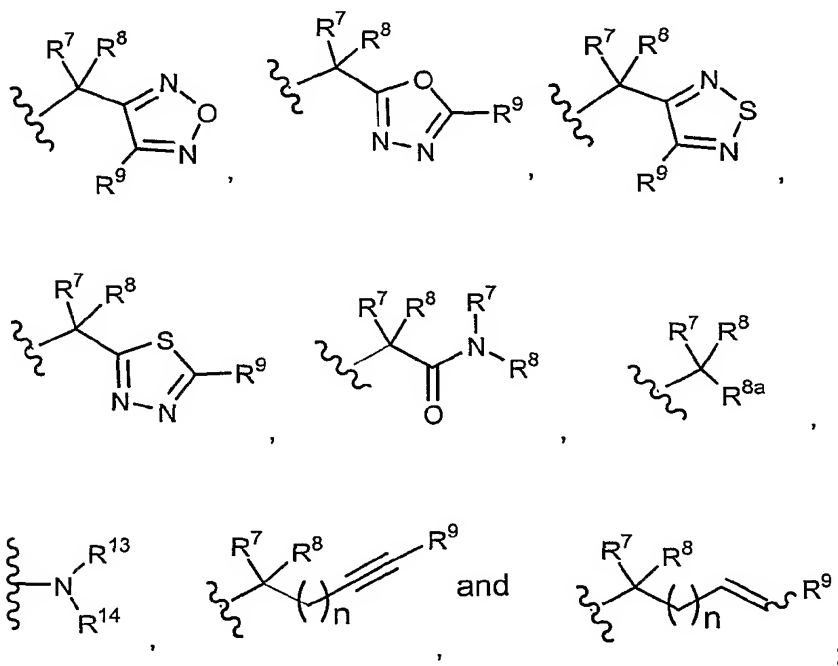
(4)



wherein the above phenyl rings of said A groups are substituted with 1 to 3 substituents each independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups; and

5

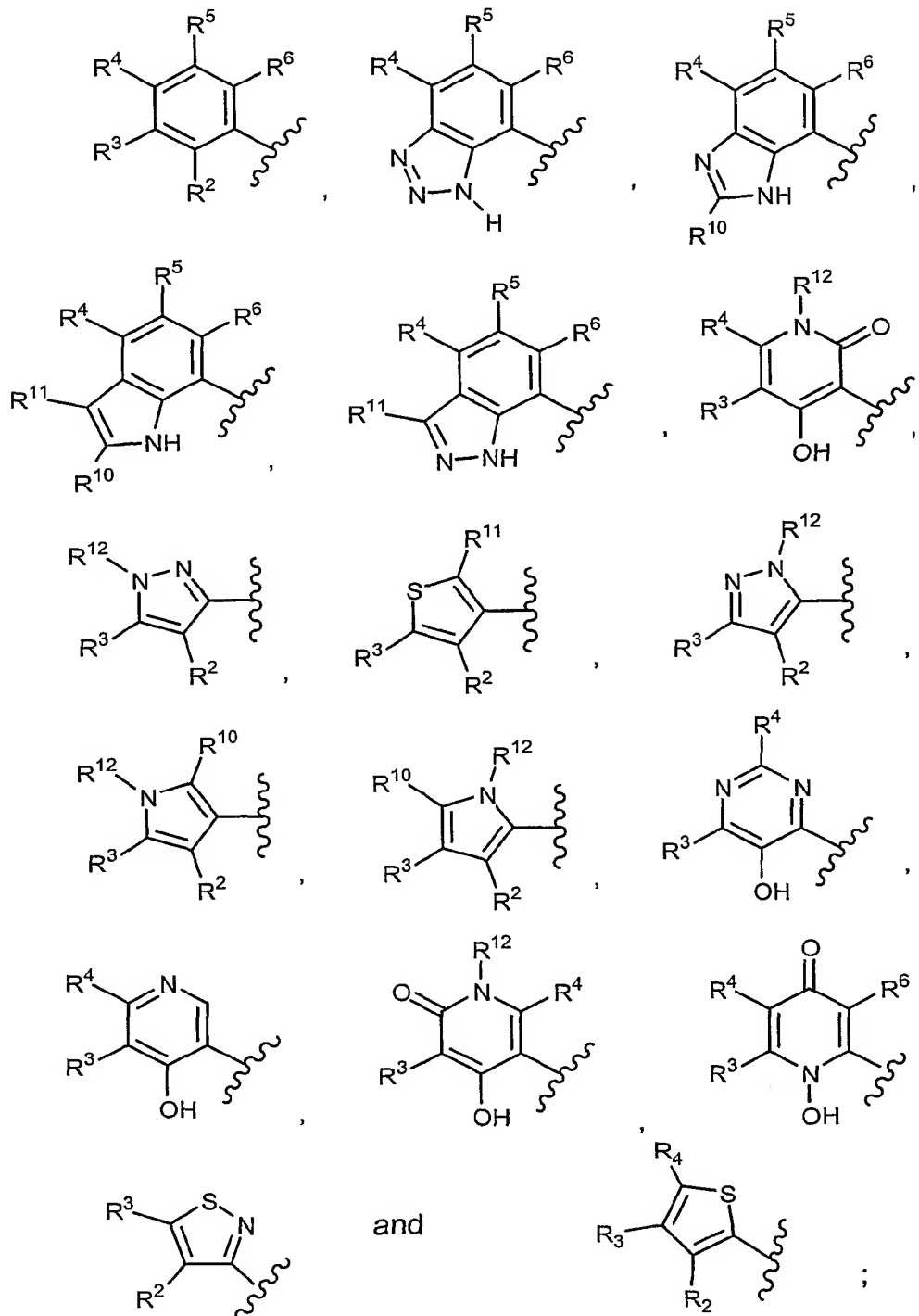
(5)



10

353

B is selected from the group consisting of

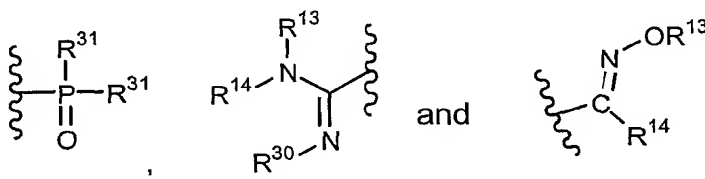


n is 0 to 6; p is 1 to 5; X is O, NH, or S; Z is 1 to 3;

R² is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, OH, -C(O)OH, -SH,
 5 -SO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -NHC(O)R¹³, -NHSO₂NR¹³R¹⁴, -NHSO₂R¹³, -NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,
 -C(O)NHO¹³, -C(O)NR¹³OH, -S(O₂)OH, -OC(O)R¹³, an unsubstituted heterocyclic

acidic functional group, and a substituted heterocyclic acidic functional group; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heterocyclic acidic functional group each substituent being independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^3 and R^4 is independently selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, cyano, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -OH, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O) R^{13} , -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NHR¹⁷, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)R¹³, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl,



wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted aryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups; and wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heteroaryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^5 and R^6 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, -CF₃, -OCF₃, -NO₂, -C(O) R^{13} , -C(O)OR¹³, -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, -SO_(t)NR¹³R¹⁴, -C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, cyano, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl group;

wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted aryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups; and wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted heteroaryl group and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^7 and R^8 is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, -CO₂R¹³, -CONR¹³R¹⁴, alkynyl, alkenyl, and cycloalkenyl; and wherein there are one or more substituents on said substituted R^7 and R^8 groups, wherein each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- a) halogen,
- b) $-\text{CF}_3$,
- c) $-\text{COR}^{13}$,
- d) $-\text{OR}^{13}$,
- 5 e) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- f) $-\text{NO}_2$,
- g) $-\text{CN}$,
- h) $-\text{SO}_2\text{OR}^{13}$,
- i) $-\text{Si}(\text{alkyl})_3$, wherein each alkyl is independently selected,
- 10 j) $-\text{Si}(\text{aryl})_3$, wherein each alkyl is independently selected,
- k) $-(\text{R}^{13})_2\text{R}^{14}\text{Si}$, wherein each R^{13} is independently selected,
- l) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- m) $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- n) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- 15 o) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- p) $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$,
- q) $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- r) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{14}$, and
- s) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{14}$;

20 R^{8a} is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl and cycloalkylalkyl;

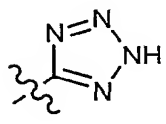
each R^9 is independently selected from the group consisting of:

- a) $-\text{R}^{13}$,
- b) halogen,
- 25 c) $-\text{CF}_3$,
- d) $-\text{COR}^{13}$,
- e) $-\text{OR}^{13}$,
- f) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- g) $-\text{NO}_2$,
- 30 h) $-\text{CN}$,
- i) $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,
- j) $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,
- k) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{COR}^{14}$,

356

l) $-\text{CONR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$,m) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{14}$,n) $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{13}$,

o)



5

p) alkyl substituted with one or more (e.g., one) $-\text{OH}$ groups (e.g., $-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{OH}$, wherein q is 1-6, usually 1 to 2, and preferably 1),

q) alkyl substituted with one or more (e.g., one) $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$ group (e.g., $-(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, wherein q is 1-6, usually 1 to 2, and preferably 1), and

10 r) $-\text{N}(\text{R}^{13})\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{14}$ (e.g., R^{13} is H and R^{14} is alkyl, such as methyl);

each R^{10} and R^{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl (e.g., C_1 to C_6 , such as methyl), halogen, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NR}^{13}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, $-\text{SH}$, $-\text{SO}(\text{t})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$,
 15 $-\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{NH}\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{13}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{R}^{14}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{13}\text{OR}^{14}$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^{13}$ and cyano;

R^{12} is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{13}$, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl group; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on the substituted R^{12} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^{13} and R^{14} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, unsubstituted or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted arylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroarylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkylalkyl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or substituted fluoroalkyl, and unsubstituted or substituted heterocycloalkylalkyl; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted R^{13} and R^{14} groups and each
 25 substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OH}$, alkoxy, aryl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl,
 30

$-N(R^{40})_2$, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-S(O)_tNR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$ provided that R^{15} is not H, halogen, and $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$; or

R^{13} and R^{14} taken together with the nitrogen they are attached to in the groups $-NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-OC(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-CONR^{13}R^{14}$,
 5 $-NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, $-SO_tNR^{13}R^{14}$, $-NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$ form an unsubstituted or substituted saturated heterocyclic ring, said ring optionally containing one additional heteroatom selected from the group consisting of: O, S and NR^{18} ; wherein there are 1 to 3 substituents on the substituted cyclized R^{13} and R^{14} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, aryl, hydroxy,
 10 hydroxyalkyl, alkoxy, alkoxyalkyl, arylalkyl, fluoroalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, amino, $-C(O)OR^{15}$, $-C(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-SO_tNR^{15}R^{16}$, $-C(O)R^{15}$, $-SO_2R^{15}$ provided that R^{15} is not H, $-NHC(O)NR^{15}R^{16}$, $-NHC(O)OR^{15}$, halogen, and a heterocycloalkenyl group;

each R^{15} and R^{16} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H,
 15 alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and heteroaryl;

R^{17} is selected from the group consisting of: $-SO_2$ alkyl, $-SO_2$ aryl, $-SO_2$ cycloalkyl, and $-SO_2$ heteroaryl;

R^{18} is selected from the group consisting of: H, alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, $-C(O)R^{19}$, $-SO_2R^{19}$ and $-C(O)NR^{19}R^{20}$;

20 each R^{19} and R^{20} is independently selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

R^{30} is selected from the group consisting of: alkyl, cycloalkyl, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, or $-SO_2R^{15}$ provided that R^{15} is not H;

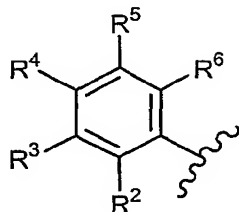
each R^{31} is independently selected from the group consisting of: unsubstituted
 25 or substituted alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl and unsubstituted or substituted cycloalkyl; wherein there are 1 to 6 substituents on said substituted R^{31} groups and each substituent is independently selected from the group consisting of: R^9 groups;

each R^{40} is independently selected from the group consisting of: H, alkyl and
 30 cycloalkyl; and

t is 0, 1 or 2.

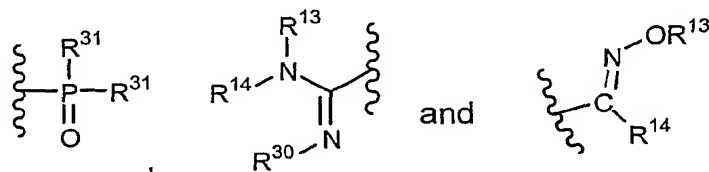
3. A compound of formula IA as defined in Claim 2 wherein B is selected from the group consisting of:

(1)



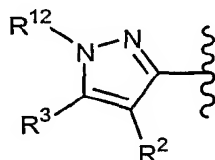
5

wherein R^3 is selected from the group consisting of: $-C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$,



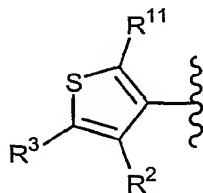
10 and all other substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

(2)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

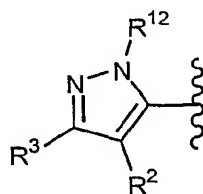
(3)



15

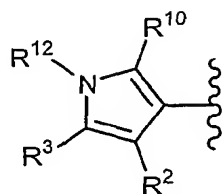
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

(4)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

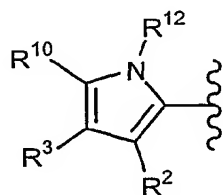
(5)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

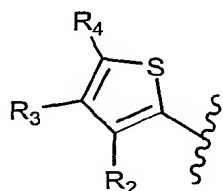
5

(6)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

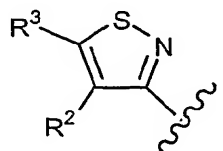
(7)



10

wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

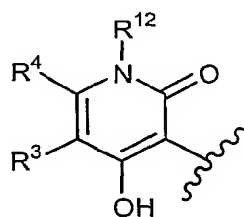
(8)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

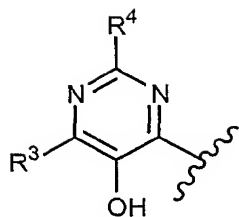
15

(9)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

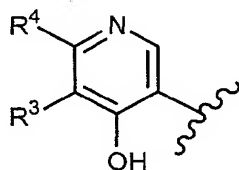
(10)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

5

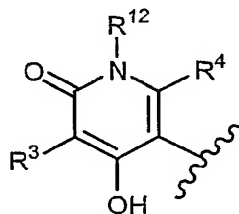
(12)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2;

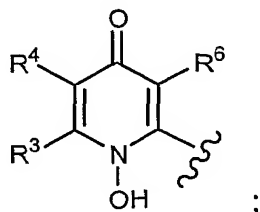
10

(13)



wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2; and

(14)

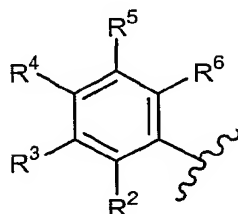


15

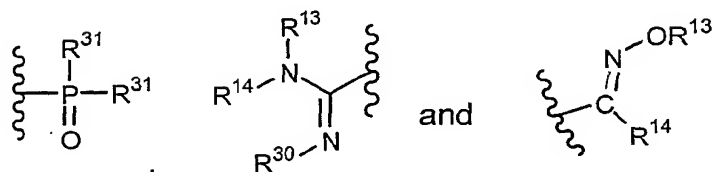
wherein all substituents are as defined for formula IA in Claim 2.

361

4. The compound of Claim 3 wherein B is:

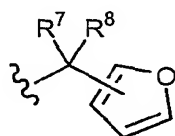


wherein R³ is selected from the group consisting of: -C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴,



and all other substituents are as defined in formula IA.

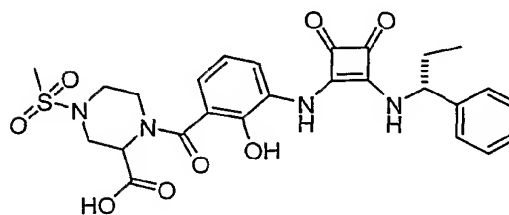
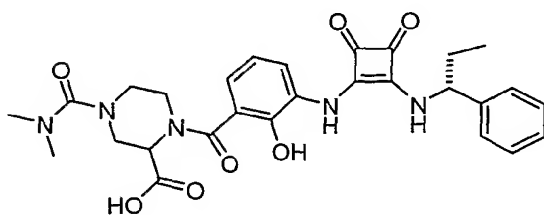
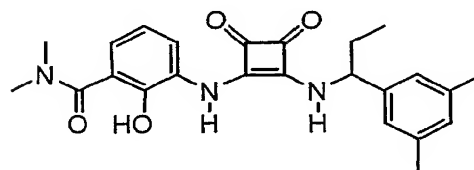
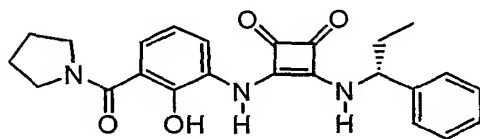
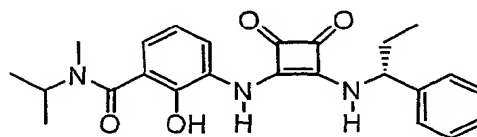
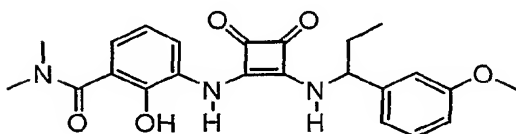
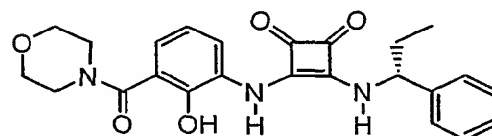
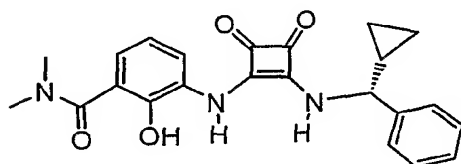
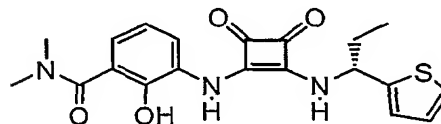
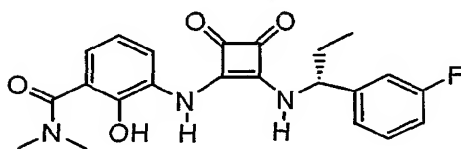
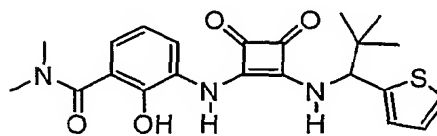
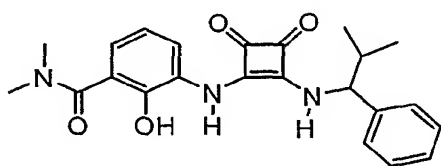
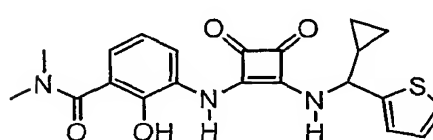
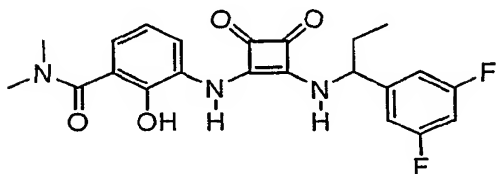
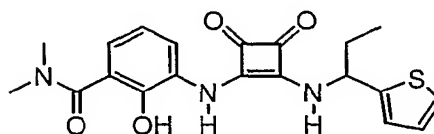
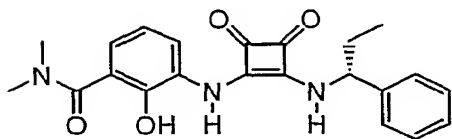
5. The compound of Claim 4 wherein the A group is

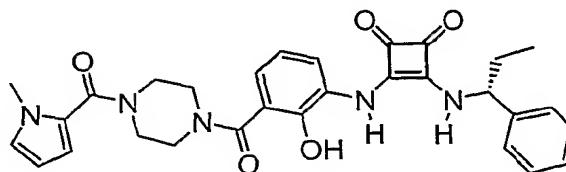
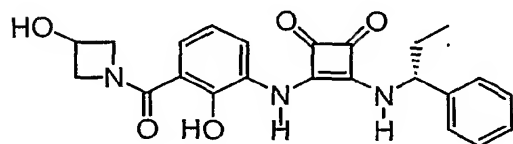
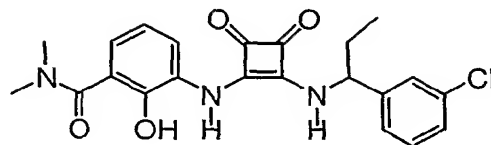
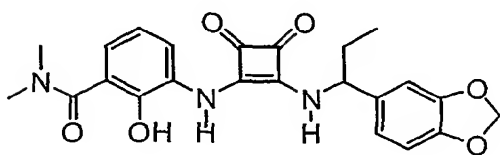
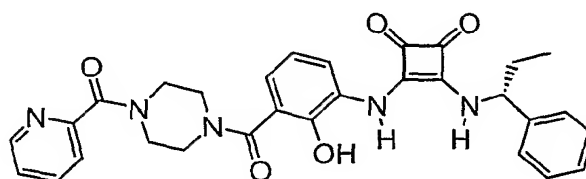
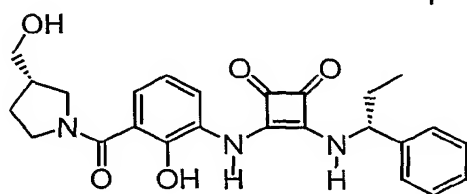
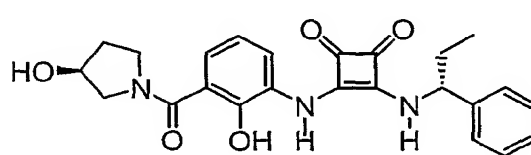
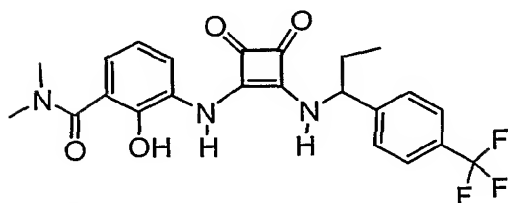
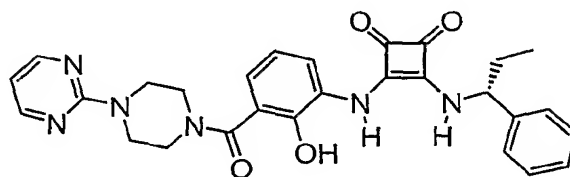
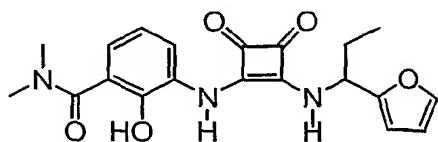
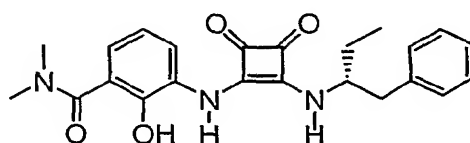
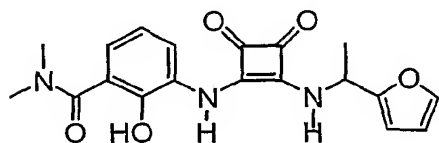
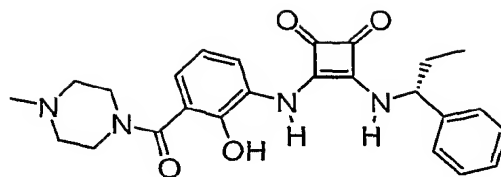
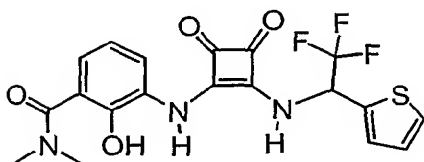
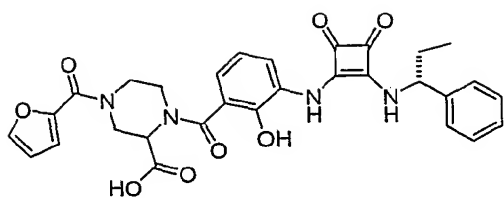


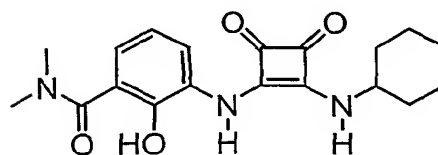
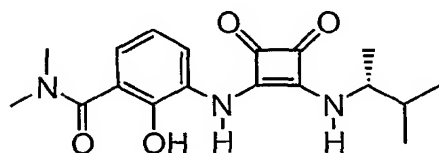
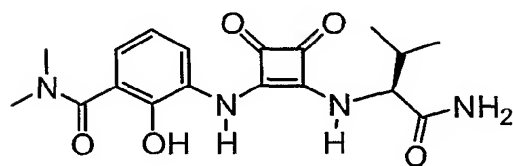
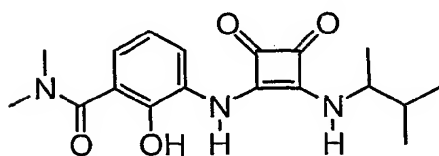
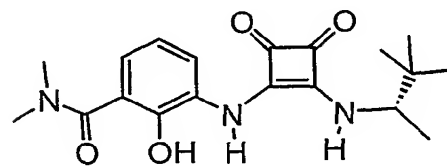
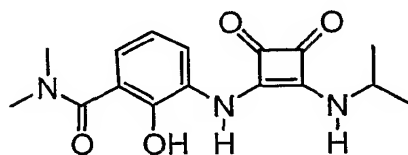
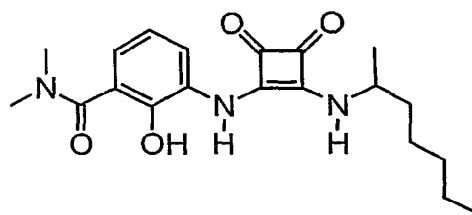
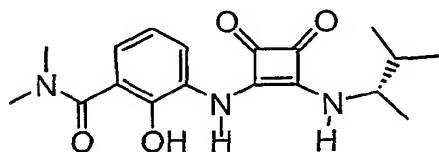
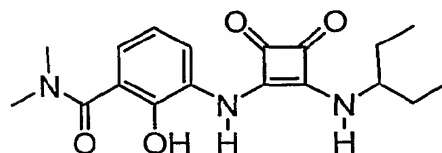
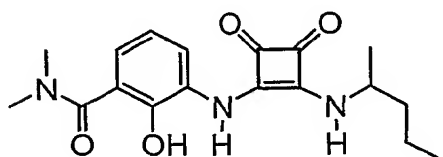
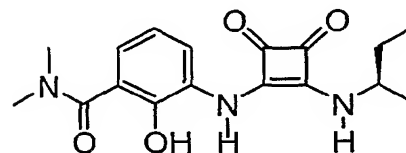
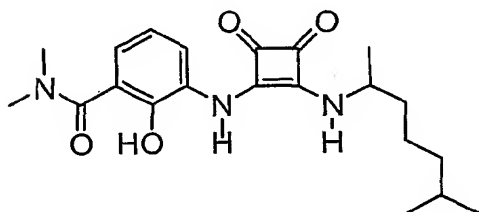
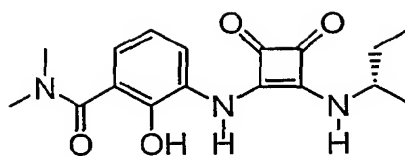
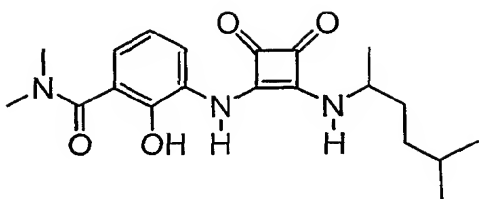
wherein the furan ring is unsubstituted or substituted as described in the definition of A for formula IA.

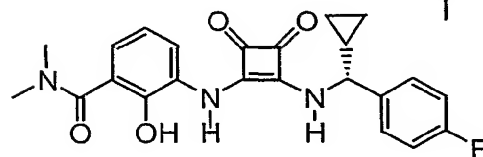
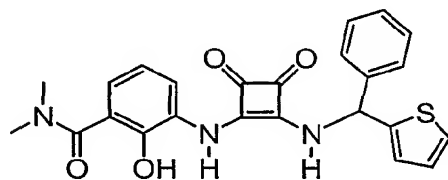
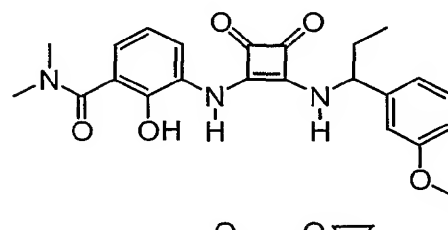
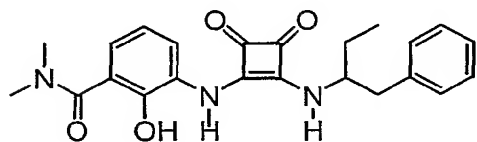
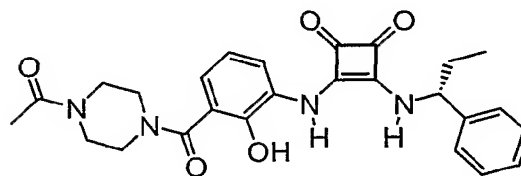
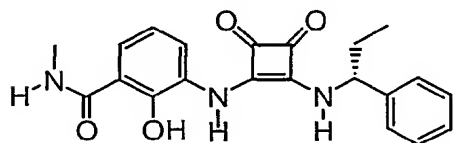
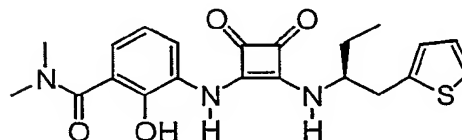
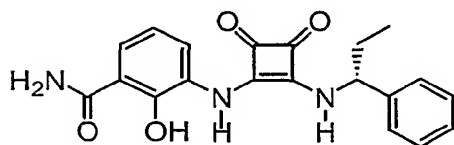
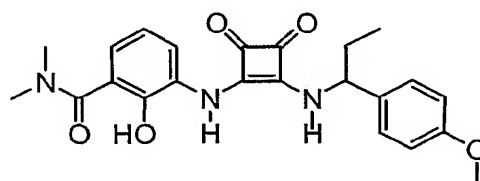
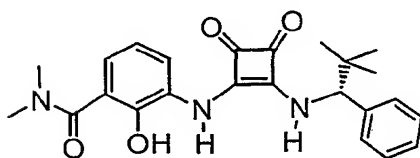
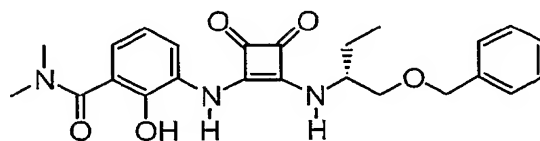
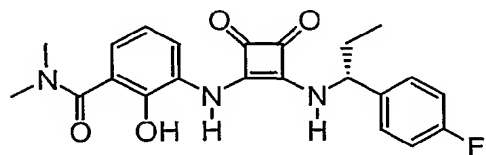
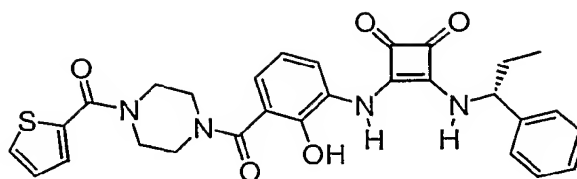
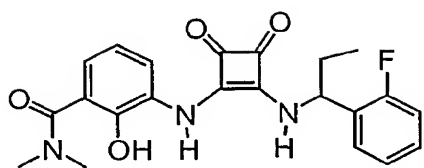
6. The compound of Claim 5 wherein said furan ring is substituted.

7. The compound of Claim 3 selected from the group consisting of:

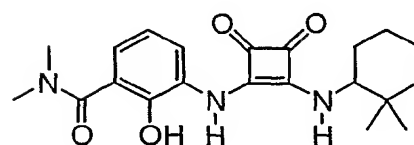
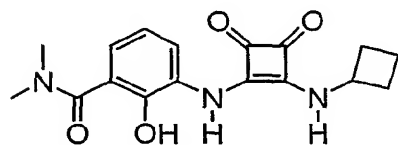
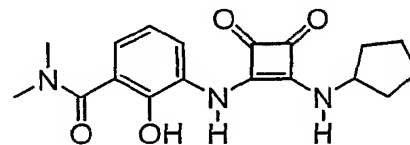
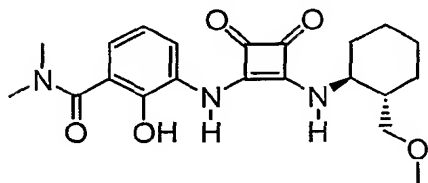
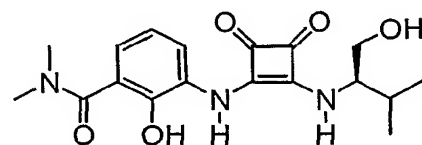
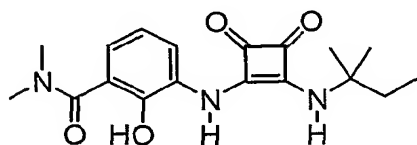
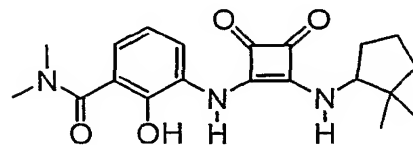
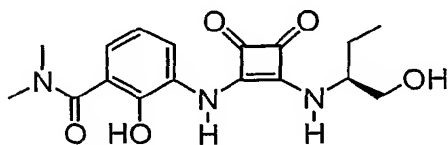
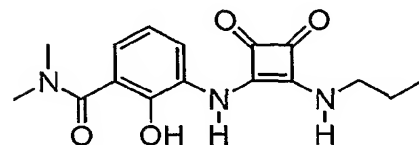
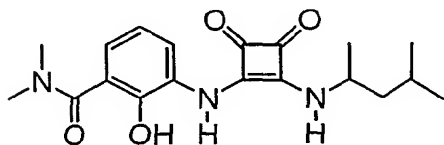
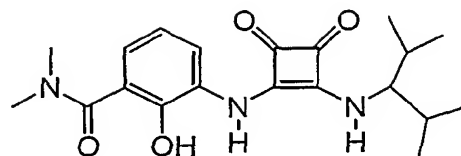
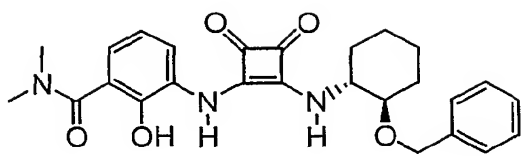




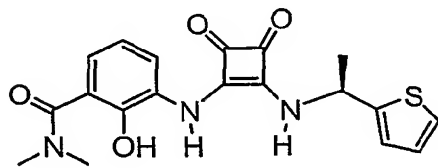
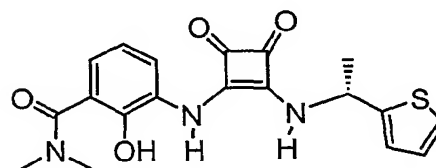
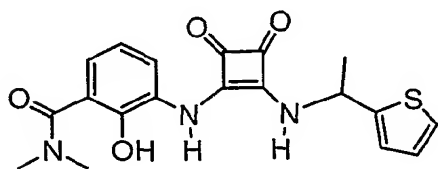
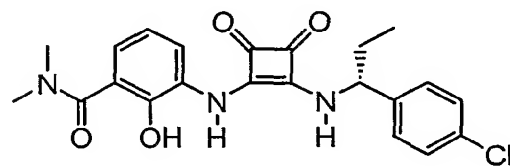
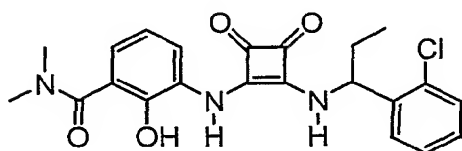
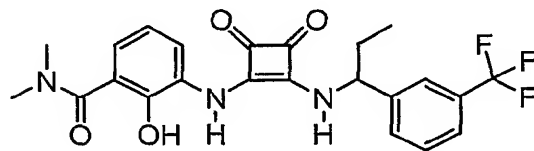
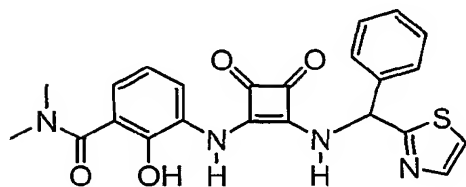
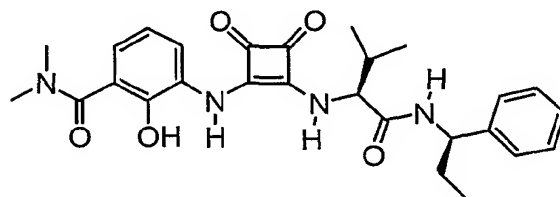
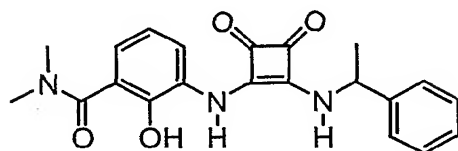
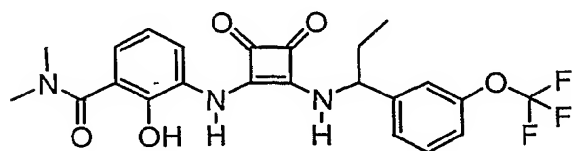
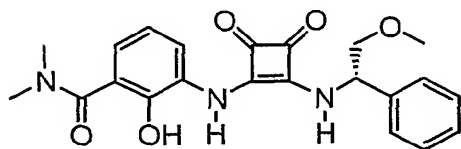
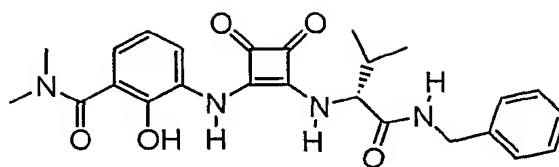
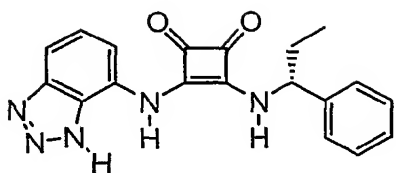




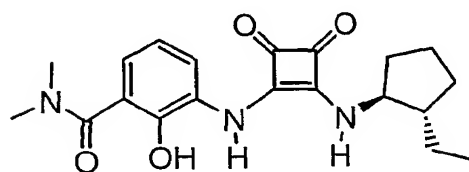
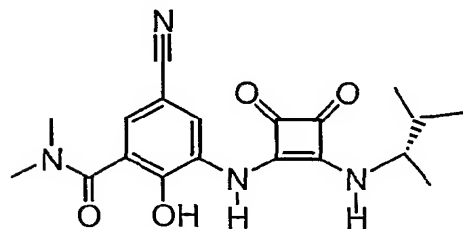
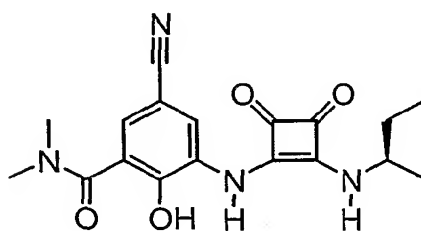
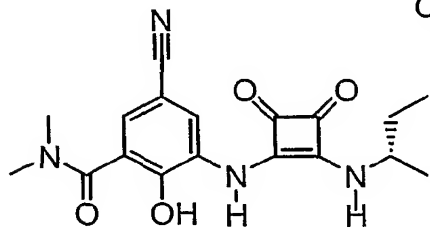
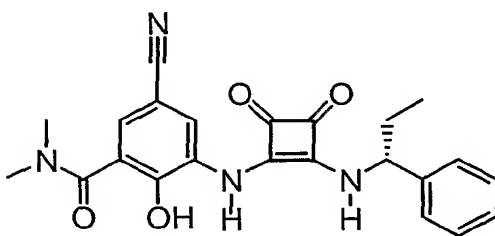
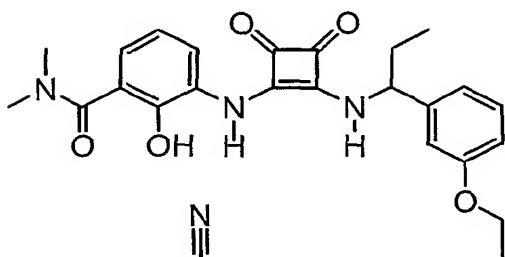
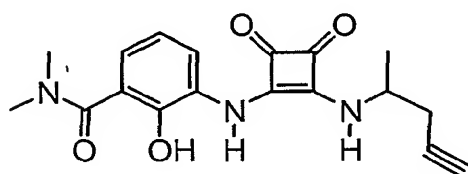
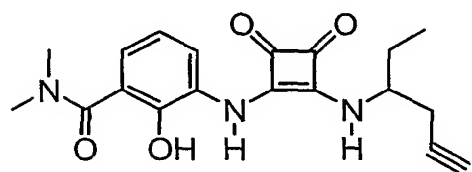
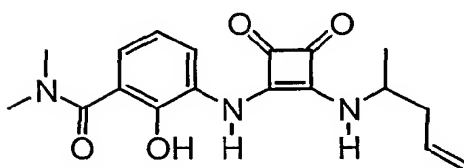
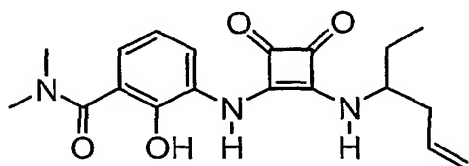
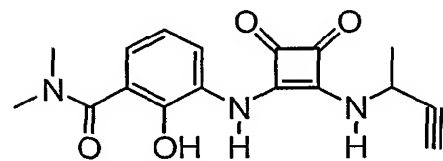
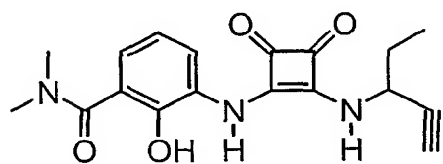
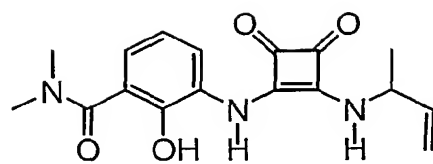
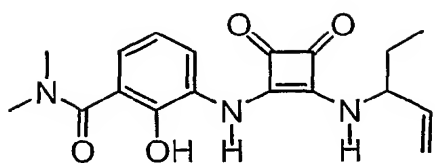
366

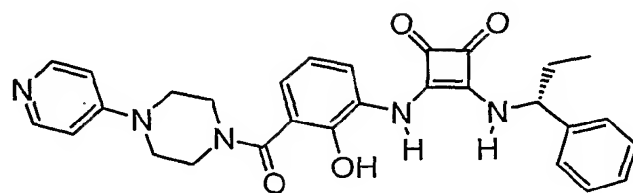
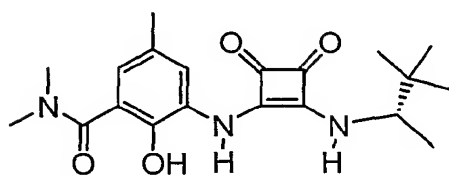
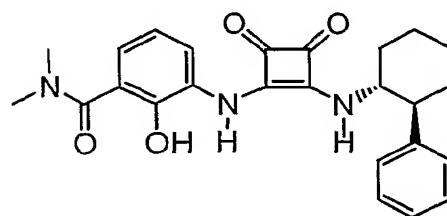
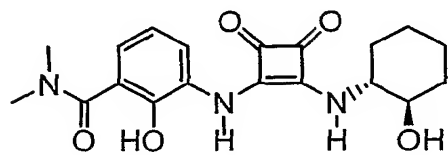
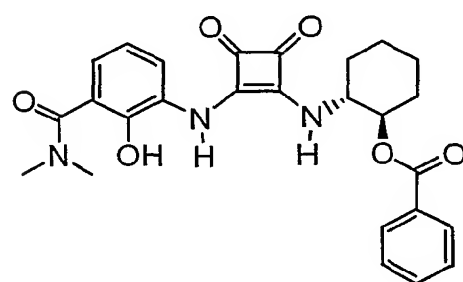
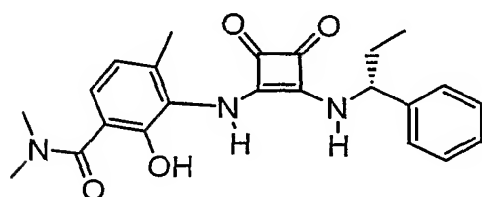
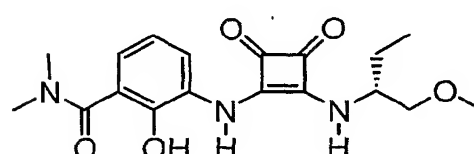
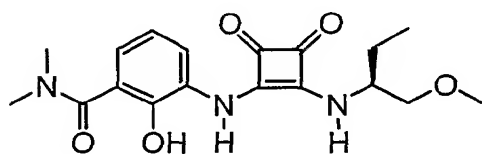
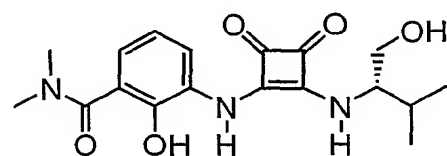
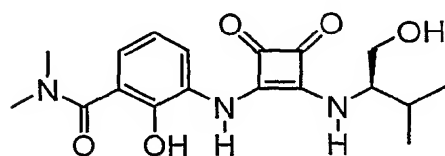
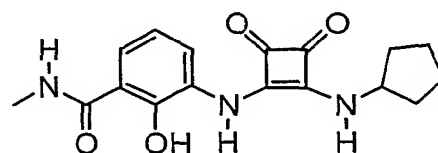
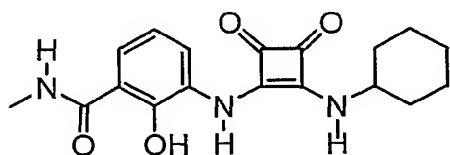
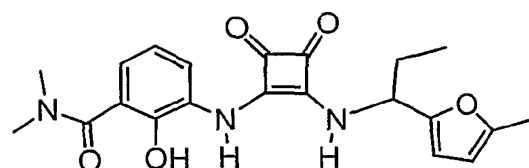
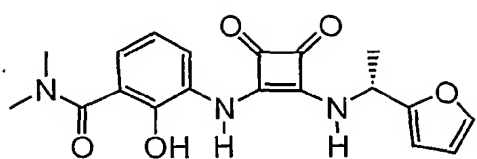


367

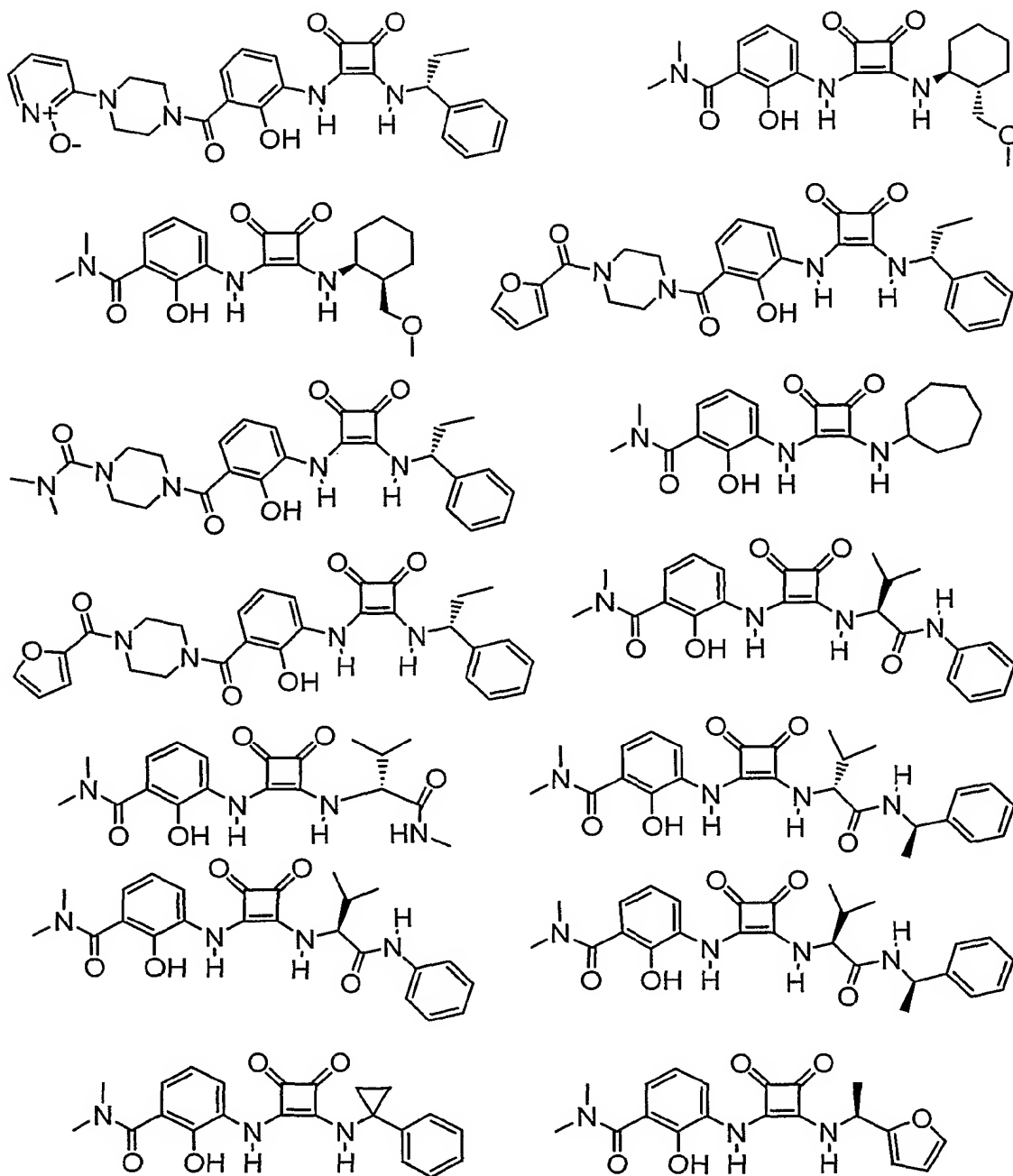


368

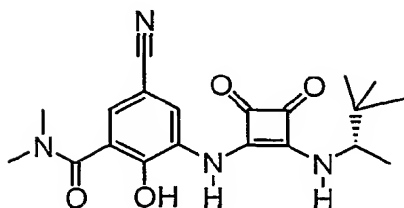
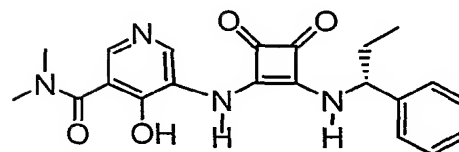
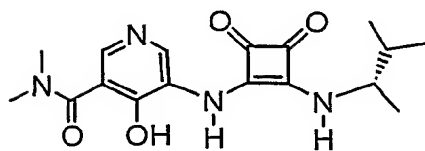
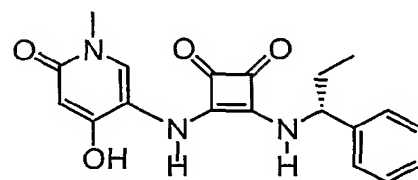
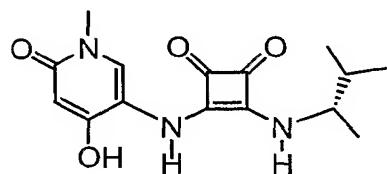
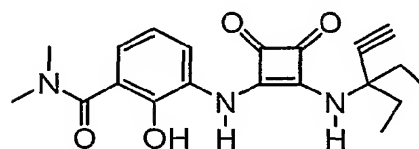
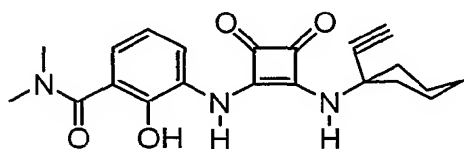
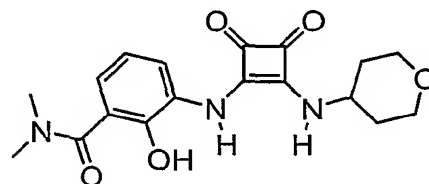
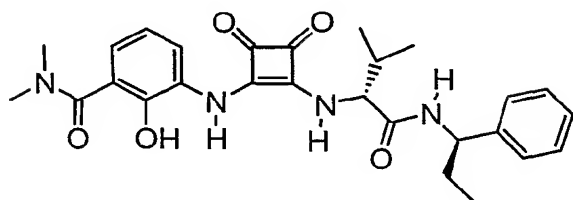
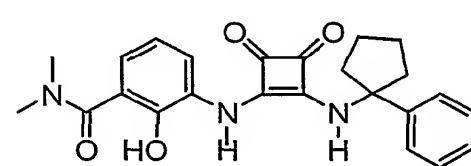
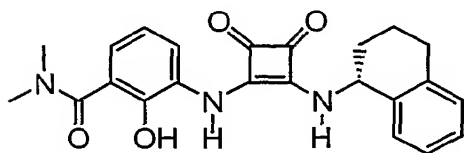
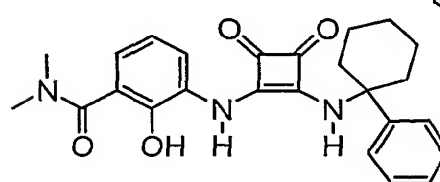
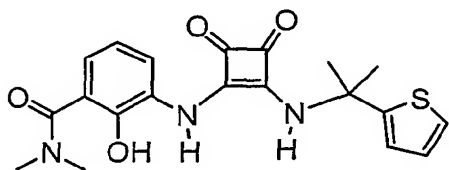
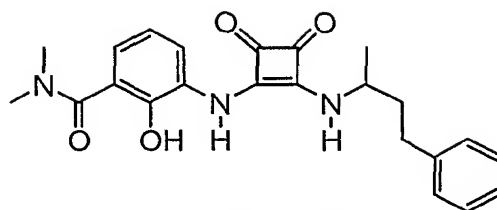
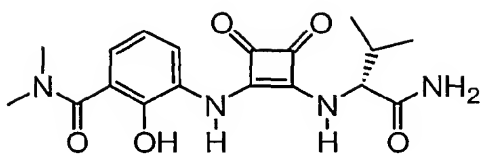




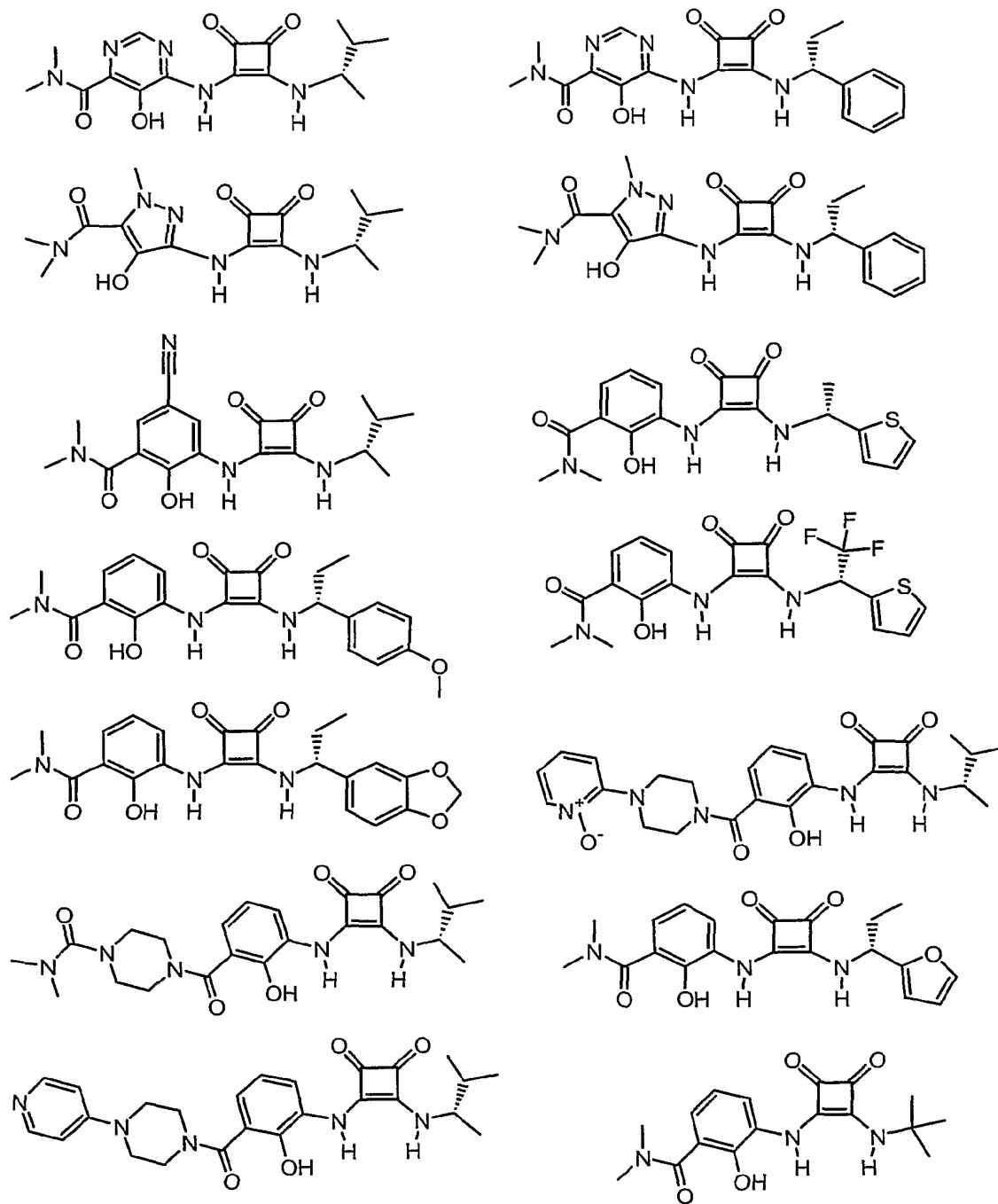
370



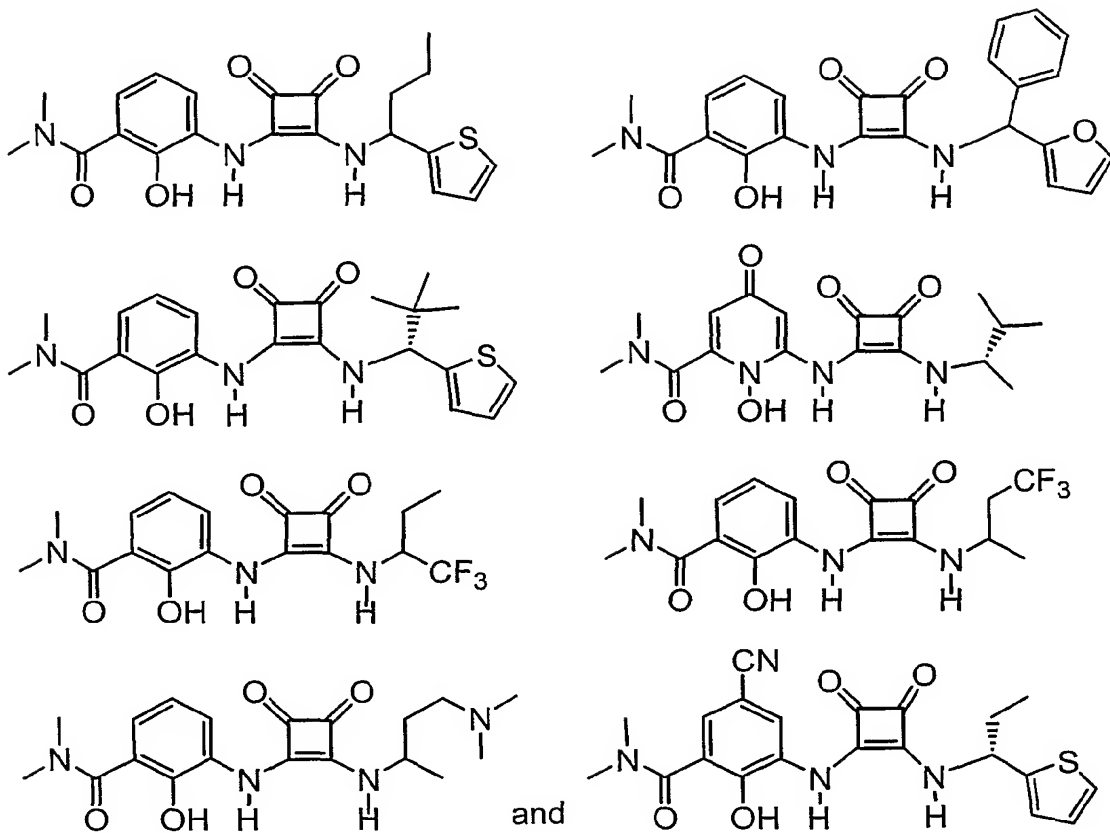
371



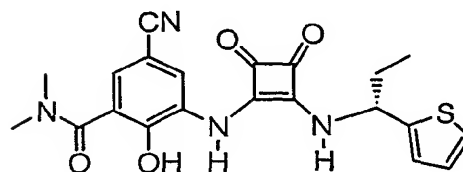
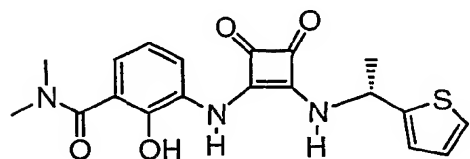
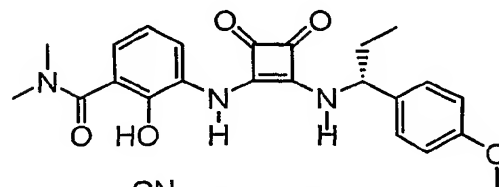
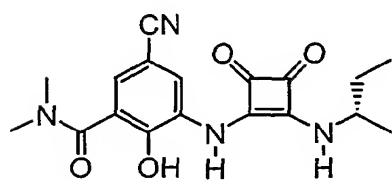
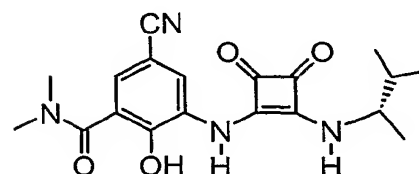
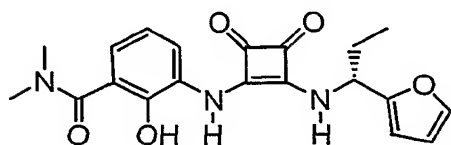
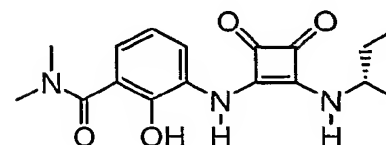
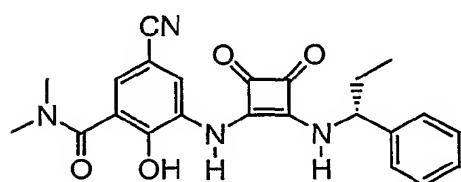
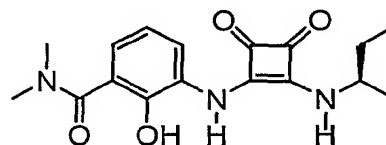
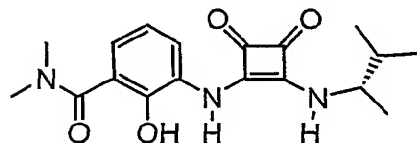
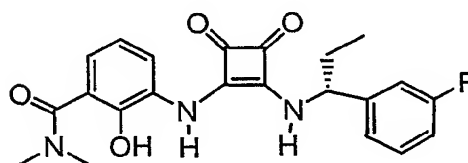
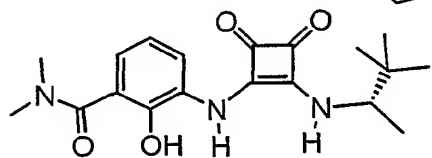
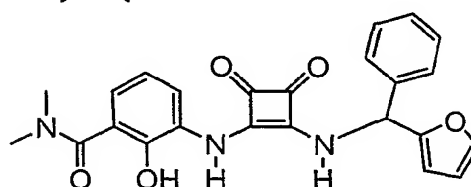
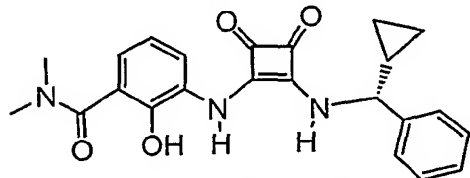
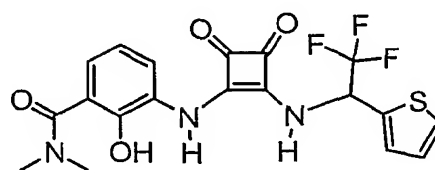
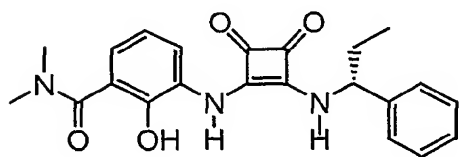
372



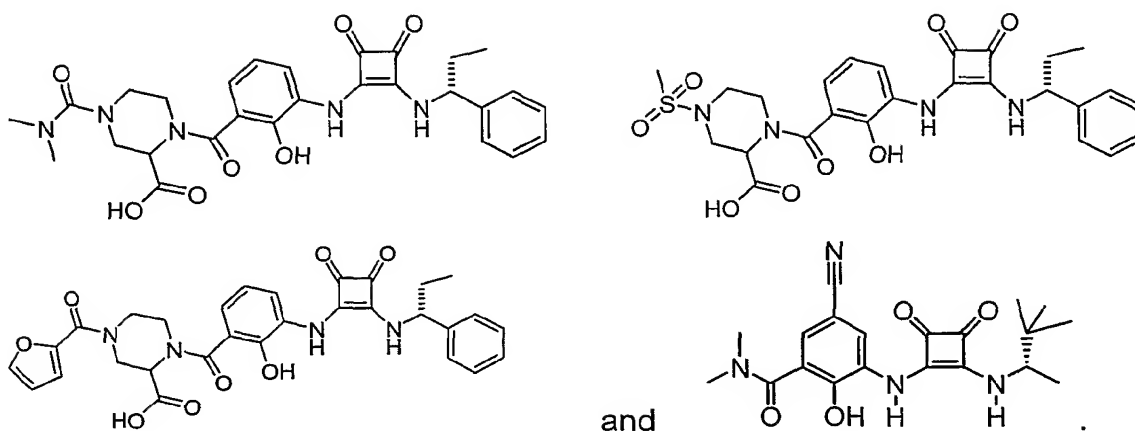
373



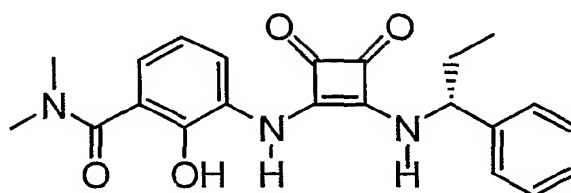
8. The compound of Claim 3 selected from the group consisting of



375

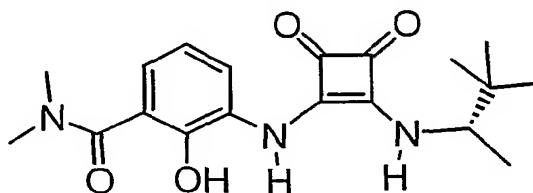


9. A compound of the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

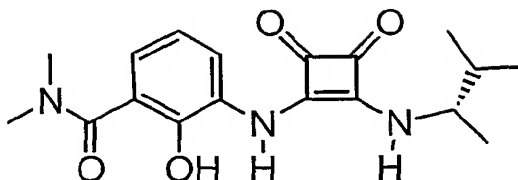
10. A compound of the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

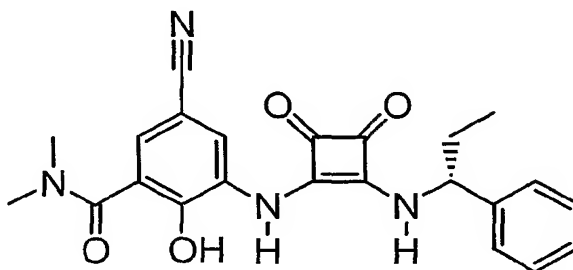
376

11. A compound of the formula



5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

12. A compound of the formula

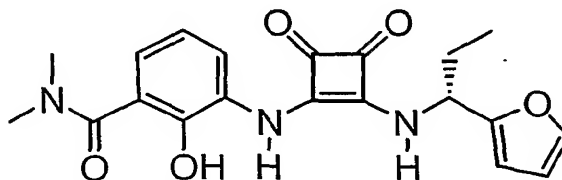


10

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

15

13. A compound of the formula

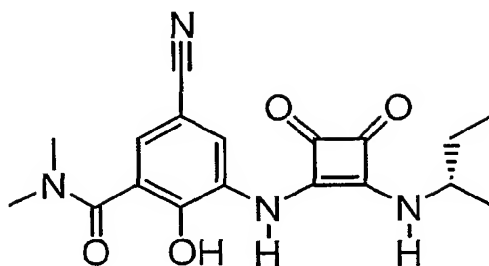


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

20

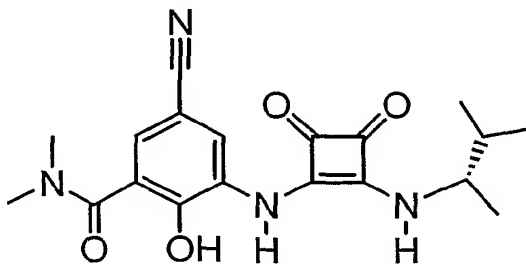
377

14. A compound of the formula



5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

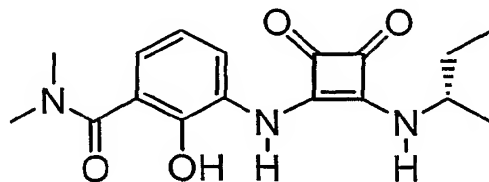
15. A compound of the formula



10

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

16. A compound of the formula

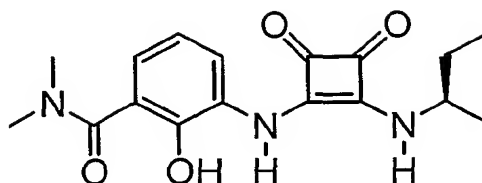


15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

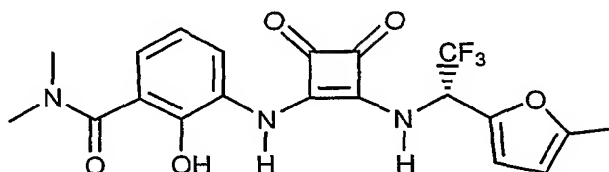
378

17. A compound of the formula



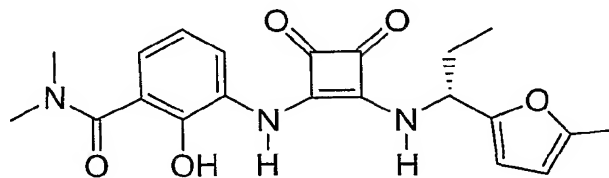
5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

18. A compound of the formula



10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

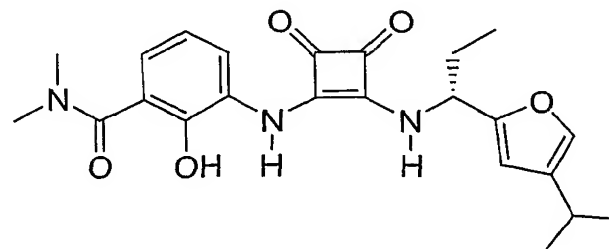
19. A compound of the formula



15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

20. A compound of the formula

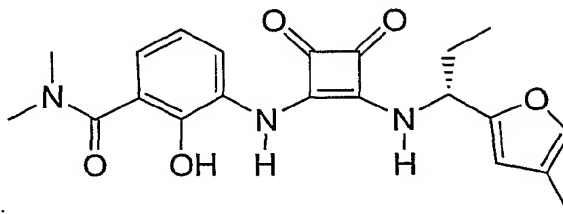


20

379

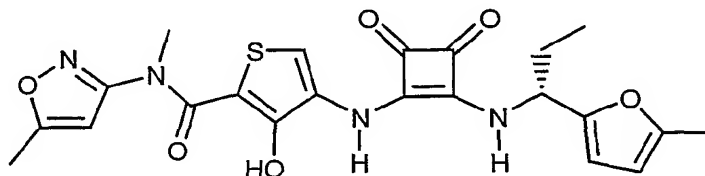
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

21. A compound of the formula



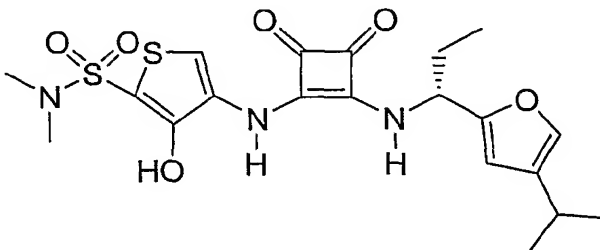
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

22. A compound of the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

23. A compound of the formula



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

24. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1 and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for treating a chemokine-mediated disease wherein the chemokine binds to a CXCR2 and/or CXCR1 receptor in a mammal.

25. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1 and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for treating a chemokine-mediated disease wherein the chemokine binds to a CXC receptor in a mammal.

5 26. The use of Claim 24 wherein the chemokine mediated disease is selected from the group consisting of psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, acne, asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, adult respiratory disease, arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, septic shock, endotoxic shock, gram negative sepsis, toxic shock syndrome, stroke, cardiac and
10 renal reperfusion injury, glomerulonephritis or thrombosis, Alzheimer's disease, graft vs. host reaction, allograft rejections, cystic fibrosis, malaria, acute respiratory distress syndrome, delayed type hypersensitivity reaction, atherosclerosis and cerebral and cardiac ischemia.

15 27. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1, and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for treating cancer.

 28. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1, and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for treating cancer in combination with the use of an
20 anticancer agent for the manufacture of a medicament for treating cancer.

 29. The use of Claim 28, wherein the anti-cancer agent is selected from the group consisting of alkylating agents, antimetabolites, natural products and their derivatives, hormones, anti-hormones, anti-angiogenic agents and steroids, and
25 synthetics.

 30. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1, and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for inhibiting angiogenesis.

30 31. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1, and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for inhibiting angiogenesis in combination with the use of at least one anti-angiogenesis compound for the manufacture of a medicament for inhibiting angiogenesis.

32. The use of a compound of any of Claims 1, and 3 to 23 for the manufacture of a medicament for treating a disease selected from the group consisting of gingivitis, respiratory viruses, herpes viruses, hepatitis viruses, HIV,
5 kaposi's sarcoma associated virus and atherosclerosis.

33. The use of Claim 32 wherein the chemokine mediated disease is an angiogenic ocular disease.

10 34. The use of Claim 33 wherein the angiogenic ocular disease is selected from the group consisting of ocular inflammation, retinopathy of prematurity, diabetic retinopathy, macular degeneration with the wet type preferred and corneal neovascularization.

15 35. The use of Claim 27 wherein the cancer treated is melanoma, gastric carcinoma, or non-small cell lung carcinoma.

36. The use of Claim 28 wherein the cancer treated is melanoma, gastric carcinoma, or non-small cell lung carcinoma.

20 37. The use of Claim 29, wherein the wherein the cancer treated is melanoma, gastric carcinoma, or non-small cell lung carcinoma.

25 38. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a compound of any of Claims 1, 2, and 3 to 23 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

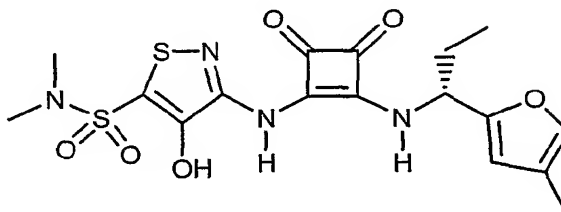
39. A sodium salt of any of the compound any of Claims 1, 2, and 3 to 23.

30 40. A calcium salt of any of the compound any of Claims 1, 2, and 3 to 23.

382

41. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of a compound of any of Claims 39 and 40 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

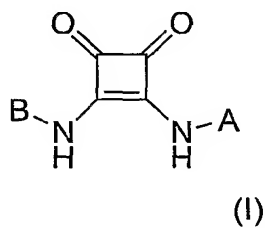
5 42. A compound of the formula:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

10

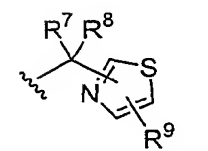
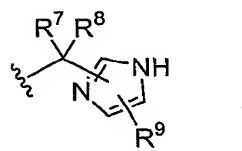
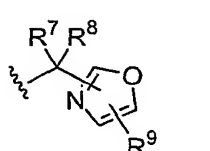
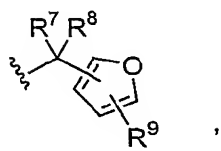
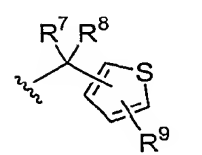
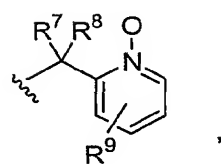
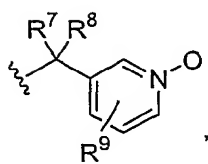
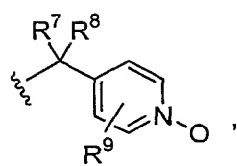
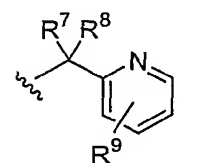
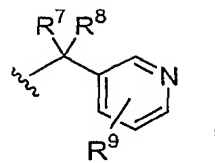
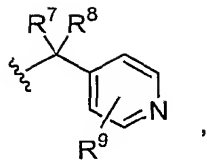
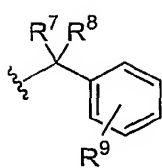
43. A compound of the formula



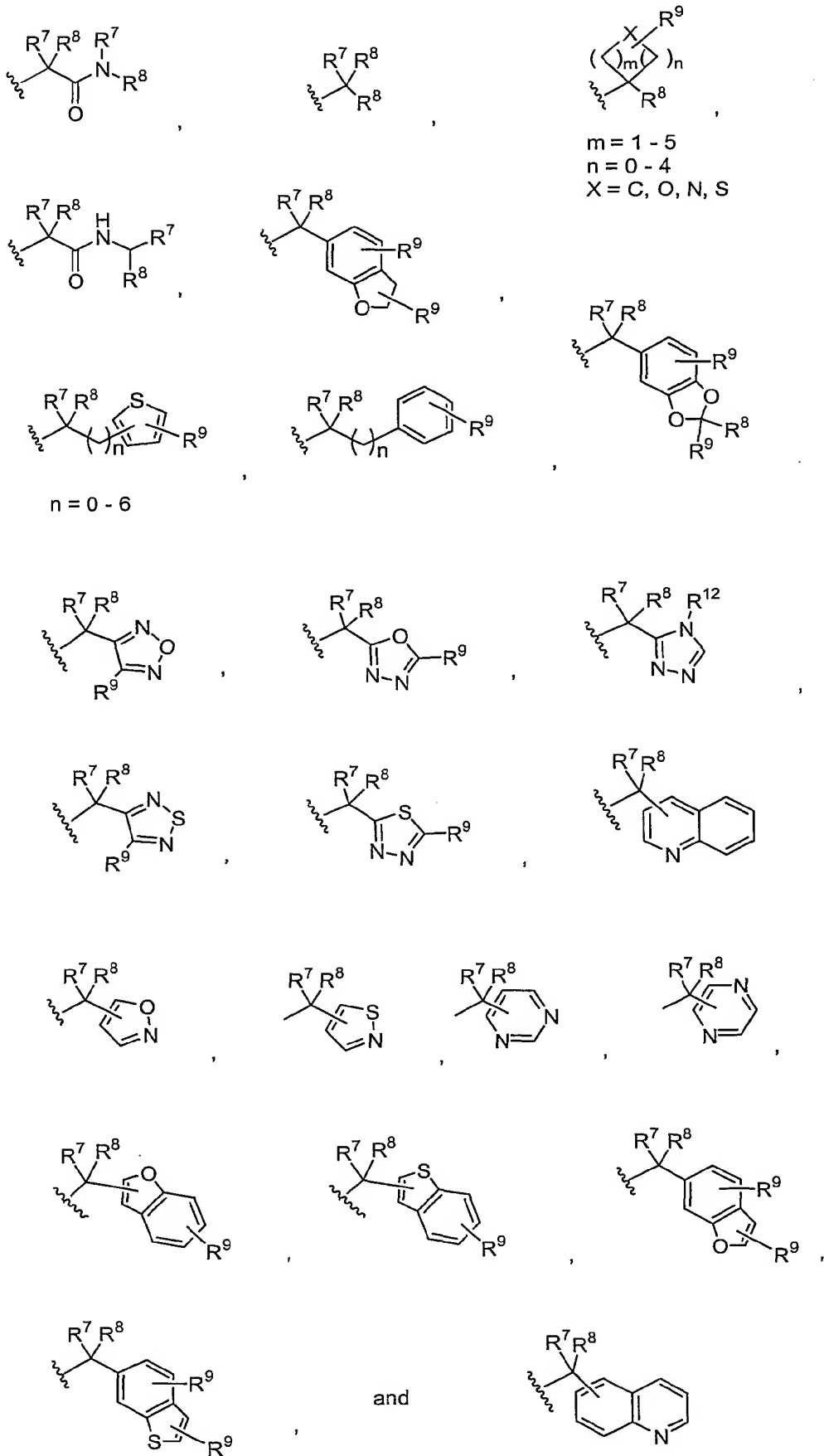
15 a prodrug thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate of the compound or of said prodrug;

A is selected from:

383



384



wherein,

R^7 and R^8 are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H; optionally substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, heteroarylalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, CO_2R^{13} , $CONR^{13}R^{14}$, fluoroalkyl, alkynyl, alkenyl, alkynylalkyl, alkenylalkyl, and cycloalkenyl,

wherein said substituents on said substituted groups are selected from the group consisting of:

- a) cyano;
- b) CO_2R^7 ;
- c) $CONR^7R^8$;
- d) $SO_2NR^7R^8$,
- e) SO_2R^7 ;
- f) NO_2 ;
- g) CF_3 ;
- h) $-OR^7$;
- i) $-NR^7R^8$;
- j) $-O(C=O)R^7$;
- k) $-O(C=O)NR^7R^8$, and
- l) halogen;

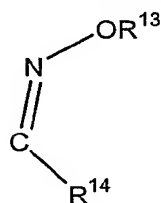
R^9 is selected from one or more of the groups consisting of:

- a) R^7 ;
- b) R^8 ;
- c) halogen;
- d) $-CF_3$;
- e) $-COR^7$;
- f) $-OR^7$;
- g) $-NR^7R^8$;
- h) $-NO_2$;
- i) $-CN$;
- j) $-SO_2R^7$;
- k) $-SO_2NR^7R^8$;
- l) $-NR^7COR^8$;
- m) $-CONR^7R^8$;

wherein,

R^2 is hydrogen, OH, C(O)OH, SH, $SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHC(O)R^{13}$, $NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHSO_2R^{13}$, C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, C(O)NHOR¹³, C(O)NR¹³OH, OC(O)R¹³ or an optionally substituted cyclic or heterocyclic acidic functional group, with the proviso that if R^2 is $SO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, at least one of R^{13} and R^{14} must be hydrogen;

R^3 and R^4 are independently hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, OH, CF₃, OCF₃, NO₂, C(O)R¹³, C(O)OR¹³, C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, $SO_{(t)}R^{13}$, C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴,



, cyano, optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl,

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups;

R^5 and R^6 independently represent hydrogen, halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, CF₃, OCF₃, NO₂, C(O)R¹³, C(O)OR¹³, C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, cyano, or an optionally substituted aryl or heteroaryl group,

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups;

R^{10} and R^{11} independently represent hydrogen, halogen, CF₃, OCF₃, $NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NR^{13}C(O)NR^{13}R^{14}$, OH, C(O)OR¹³, SH, $SO_{(t)}NR^{13}R^{14}$, SO_2R^{13} , $NHC(O)R^{13}$, $NHSO_2NR^{13}R^{14}$, $NHSO_2R^{13}$, C(O)NR¹³R¹⁴, C(O)NR¹³OR¹⁴, OC(O)R¹³ or cyano.

R^{12} is hydrogen, OC(O)R¹³, or an optionally substituted aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, alkyl, cycloalkylalkyl or heteroarylalkyl group;

R^{13} and R^{14} are the same or different and are independently selected from the group consisting of H; optionally substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, heteroarylalkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, and fluoroalkyl, or

R^{13} and R^{14} when taken together form an optionally substituted 3 to 7 membered heterocyclic ring containing one to two heteroatoms selected from O, S and N, and

wherein the substituents on the optionally substituted groups may be selected from one or more R^9 groups, and

t is 1 or 2.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 02/12681

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07C237/30 C07C255/59 C07C225/20 C07D213/74 C07D307/52
C07D333/36

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07C C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the International search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, PAJ, CHEM ABS Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 00 35855 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 22 June 2000 (2000-06-22) page 47, line 4 - line 8; claim 1	1
P, A	WO 01 64208 A (SMITHKLINE BEECHAM CORP ; WIDDOWSON KATHERINE L (US); PALOVICH MICH) 7 September 2001 (2001-09-07) claims 1-5	7-23, 42

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- *&* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

26 July 2002

Date of mailing of the international search report

02/08/2002

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Rufet, J

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 02/12681

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	BUTERA J A ET AL: "Design and SAR of Novel Potassium Channel Openers Targeted for Urge Urinary Incontinence.1. N-Cyanoguanidine Bioisosteres Possessing in Vivo Bladder Selectivity" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY. WASHINGTON, US, vol. 43, no. 6, February 2000 (2000-02), pages 1187-1202, XP002168956 ISSN: 0022-2623 abstract; tables 1-7	1
A	tables 1-7	7-23,42
X	WO 96 14300 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 17 May 1996 (1996-05-17) claims 1-19	1
A	claims 1-19	7-23,42
X	WO 96 15103 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 23 May 1996 (1996-05-23) claim 1	1
A	abstract; table 1	7-23,42
X	WO 95 14005 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 26 May 1995 (1995-05-26) abstract	1
A	claims 1-15	7-23,42
X	WO 98 33763 A (AMERICAN HOME PROD) 6 August 1998 (1998-08-06) abstract	1
A	claims 1-13	7-23,42
X	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 018, no. 361 (C-1222), 7 July 1994 (1994-07-07) & JP 06 092915 A (SUMITOMO METAL IND LTD), 5 April 1994 (1994-04-05) abstract	1

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Claims Nos.: 1-6, 24-41, 43

Present claims 1-6, 24-41 and 43 relate to an extremely large number of possible compounds and uses thereof. Support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT is to be found, however, for only a very small proportion of the compounds/uses claimed. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the compounds according to claims 7-23 and 42.

It is also stressed that the initial phase of the search revealed a very large number of documents relevant to the issue of novelty (see for instance J. Med. Chem. , vol. 43, p.1187-1202; W09614300; W09833763 or W09615103). So many compounds falling under formula (I) of claim 1 were retrieved that it is impossible to determine which parts of the claims may be said to define subject-matter for which protection might legitimately be sought (Article 6 PCT). For these reasons, a meaningful search over the whole breadth of the claims is impossible. Consequently, the search has been restricted to the claims 7-23 and 42 as abovementioned.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US 02/12681

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
2. ☒ Claims Nos.: 1-6, 24-41, 43
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 02/12681

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 0035855	A	22-06-2000	AU 2357600 A BR 9916211 A CN 1334797 T EP 1140792 A1 WO 0035855 A1	03-07-2000 11-09-2001 06-02-2002 10-10-2001 22-06-2000
WO 0164208	A	07-09-2001	AU 3997001 A WO 0164208 A1	12-09-2001 07-09-2001
WO 9614300	A	17-05-1996	US 5466712 A AU 714911 B2 AU 4106096 A EP 0789690 A1 FI 971853 A HU 77444 A2 JP 10509703 T NZ 296442 A WO 9614300 A1 US 5532245 A US 5605909 A	14-11-1995 13-01-2000 31-05-1996 20-08-1997 01-07-1997 28-04-1998 22-09-1998 29-11-1999 17-05-1996 02-07-1996 25-02-1997
WO 9615103	A	23-05-1996	US 5464867 A US 5512585 A US 5530025 A AT 176223 T AU 686896 B2 AU 3764695 A BR 9509699 A DE 69507639 D1 DE 69507639 T2 DK 796243 T3 EP 0796243 A1 ES 2128774 T3 FI 972089 A GR 3029876 T3 HK 1002276 A1 HU 77286 A2 IL 115547 A JP 10509145 T NZ 294762 A WO 9615103 A1 US 5536731 A US 5536741 A ZA 9509630 A	07-11-1995 30-04-1996 25-06-1996 15-02-1999 12-02-1998 06-06-1996 30-06-1998 11-03-1999 02-09-1999 13-09-1999 24-09-1997 16-05-1999 15-07-1997 30-07-1999 24-03-2000 30-03-1998 30-11-1999 08-09-1998 25-11-1998 23-05-1996 16-07-1996 16-07-1996 21-08-1997
WO 9514005	A	26-05-1995	US 5354763 A AT 174907 T AU 677479 B2 AU 1086695 A CA 2175386 A1 DE 69415554 D1 DE 69415554 T2 DK 729457 T3 EP 0729457 A1 ES 2126241 T3 FI 962070 A GR 3029646 T3 HK 1011353 A1	11-10-1994 15-01-1999 24-04-1997 06-06-1995 26-05-1995 04-02-1999 12-05-1999 23-08-1999 04-09-1996 16-03-1999 15-05-1996 30-06-1999 28-04-2000

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 02/12681

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9514005	A		HU 75655 A2	28-05-1997
			IL 111529 A	17-08-1999
			JP 9505296 T	27-05-1997
			LV 12258 A	20-04-1999
			LV 12258 B	20-09-1999
			NZ 276568 A	26-11-1996
			SG 47587 A1	17-04-1998
			SI 729457 T1	30-04-1999
			WO 9514005 A1	26-05-1995
			US 5401753 A	28-03-1995
			US 5403853 A	04-04-1995
			US 5403854 A	04-04-1995
			US 5397790 A	14-03-1995
			US 5506252 A	09-04-1996
			ZA 9408877 A	09-05-1996
WO 9833763	A	06-08-1998	AU 6250298 A	25-08-1998
			WO 9833763 A1	06-08-1998
			ZA 9800755 A	29-07-1999
JP 06092915	A	05-04-1994	NONE	